



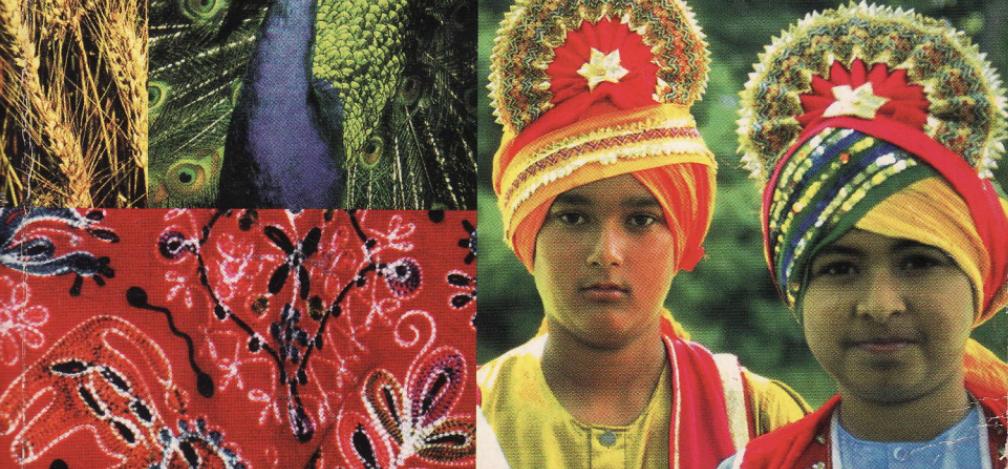
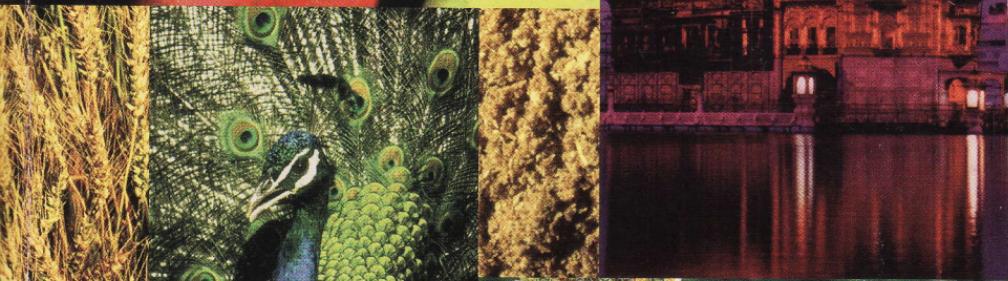
TEACH YOURSELF®

a complete course in understanding

speaking and

writing

panjabi



panjabi

Surjit Singh Kalra

Navtej Kaur Purewal

with

Sue Tyson-Ward

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS

CONTENTS

For UK orders: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 39 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4TD. Telephone: (44) 01235 400414, Fax: (44) 01235 400454. Lines are open from 9.00–6.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24 hour message answering service. Email address: orders@bookpoint.co.uk

For U.S.A. & Canada orders: please contact NTC/Contemporary Publishing, 4255 West Touhy Avenue, Lincolnwood, Illinois 60646-1975, U.S.A. Telephone: (847) 679 5500, Fax: (847) 679 2494.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide – the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 200 titles in the fields of languages, craft, hobbies, sports, and other leisure activities.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this title is available from The British Library

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: On File

First published in UK 1999 by Hodder Headline Plc, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1999 by NTC/Contemporary Publishing, 4255 West Touhy Avenue, Lincolnwood (Chicago), Illinois 60646-1975 U.S.A.

The 'Teach Yourself' name and logo are registered trade marks of Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Copyright © 1999 Surjit Singh Kalra and Navtej Kaur Purewal

In UK: All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P 9HE.

In US: All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior permission of NTC/Contemporary Publishing Company.

Typeset by Pure Text India Ltd, Pondicherry
<http://www.puretech.com>

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder & Stoughton Educational, a division of Hodder Headline Plc, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Year 2004 2003 2002 2001 2000 1999

Introduction	1
How to use this course	5
The Panjabi script and sound system	9
1 ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ? How are you?	37
<i>Language points:</i> Possessive adjectives; Formal and informal speech; Asking questions in Panjabi; Word order	
2 ਮੈਂ ਕਿਰਨ ਹਾਂ I'm Kiran	50
<i>Language points:</i> Subject pronouns; Use of subject pronouns; The present tense of ਹੋਣਾ is, am and are; Formal uses of possessive adjectives; Word order	
3 ਇਸ ਦਾ ਸ਼ਾਅਦ ਕੀ ਹੈ ? What does it taste like?	62
<i>Language points:</i> Interrogative words; Nouns; Adjectives; The simple verb; The possessive particle 'ਦਾ'; of	
4 ਬੜੀ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਦੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ! That's very good news!	81
<i>Language points:</i> The present tense; Subject-verb agreement; Simple postpositions; Nouns in the oblique; Adjectives in the oblique;	
5 ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਸੀ ? What was the matter?	95
<i>Language points:</i> The present continuous tense (-ing); Uses of present continuous; The imperative; Was and were; The past continuous tense; Negative sentences; Making interrogative sentences	
6 ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਪੜ੍ਹੇ ਸੀ ? Did you study in Jalandhar?	108
<i>Language points:</i> The past tense; Negative sentences; Interrogative sentences	
7 ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਪੀਂਘ ਗੇ ? What will you (have to) drink?	124
<i>Language points:</i> The future tense; More forms of the Imperative; Ordinal numbers; What time is it?	

8 ਮੇਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ ਹੈ I enjoy playing the sitar	138
<i>Language points:</i> Pronouns in the oblique; <i>Must, have to;</i> Infinitives in the oblique; Vocative case; The ending ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa	
9 ਸਾਡਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ ਹੈ ! Our cloth is the best!	156
<i>Language points:</i> Comparison of adjectives; ਸਕਣਾ can and can't; ਚੁਕਣਾ already completed; The relative pronouns ਜਿਹੜਾ and ਜੋ; More uses of ਨੂੰ	
10 ਇੱਕ ਦਿਨ ਪਿੰਡ ਵਿਚ A day in the village	170
<i>Language points:</i> The past tense; The 'agentive' postposition ਨੇ ne; Compound verbs; The particle ਕੇ ke	
11 ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ The Golden Temple	186
<i>Language points:</i> Conjunct verbs; Causative verbs; The infinitive as a verbal noun; The passive voice; ਵਰਗ like	
12 ਘਰ ਨੂੰ ਚਿੱਠੀ A letter home	197
<i>Language points:</i> The perfect tenses; How did it go?; The subjunctive; Conditional sentences	
13 ਵਿਆਹ ਦੀਆਂ ਰਸਮਾਂ Marriage customs	210
<i>Language points:</i> Participial uses; The particle jihaa; Reflexive adjectives and pronouns	
14 ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਮੇਰੇ ਬਾਰੇ ਕੀ ਕਿਹਾ ਸੀ ? What did they say about me?	223
<i>Language points:</i> Purpose clauses; Compound postpositions; Indirect speech	
15 ਵੈਸਾਖੀ Vaisakhi	232
<i>Language points:</i> Relative-correlatives; The subjunctive particle ਕੇ; The verb ਲੱਗਣਾ; Oblique infinitives with ਦੇਣਾ	
16 ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦੇ ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ Folk dances of Panjab	243
<i>Language points:</i> Future continuous; Phrases of choice; ਹੈ ਗਾ and ਸੀ ਗਾ	
Appendices	254
Key to exercises	255
Topic vocabulary	265
Punjabi–English glossary	276
Grammar and verb index	295

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to thank a number of people who were involved in different capacities throughout the inception and production of this book. Thanks first go to Dr Virinder S. Kalra, Lecturer in the department of Sociology, Leicester University, England who gave invaluable guidance, moral and technical support and advice each step of the way. To Balbir K. Kalra and Amarjit K. Purewal for their patience and understanding during the entire process. Also, to J. S. Bhogal, Neelu Kalsi, G. S. Bhogal, Jaswinder Kaur and T. S. Nahal from California for their help and encouragement.

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Surjit Singh Kalra is founder and director of the Panjabi Language Development Board in Birmingham U.K., a voluntary organisation dedicated to the promotion and development of the Panjabi language. He is the author of over twenty Panjabi teaching aids. He is a prolific writer and is widely published in the Panjabi press as well as having two books of short stories published. He retired in 1992 as head of the Community Language Service for Birmingham Education authority. He is presently the Sikh representative on the Inner Cities Religious Council.

Navtej Kaur Purewal is a lecturer at the University of Manchester in the Department of Sociology. She teaches Development and South Asian Studies. Her doctoral thesis was on Panjab.

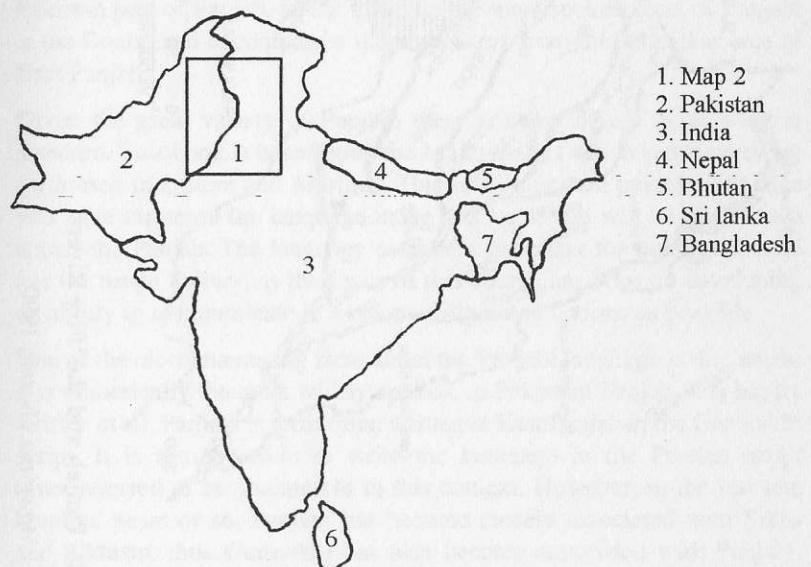
Sue Tyson-Ward was formerly Subject Officer for Community Language examinations at a National Exam Board.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

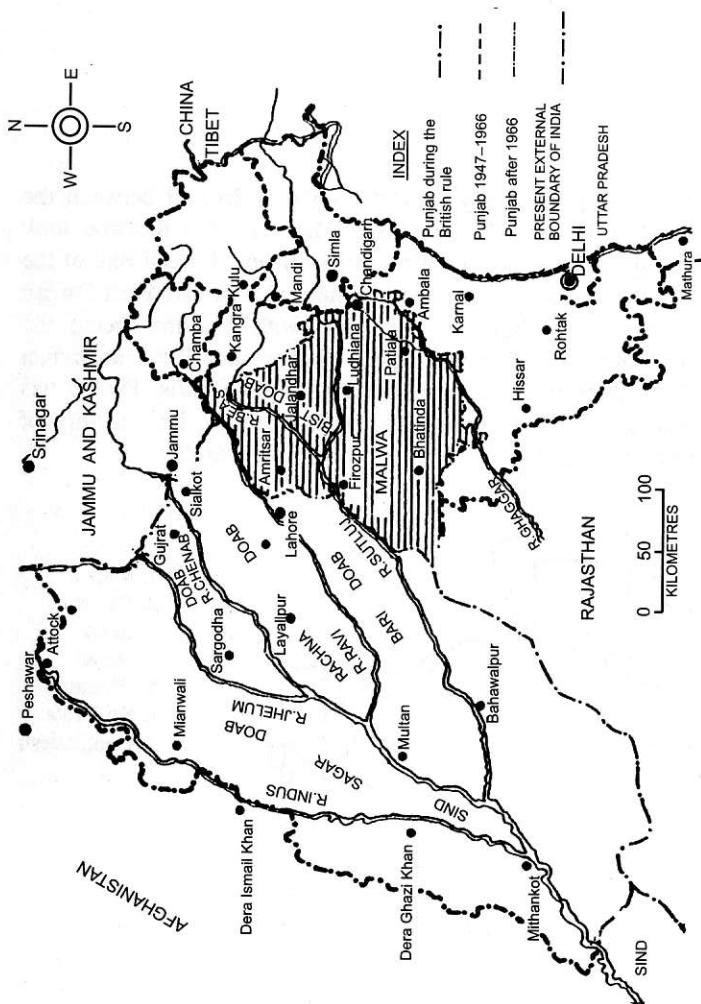
	recorded cassette	m.	masculine
	dialogue	f.	feminine
	exercises	v.	variable adjective
	language points	sing.	singular
	key words	plu.	plural
		lit.	literally

INTRODUCTION

Geographically, the present day area of Panjab is divided between the nation states of India and Pakistan (see Map 1). This division took place in 1947 upon the departure of the British from colonial rule of the sub-continent. While the language and culture of East and West Panjab are similar, there are religious differences, with Muslims being the predominant group in Pakistan Panjab, Hindus and Sikhs in Indian Panjab, and a substantial Christian minority in both parts. Panjab has come to some prominence in the West because of the long history of migration from the region to the four corners of the world.



Map 1 Indian sub-continent



Map 2 Panjab and the 'Five Rivers'

Source: Mawji and Tiwana, 1990

There are, therefore, mainly three areas of the world where Panjabi is spoken; in East Panjab (India) where it is a state language, in West Panjab (Pakistan) where it is most widely spoken and in the diaspora, particularly Britain, North America, East Africa and Australasia. This wide geographic spread of the language is ironic given the fact that the word Panjabi – also spelt Punjabi – designates the language of the ‘Panj – ab’, the ‘Five Rivers’. These are the Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and the Satluj (see Map 2).

No accurate figures are available on the number of Panjabi speakers, either as a first or second language, but if the three Panjabs and various dialects are taken into account an approximation of 100 million would not be too far from the truth. One of the main problems with designating the exact number of Panjabi speakers is the presence of a large number of distinct dialects that are spoken across the large geographical area of East and West Panjab. There are some eleven recognised dialects of Panjabi: Majhi, Bhattiani, Rathni, Ludhianwi, Doabi, Patialwi, Powadhi, Malwi, Multani (Siraiki), Puthohari and Hindko. The last three can arguably call Panjabi a dialect of themselves and are all spoken in the Pakistan part of Panjab. In the diaspora the most spoken form of Panjabi is the Doabi, and encompasses those speakers from the Jalandhar area of East Panjab.

Given the great variety of Panjabi there is some debate as to what is standard. This book is based upon the Majhi dialect which is the everyday form used in Lahore and Amritsar. The most important point is that once you have mastered the language using this book you will be understood across the Panjab. The language used here is neither the colloquial rural nor the urban literary, as the focus of this course has been on developing an ability to communicate in as many different situations as possible.

One of the more interesting facts about the Panjabi language is that where it is numerically the most widely spoken, in Pakistani Panjab, it is hardly written at all. Panjabi is most often written in East Panjab in the Gurmukhi script. It is also possible to write the language in the Persian script often referred to as Shahmukhi in this context. However, in the last one hundred years or so, Panjabi has become closely associated with Sikhs and Sikhism, thus Gurmukhi has also become associated with Panjabi. Gurmukhi literally means ‘proceeding from the mouth of the Guru’, and it is widely acknowledged that Guru Angad, the second Sikh Guru

(1504–1552 AD), began the process of modifying existing scripts of the time laying the basis for the modern Panjabi alphabet that is used in this book.

Despite the modern day usage of Gurmukhi, the first Panjabi literature was written in Shahmukhi, and popular history associates this writing with Shaikh Farid and Goraknath. However, the literary period of the language begins with the sacred scriptures of the Sikhs, the *Guru Granth Sahib*. This collection of writings by the Sikh Gurus is probably the first manuscript of the Panjabi language. After the period of the Gurus, it was the Sufi poets who developed the Panjabi language. In fact it is the folk literature developed by the Sufis, and particularly the Quissa – love ballad form – which has had a long and lasting impact on the development of Panjabi literature. The stories of Heer-Ranjha and Mirza Sahiba are deeply embedded in the everyday life and culture of Panjab.

During the period of British colonial rule, the advent of the printing press saw the proliferation of the Panjabi language in the Gurmukhi script. Pamphlets, journals, novels and short stories all began to appear at the beginning of the twentieth century using the Panjabi typewriter. However, the official language of the time was either English or Urdu. The division of Panjab in 1947 between East (India) and West (Pakistan) and subsequently of East Panjab in 1966 led to the formation of the State of Panjab in the Indian Union. Panjabi is the official language of communication in East Panjab and the modern development of the language has been greatly accelerated by state patronage. Indeed, the development of Panjabi University in Patiala is one such example of state sponsorship.

Language may be the basis of culture, but there are many other aspects of Panjabi society and everyday life that impinge on the use of language. We have included a Commentary section in each unit which will introduce various aspects of the social and cultural life of the three Panjabs, although these are by no means exhaustive discussions of the rich culture of Panjab and the Panjabi diaspora.

HOW TO USE THIS COURSE

Who is this course for?

This course in Panjabi has been designed for the absolute beginner who may or may not have studied a language before. The course will be useful for people who want to learn Panjabi in order to speak with their Panjabi friends and relatives, to communicate with Panjabi communities in relation to their work, to learn about aspects of Panjabi culture and society or to travel to Panjab itself. The course will also be useful for those who already know a little Panjabi but who may not have the confidence to speak and even for those fluent in spoken Panjabi but who wish to learn to read and write the Gurmukhi script. Throughout the course you will come across a number of different situations in which you will learn how to make requests, ask and give information and to express your feelings. The units include dialogues, language points and background information about Panjab and Panjabi people both in the region of Panjab as well as in other parts of the world where Panjabi communities have settled.

The course is divided into two parts. The first part (Units 1–10) is specifically designed for those who want to learn the basics of grammar and vocabulary in order to communicate in a simple manner and also enable you to read and write simple sentences. The second part (Units 11–16) will help you to expand your knowledge of spoken Panjabi further and is designed for those who are committed to becoming proficient in the Gurmukhi script.

Overall, the course introduces you to a wide range of vocabulary and covers the basic grammar of Panjabi. By the end of the course, you will be able to understand the spoken language, communicate in Panjabi in a number of everyday situations while also having a sufficient level of understanding of the written language to begin to read newspapers and

to write letters. We hope that this course will be the beginning of your journey into the world of the Panjabi language.

How to use this course

The structure of the book is outlined in the contents pages. It is recommended that you read the introductory chapters before proceeding with the course. The Panjabi script and sound system follows this section and it is advisable to work through this section regardless of whether you intend to learn the script or not. Through this section you will gain practice of listening, speaking and reading which will help you for the rest of the course. After the script chapter, the book is divided into sixteen units. The pattern of each unit is as follows:

- First there is an outline in English of what you will learn in the unit.
- **ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ gall baat** (Dialogue): Each unit has two or three dialogue passages containing situations and commonly used speech which include the vocabulary and grammar to be covered in that unit. In the first part (Units 1–10) the dialogues use Gurmukhi, Roman script and English translations. In the remainder of the book (Units 11–16) the dialogues are only in Gurmukhi and English. However, Roman is maintained in the vocabulary sections throughout the book.
- **ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdavaalee** (Vocabulary): The vocabulary sections follow each Dialogue and include all new words, and sometimes key expressions, which appear in the dialogue text. All nouns are denoted according to their masculine or feminine (m/f) gender in parentheses and all adjectives which vary according to gender and number are identified with a (v).
- **ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas** (Exercises): These follow the vocabulary and often make reference to the dialogues that they follow. There is a range of different exercises including true/false, matching, comprehension, ‘fill in the blanks’ and crosswords.
- **ਖੋਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare** (Language points). These sections cover the main grammar points which appear in the dialogues.

HOW TO USE THIS COURSE

Each new grammar point is explained clearly using examples to illustrate. Often, English equivalents to the Panjabi are given alongside the explanations.

- **ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa** (Commentary): These sections introduce you to various aspects of Panjabi culture which have been touched upon in the content of the dialogues. These will help you to become acquainted with colloquial speech, social etiquette and Panjabi history, traditions and customs.
- **ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas** (Exercises): Further exercises come at the end of each unit and review some of the main vocabulary, content and grammatical elements that were introduced in that unit. While the exercises that come after the dialogues in the units do not contain references to grammar, the exercises at the end of the units may test you on your ability to use the grammar you have learned.

At the end of the book there is a key to the exercises so that you can check your answers. The course concludes with a Panjabi–English glossary which will be of use to you throughout the course in referring to the English definitions of Panjabi words which appear in the units.

How to study each unit

- Read the summary at the beginning of each unit to learn about what will be covered.
- Study the dialogues using the vocabulary lists for words that you do not understand and then read the dialogues aloud.
- Read the commentary section which will give you the relevant background to the dialogues.
- Complete the exercises which follow the dialogues and vocabulary. Check your answers with the key to the exercises at the end of the book.
- Go through the grammar sections to understand the new grammar points introduced.
- After learning the grammar, read the dialogue again to make sure that you fully understood the content.
- Go back to the dialogue and repeat it as often as you can, acting out the roles of the different characters.

- Complete the exercises at the end of the unit, checking your answers with the key to the exercises at the end of the book.

How to use the course with the cassette

The book is accompanied by an audio tape which will help you to recognise and distinguish the Panjabi sound system and also to improve your listening and speaking abilities. While the book is in itself a complete course, the audio tape will be an added advantage for all Panjabi learners as it contains pronunciation exercises, dialogues from the units and oral comprehension activities based on the ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas (Exercises).

As you begin to go through the first part of the book (Units 1–10), you should listen to the recording of each ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ gall baat (Dialogue) as you read it. Listen to it again without looking at the book once you have understood the general meaning. This will allow you to pay attention to the pronunciation and intonation of the speakers. Imitating the speakers in the dialogues is a useful way of picking up the language quickly. As you progress through the course to the second part (Units 11–16), you should try to listen to the dialogue on the tape without reading it in the book.

THE PANJABI SCRIPT AND SOUND SYSTEM

Introduction

Punjabi is most commonly written in the Gurmukhi script which is the most complete and accurate way to represent Panjabi sounds. Unlike English, the Gurmukhi script follows a 'one sound—one symbol' principle. There are a few exceptions to this rule and these will become apparent throughout the book. However, with some practice you will be able to recognise the characters and know their names and sounds. Ultimately, with even a basic knowledge of the sound system, you will be able to read and write Panjabi in the Gurmukhi script.

The Gurmukhi alphabet has forty letters including thirty-seven consonants and three basic vowel sign bearers. There are ten clear pure vowels and three auxiliary signs. The most striking characteristic of the Gurmukhi script, in comparison with English, is that, with the exception of five, all letters are joined by a line across the top. Like English and other European, Latin-based languages, it is written and read from left to right. However, there are neither capital letters in Panjabi nor articles such as 'a' and 'the'. Panjabi spellings are, for the most part, regular and relatively simple to learn, though you may come across variations in spellings of some words. However, as is the case in English, Panjabi spellings are not fully standardised.

Handwritten Panjabi, as with any script, differs from person to person in style. Some people prefer to write Panjabi without lifting a pen, making curves and having an irregular top line. It is up to the individual as to what sort of style he or she wants to adopt. Our advice to new learners is to follow the simple, clear style of lettering. There are a number of Panjabi fonts available on computer disk which have differing typefaces, some of which are very clear, attractive and decorative.

Equivalent sounds which have been given in romanised (English) script are only approximate since the Gurmukhi alphabet has many unfamiliar sounds to the English speaker which often may not be exactly represented by the English alphabet. It is hoped that you will use the cassette, attend classes, or seek help from a native speaker so as to perfect your pronunciation and to familiarise yourself with the sounds. In order to learn any language it is important to follow these basic rules: listen carefully, repeat aloud and distinctly, and do not worry about making mistakes. Apart from unfamiliar sounds, there are nasal and double sounds, intonation, stress and different dialects which might initially dishearten the student. However, with a little practice, you will begin to enjoy learning Panjabi.

Transliteration

The standard modern system of transliteration (the writing of Panjabi in the Roman alphabet) is used in this book with some modifications. As there are forty letters, ten vowel sounds and three auxiliary signs in Panjabi, it is necessary to adapt the standard English alphabet. You will note two ways of distinguishing letters:

- 1 by a combination of two English letters such as rh, kh, bh, nh, etc. In those few cases where these letters appear together but *not* in combination, for instance, a 'r' and 'h' appear together, a '-' is shown between those letters.
- 2 by underlining, for example, the letter n (n) indicates nasalisation or underlining ch (ch) indicates an aspirated sound.

Consonants

The Panjabi alphabet

South Asian languages are richly endowed with sounds and consonants. Sanskrit may have been one of the first languages to group the letters according to their sounds. At one time there were only thirty-five letters in the Panjabi script, but later five more letters were added in order to accommodate Urdu sounds correctly. This need arose because of the many loan words from Urdu used in Panjabi. More recently, an extra character (ਲ l) was introduced, though it has not become popular and hence will not be included in this book. The complete Panjabi alphabet is given in Table A.

Table A Panjabi alphabet

ਾ	ਾ	ਾ	ਾ	ਾ
—	a	—	s	h
ਕ	ਖ	ਗ	ਘ	ਙ
k	kh	g	gh	ng
ਚ	ਛ	ਜ	ਯ	ਵ
ch	ch	j	jh	nj
ਤ	ਠ	ਡ	ਚ	ਣ
t	th	d	dh	nh
ਤ	ਥ	ਦ	ਧ	ਨ
t	th	d	dh	n
ਪ	ਫ	ਬ	ਭ	ਮ
p	ph	b	bh	m
ਯ	ਰ	ਲ	ਵ	ੜ
y	r	l	w/v	rh
ਸ	ਖ	ਗ	ਜ	ਫ
sh	kh	gh	z	f

It is quite possible to learn the characters of the Gurmukhi script (ਗੁਰਮੁਖੀ ਲਿਪੀ gurmukhee lippee) and sounds of the language at the same time as, by and large, Panjabi is a phonetic language. It is more accurate to call the Panjabi writing system a syllabary because each character represents a syllable. It is important to note that two phonetic features of all North Indian languages are the system of contrasts between aspirated and unaspirated consonants and the contrast between retroflex and dental

consonants. These do not occur in English. Aspirated consonants are accompanied by an audible expulsion of breath, whereas non-aspirated consonants are those produced with minimal breath. The letter 'k' in the word 'kit' and 't' in the word 'top' come close to Panjabi aspirated consonants. The problem for English speakers arises with non-aspirated consonants. To get an idea of the difference between the two, try saying the words 'kit' and 'top' while holding your breath. In dental consonants the tongue touches the upper front teeth, whereas with the retroflex consonants the tip of the tongue curls upwards against the palate (see diagrams in Appendix) The nearest approximations to English are the 't' sound in the word 'eighth' which is dental-like and the 'd' in the word 'breadth' which is retroflex-like.

There is a range of technical terms used to describe the pronunciation of Panjabi consonants. For those who are interested in technical, and linguistic matters these can be found in the Appendix. The important thing is to be able to distinguish between the different consonants. The audio tape or the help of a native speaker are invaluable tools in this process.

Punjabi syllabary

The syllabary in Table B gives the Panjabi letters in groups, according to pronunciation.

Table B Panjabi Syllabary

Gurmukhi	Translit -eration	Pronunciation
ਸ	s	as 's' in 'sun'.
ਹ	h	this 'h' sound as in 'ahead' is the simplest form, although there is considerable variety, which will be discussed later.
ਕ	k	as 'k' in 'sky', but with less release of breath.
ਖ	kh	as 'k' in 'kit' but with stronger release of breath. No English equivalent.
ਗ	g	as 'g' in 'go' but with less release of breath.
ਘ	gh	as 'gh' in 'ghost' said quickly. No English equivalent.

ਙ	ng	as 'ng' in 'sing'. No English equivalent.
ਚ	ch	as 'ch' as in 'cheese' but with less release of breath.
ਛ	ch	strongly aspirated form of 'ch'. No English equivalent.
ਜ	j	as 'j' in 'jeer' but with less release of breath and with the tongue against the lower teeth.
ਯ	jh	the stronger aspirated counterpart of the above, somewhat like 'bridge'. No English equivalent.
ਝ	nj	representing the palatal nasal sound. No English equivalent.
ਤ	t	as 't' in 'train' but with the tongue further back and with less release of breath.
ਥ	th	the strongly aspirated counterpart of the above. No English equivalent.
ਦ	d	as 'd' in 'drum' but with tongue further back and with less release of breath.
ਧ	dh	strongly aspirated form of the above. No English equivalent.
ਨ	nh	representing the retroflex nasal sound. No English equivalent.
ਤ	t	unaspirated soft 't'. No English equivalent.
ਥ	th	as 'th' in 'thermos', strongly aspirated form of the above.
ਦ	d	as 'th' in 'then' with less release of breath.
ਧ	dh	strongly aspirated form of the above. No English equivalent.
ਨ	n	as 'n' in 'nice' but with the tongue flatter against the front teeth.

ਪ	p	as 'p' in 'spin' but with less release of breath.
ਫ	ph	as 'f' in 'fund', aspirated form of the above, though many Panjabi speakers pronounce 'ph' as 'f'.
ਬ	b	as 'b' in 'bin' but with less release of breath.
ਭ	bh	as 'bh' in 'club-house' spoken quickly. No English equivalent.
ਮ	m	as 'm' in 'mother'.
ਯ	y	as 'y' in 'yet'.
ਰ	r	as 'r' in 'motor.' This sound is always fully voiced and never lost like the English 'r'.
ਲ	l	as 'l' in 'life'.
ਵ	v/w	this sound lies between the English sounds 'v' and 'w'. However, unlike the English 'v' the lower lip hardly touches the upper teeth; unlike the English 'w' there is no lip-rounding. For transliteration purposes we only use 'v'.
ੜ	rh	no English equivalent.
ਸ	sh	as 'sh' in 'ship'.
ਖ	kh	similar to 'ch' in Scottish 'loch'. No English equivalent.
ਗ	gh	no English equivalent.
ਜ	z	as 'z' in 'zip'.
ਝ	f	as 'f' in 'find'.

Consonants with a dot

It is also important to note the distinction between plain consonants and those consonants which are marked by a dot, as shown in Table C.

Table C Consonants with dots

ਸ	ਸ	ਖ	ਖ	ਗ	ਗ	ਜ	ਜ	ਘ	ਘ
s	sh	kh	kh	g	gh	j	z	ph	f

These letters are named by adding the words ਪੈਰੀਂ ਬਿੰਦੀ *paireen bindi* to the name of the letter, so ਸ is called ਸਾਸੇ ਪੈਰੀਂ ਬਿੰਦੀ *sasse paireen bindi*, which literally means sassa with a dot in its foot. Many Panjabi speakers do not make a distinction between ਖ ਖ, ਗ ਗ, and ਘ ਘ. There are two main reasons for this, first, their pronunciation is quite similar and second, they are used to differentiate borrowed words from Urdu, the knowledge of which is decreasing in East Panjab. You may come across written texts in which writers have not used the dot. In this book, however, we have maintained its use.

Subjoined consonants

Some Panjabi words require consonants to be written in a conjunct form, which takes the shape of a subscript to the main letter. The second consonant is written under the first as a subscript. The reason for this is discussed after we have looked at Panjabi vowels. There are only three commonly used subjoined letters (see Table D) and to distinguish them from their normal forms the word ਪੈਰੀਂ *paireen*, which means *belonging to the foot*, is attached under the letter.

Table D Subjoined consonants

Full letter	Name of full letter	Subjoined letter	Name of subjoined letter	Transliteration
ਹ	ਹਾਹਾ	ਹ	ਪੈਰੀਂ ਹਾਹਾ	h
ਰ	ਰਾਰਾ	ਾ	ਪੈਰੀਂ ਰਾਰਾ	r
ਵ	ਵਾਵਾ	ਾ	ਪੈਰੀਂ ਵਾਵਾ	v

For the purposes of transliteration there is no special sign for the subjoined character so you will have to pay careful attention to the Panjabi spelling.

Nasalisation

There are five nasal consonants in Panjabi:

■ ਙ ng ■ ਝ ng ■ ਚ nh ■ ਨ n ■ ਮ m

As shown in the syllabary, the nasal consonants belong to the five different classes of consonants. Nasalisation is produced by directing a substantial part of the breath towards the nasal cavity as the letter is being uttered. In addition there are two nasalisation signs in Panjabi which accompany consonants:

■ ਬਿੰਦੀ bindee • ■ ਟਿੱਪੀ tippee

These will be dealt with in detail later.

Pronunciation of consonants

Most letters in Panjabi have a fixed pronunciation, however some are variable and this depends on their position in a word. Consider the letters in Table E.

Table E Pronunciation of consonants

	ਘ	ਝ	ਚ	ਧ	ਭ
Sound at beginning of word	k	ch	t	dh	p
Sound in middle or at end of word	g	j	d	dh	b

Perhaps the most variable pronunciation of a single consonant in Panjabi is that of the letter ਹ h. Words beginning with ਹ h and those where no vowel precedes or affects it, carry the h sound as it would be used in English. For instance:

ਹਕਮਤ hakoomt government ਹਕੀਮ hakeem doctor

However, when ਹ h is used in the middle of a word following consonants and vowels its pronunciation is varied. We will return to this point after considering the vowel symbols and sounds.

Vowels

There are ten vowels in Panjabi in contrast to the English five (a, e, i, o, u). Panjabi vowels are generally pronounced as they are written, following the one sign – one sound rule. They are pure vowels making only one sound. However, there are two forms that vowels can take. The independent vowel form which does not require a consonant and the dependent form which is attached to a consonant. All consonants use the dependent form of the vowel. Tables F and G show the dependent vowels on their own and combined with the letter ਸ s.

Table F Dependent vowels on their own

	Vowel sign	Name of vowel	
1	ਾ	muktaa	
2	ਾਾ	kanna	
3	ਿ	sihaaree	
4	ੀ	bihaaree	
5	ੁ	aunkarh	
6	ੂ	dulainkarhe	
7	ੇ	laany	
8	ੈ	dulaanvaan	
9	ੋ	horhaa	
10	ੌ	kanaurhaa	

Table G Dependent vowels in combination with s

Consonant and vowel sign	Pronunciation
ਸ	a in ahead
ਸਾ	a in part
ਸਿ	i in it
ਸੀ	ee in see
ਸੁ	u in put
ਸੂ	oo in food
ਸੇ	a in cake
ਸੈ	a in man
ਸੋ	o in show
ਸੌ	o in bought

You may note that the vowels are divided into five pairs. In the first three, the distinction is between a short and long sound, for example between *u* and *oo*. In the last two pairs the distinction is between closed and open sounds so *e* is closed and *ai* is open sounding.

Short *a* sound – muktaa

We have seen that in Panjabi there are ten vowels and they are represented by nine symbols. The vowel **muktaa** has no equivalent sign to be used with consonants. The individual consonant expresses its own sound and also implies an *a* sound with it. This means that, unlike English, words can be formed with consonants only without using any visible vowel. Each consonant has an inherent sound, making it a syllable on its own. However, there is no symbol for this sound in Panjabi, though we have chosen to represent **muktaa** with the letter *a* for purposes of transliteration. Examples of the use of **muktaa** can be found in many borrowed words from English, for example: **کپ kap**, *cup*, and **ਮਗ mag**, *mug*.

The inherent *a* is not pronounced in three main positions:

- at the end of a word, e.g. **ਕਾਰ kaar**
- with a subjoined consonant, e.g. **ਸ੍ਰੀ sree**
- at a syllable break, e.g. **ਗਰਦਨ, ਗਰ-ਦਨ gar-dan**

Independent vowels

The independent form can occur in three ways. First, when the vowel comes at the beginning of a word or a syllable, second in those instances where two vowel sounds are required as a consonant cannot support two vowels, and third, in a diphthong – when two vowels are present in one syllable. In fact one of the features of Panjabi is the presence of many diphthongs, sometimes with three vowel sounds in one word with no consonants, for instance **ਆਇਆ aaiaa**, (*he*) came.

Independent vowels are represented by dependent vowels carried by the first three letters of the Panjabi alphabet.

ਉ ਓਰਾਹਾ oorhaa ਅ ਐਰਾਹਾ airhaa ਏ ਈਰੀ eerhee

They are never used on their own and do not represent any consonant sounds. They *must* be accompanied by their allocated vowel signs. Their main function is to denote their own respective vowel sounds. They are founder, basic or parent vowel bearers representing the ten sounds.

However, the pronunciation of both independent and dependent vowels is the same (see Table H).

Table H Independent vowel

Formula	Example word	Transliteration	Meaning
— u is added to ਏ to give ਉ	ਊਪਜ	upaj	production
= oo is added to ਏ to give ਔ	ਊਠ	ooth	camel
— o is added to ਏ to give ਋	਋ਟ	ot	shelter
Invisible sign 'a' is added to ਅ	ਅਮਰ	amar	immortal
† aa is added to a to give ਆ	ਆਟਾ	aataa	flour
= ai is added to ਅ to give ਐ	ਐਨਕ	ainak	spectacles
¬ au is added to ਅ to give ਑	ਐਰਤ	aurat	woman
f i is added to ਏ to give ਫੇ	ਫਿਲਾਮ	inaam	prize
† ee is added to ਏ to give ਏੀ	ਏਸਾ	eesaa	Jesus
¬ e is added to ਏ to give ਏ	ਏਕਤਾ	ektaa	unity

Silent vowel signs

In English there are some silent or soft spoken consonants, for example *r* and *k*. There are no such consonants in Panjabi, however there are silent vowels. These are not often found in modern Panjabi but occur often in the sacred language of Sikh religious texts. Silent vowels give special meaning to the word they are referring to. The most common use of the silent vowel you will come across is in the Sikh greeting **ਸਾਤ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ sat(i) sree akaal**. Note that the **sihaaree** in the word **ਸਾਤ** has no effect on the pronunciation, however its presence does alter the meaning:

■ **ਸਾਤ sat extract ਸੰਤ satt seven ਸਾਤਿ sat(i) true**

In this example we have included the silent vowel in brackets for purposes of illustration, however throughout the rest of the book the silent vowel is not included in the transliterated text.

Tones

One of the unique features of Panjabi, in the variety of modern South Asian languages, is the presence of pitch contours. These change the

meaning of the word depending on the way it sounds. In technical terms these are called 'tones' and there are three types: low, high and level. The Panjabi tone system is far less complex than Chinese, the best known tone language. The low tone is characterised by lowering the voice below the normal pitch and then rising back in the following syllable. In the high tone the pitch of the voice rises above its normal level falling back at the following symbol. The level tone is carried by the remaining words. Tones are not represented by any letters or symbols in the Gurmukhi script. In this course we are not marking words with tone signs, as we believe this will create confusion. The best manner to learn tonality is from repetition from the audio tape or listening and imitating native speakers.

Table I illustrates how tone can change the meaning of a word.



Table I Tone illustrations

Low tone	Level tone	High tone
ਝਾ jhaa peep	ਚਾਾ cha-aa desire	ਚਾਹ chaah tea
ਘੋੜਾ ghorhaa horse	ਕੋੜਾ korhaa whip	ਕੋਹੜਾ kohrhaa leper
ਖੜੀ gharhee watch	ਕੜੀ karhee link of a chain	ਕੜੀ karhhee turmeric curry

Return of ਚ haahaa

We have already noted the variable pronunciation of the consonant ਚ h. Now that we have covered vowels and tones, we can return to look at some of the other varieties of **haahaa**'s pronunciation.

- When ਚ is preceded by a **sihaaree** the pronunciation of the vowel changes to resemble **dulaanvaan**. For instance the word ਸ਼ਹਿਰ shahir is pronounced ਸੈਹਰ shair. The pronunciation of the word is therefore converted into a high tone.
- When ਚ is accompanied by **aunkarh**, the pronunciation of the word changes to resemble **kanaurhaa**. For instance the word ਬਹੁਤ bahut is pronounced ਬੋਹਤ bauht once again changing the word to a high tone.
- In a similar manner, when the letter preceding the ਚ has either the **aunkarh** or **sihaaree** vowel attached, then the

pronunciation of the word changes so as to produce the **haurhaa** and **laanv** vowels respectively. For example: ਸੁਹਣਾ suhnhaa is pronounced as ਸੋਹਣਾ sohnhaa and ਸਿਹਤ sihat is pronounced as ਸੇਹਤ sehat.

Subjoined consonants revisited

As we previously noted, a few Panjabi words require consonants to be written in a subjoined form, which takes the shape of a subscript to the main letter. The reason for this is to indicate that the inherent **muktaa** vowel is not present. Where vowels are present on the first letter, these are meant to be applied to the subjoined consonant. Therefore, in the word ਪ੍ਰੇਮ prem, there is no a symbol in the transliteration indicating the absence of the **muktaa**. The **laanv** vowel is applied to the r in the foot of the p. Note that the pronunciation of the subjoined consonant is the same as the normal consonant.

Auxiliary signs

The double sound ਅਧਕ adhak ✎

The function of the **ਅਧਕ adhak** ✎ is to allocate a double sound to the particular letter that it is assigned to. It should be placed above the preceding letter that is to be read twice, however, in practice it is placed between the two letters. Therefore, when the **adhak** occurs between two letters, it is the second of the two that is to be repeated. For example, in the Panjabi word for **thigh**, ਪੱਟ patt, the **adhak** affects the letter ਟ t changing the sound of the word from **pat** to **patt**. In some cases another vowel sound may come in between the two letters, but the **adhak** still affects the second letter, for example in the word ਬੱਚਿੜ੍ਹ bachchio, the **adhak** comes before the **sihaaree** vowel but still affects the letter ਚ ch, so it is pronounced **chch**. The **adhak** is a very important, though subtle device, as two letters without an **adhak** give rise to completely different meanings. For example **ਪਗ pag** means **foot**, whereas **ਪੱਗ pagg** means **turban**. A similar effect can be seen in English with the words **super** and **supper**.

Nasal sounds: ਬਿੰਦੀ bindee • and ਟਿੱਪੀ tippee ✎

The **bindee** and the **tippee** both serve to add a nasal sound to a particular vowel. The **bindee** is used with **kannaa**, **laanv**, **dulaanvaan**, **bihaaree**,

horhaa and **kanaurhaa** and the independent forms of vowels where **ੴ** is the bearer. For example: ਗਾਂਨ cow

The tippee is used with the muḵtaa, sihaaree, aunkarh and dulainkarhe. For example: ਖੜ੍ਹ ਕਾਂਡ੍ਹ sugar

The sound of the **tippee** and **binddee** is almost equivalent to the *n* in *pound* or *bangle*. However, their sound varies from the almost totally nasalised to a more fully pronounced *n* sound. For transliteration purposes the letter **ਨ** is used for both the **tippee** and **binddee**.

Punjabi loan words

The Panjabi language has a substantial number of words which have been borrowed from the English language, for example *school*, *college*, *telephone*, *bus*, *pen*, *pencil*, *chalk*, *ticket*, and *computer*. Moreover, some Panjabi words have been adopted by English including *chutney*, *pandit*, *kebab*, *samosa*, *saree*, *dhobi*, and *guru*. Some English words borrowed by Panjabi have also been altered by Panjabi pronunciation and you will notice in the transliteration that English words and names have been written with this in mind.

Dictionary order

The letters in Panjabi dictionaries are arranged in the order of Table A, reading left to right, as are the order of words within each letter. The exceptions to this rule are those letters which are distinguished by a dot that is ਸ, ਖ, ਜ, ਚ and ਝ, as these letters occur within the non-dotted form. Subjoined letters are not differentiated from the full form. Dictionary order in the Gurmukhi script is based upon phonology as vowels precede consonants. Therefore, the vowel signs follow **muḵtaa**, **kannaā**, **sihaaree**, **bihaaree**, **aunkarh**, **dulainkarhe**, **laaਂਵ**, **dulaਾਂਵਾਂ**, **horhaa**, **kanaurhaa**.

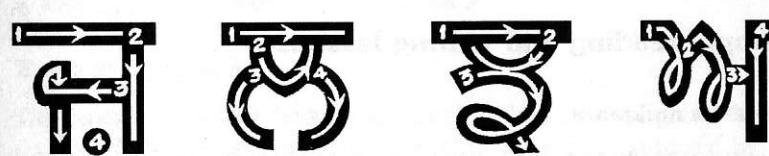
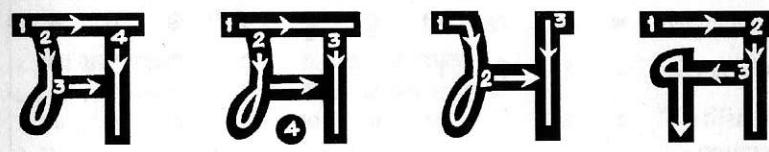
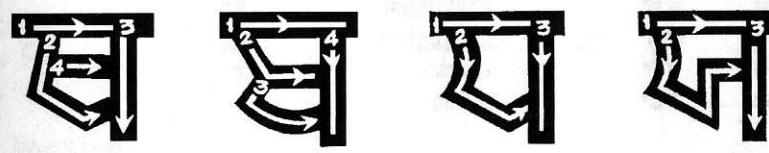
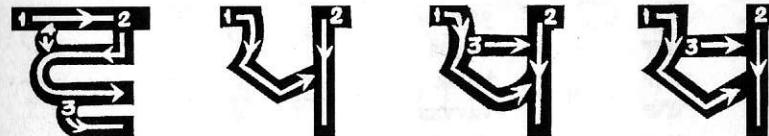
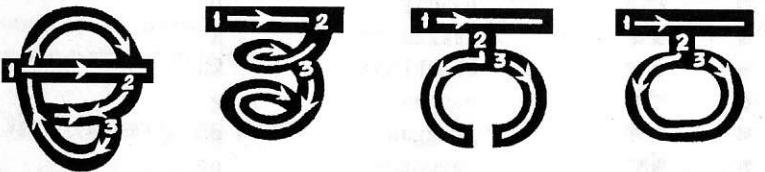
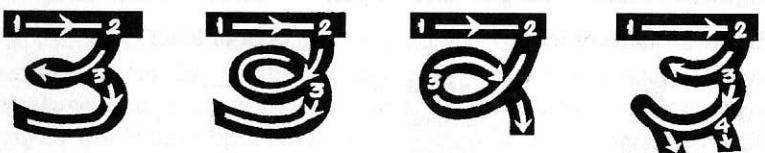
Writing

Punjabi words are made up partly of consonants and partly of vowel signs. Letters are written first and then the sound symbols. Panjabi punctuation is similar to that used in English. However, one distinct difference is that in Panjabi a vertical stroke is used at the end of a sentence to mark a full stop. For example: *My name is Ritu.* ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਰਿਤੁ ਹੈ।

There are ten vowels represented by nine signs. Their positions relating to consonants are as follows **ੀ** = are written beneath the letter; **ੀ** = **ੀ** = **ੀ** = are written above the letter; **ੋ** is written on the left of the letter while **ੌ** and **ੌ** are written on the right. The three auxillary signs, **ੴ** • **੦** are written above the letter. Panjabi is best written on lined paper initially. In English the letters rest on the line, whereas in Panjabi the horizontal headstroke is written upon the line, the characters then hang from the line, in much the same way as clothes hang from a washing line.

Punjabi alphabet ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਵਰਣਮਾਲਾ ਗੁਰਮੁਖੀ ਲਿਪੀ
panjaabee varanhmaalaa gurmukhee lipee:

Letter	Name of letter	Sign of letter
ਓ	ਓਰਹਾ	—
ਅ	ਅਈ	a
ਇ	ਈੜੀ	—
ਸ	ਸੱਸਾ	s
ਹ	ਹਾਹਾ	h
ਕ	ਕਕਾ	k
ਖ	ਖਾਖਾ	kh
ਗ	ਗੱਗਾ	g
ਘ	ਘੱਗਾ	gh
ਙ	ਙਾਂਗਾ	ng
ਚ	ਚਾਚਾ	ch
ਛ	ਛੱਛਾ	ch
ਜ	ਜੱਜਾ	j
ਝ	ਝੱਜਾ	jh
ਵ	ਵੰਵਾ	nj
ਟ	ਟੈਂਕਾ	t
ਠ	ਠੱਠਾ	th
ਡ	ਡੱਡਾ	d
ਢ	ਢੱਢਾ	dh
ਣ	ਣਾਣਾ	nh
ਤ	ਤੱਤਾ	t
ਥ	ਥਾਥਾ	th
ਦ	ਦੱਦਾ	d
ਧ	ਧਾਧਾ	dh
ਨ	ਨਾਨਾ	n
ਪ	ਪੱਪਾ	p



ਫ	ਫੱਫਾ	phaphphaa	ph
ਬ	ਬੱਬਾ	babbaa	b
ਭ	ਭੱਬਾ	bhabbaa	bh
ਮ	ਮੱਮਾ	mammaa	m
ਯ	ਯੱਯਾ	yayyaa	y
ਰ	ਰਾਰਾ	raaraa	r
ਲ	ਲੱਲਾ	lallaa	l
ਵ	ਵੱਵਾ	vavvaa	v
ਝ	ਝੜਾ	rhaarhaa	rh
ਸ	ਸੱਸ਼ਾ	shashshaa	sh
ਖ	ਖੱਖਾ	<u>khakhkhaa</u>	<u>kh</u>
ਗ	ਗੱਗਾ	ghaghghaa	gh
ਜ	ਜੱਜਾ	zazzaa	z
ਫ	ਫੱਫਾ	faffaa	f

Relationship between independent and dependent vowels:

Independent	ਾ	ਾਾ	ਈ	ਈਈ	ਊ	ਊਊ	ਏ	ਏਏ	ਓ	ਓਓ
Dependent	-	'	f	ੀ	-	=	ੇ	ੇ	ੋ	ੋ
Translit- eration	a	aa	i	ee	u	oo	e	ai	o	au

Sample reading and writing lessons

1 ਮੁਕਤਾ ਅ muktaa a

The vowel **muktaa** has no visible symbol in the Gurmukhi script. For transliteration purposes it is represented by the letter *a*.

Reading 1 ਕਰਮ, ਕਪ, ਕਮਰ

karam, kap, kamar
Karam, cup, Kamar

3 ਅਮਰ, ਚਰਚ ਚਲ

amar, charach chal
Amar, go to the church

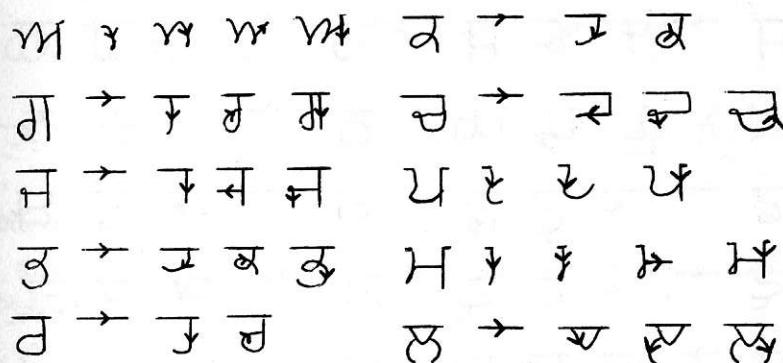
2 ਕਮਲ, ਮਗ ਭਰ

kamal, mag bhar
Kamal, fill the mug

4 ਮਲਕ, ਜਗ ਭਰ

malak, jag bhar
Malik, fill the jug

Writing Pattern



Exercises

1. Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਕਪ ਭਰ ਕਰਮ b. ਮਗ ਭਰ ਕਮਲ
c. ਭਰ ਜਗ ਮਲਕ d. ਚਰਚ ਚਲ ਕਮਰ

2. Write out the following words:

- a. ਕਮਲ b. ਚਰਚ c. ਜਗ

2 ਕੰਨਾ ਅ ' kannaa aa

The dependent form of the **kannaa** vowel is placed to the right of the letter that is affected. For transliteration purposes it is represented by the symbol *aa*.

Reading

1 ਸ਼ਾਮ, ਨਾਨਾ, ਵਾਲ ਵਾਹ

shaam, naanaa, vaal vaah
sham, grandfather, comb hair

3 ਚਾਚਾ, ਘਰ ਆ

chaachaa, ghar aa
uncle, come home

2 ਰਾਮ, ਬਸ ਫਾਰ

raam, bas pharh
ram, catch the bus

4 ਕਾਕਾ, ਆਨਾਰ ਖਾ

kaakaa, anaar khaa
baby, eat the pomegranate

Writing Pattern

ਮ → ਝ ਮ ਮ	ਹ → ਵਾ ਚ ਹ
ਘ + ਕੁ ਪੁ ਘ	ਨ → ਵਾ ਣ ਲ
ਟ → ਰਾ ਟ ਟ	ਬ → ਛ ਛ ਬ
ਵ੍ਰ → ਚ ਵ੍ਰ ਵ੍ਰ	ੜ → ਚ ਚ੍ਰ ਚ੍ਰ
ਸ → ਝ ਸ ਸ	ਖ + ਕੁ ਪੁ ਖ

Exercises

- E** 1. Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਨਾਨਾ ਬਸ ਫੜ
b. ਸ਼ਾਮ ਵਾਲ ਵਹ
c. ਕਾਕਾ ਘਰ ਆ
d. ਚਾਚਾ ਅਨਾਰ ਖਾ

2. Write out the following words

- a. ਬਸ b. ਸ਼ਾਮ c. ਨਾਨਾ

3 ਅਧਕ adhak

The **ਅਧਕ adhak** should be placed above the preceding letter that is to be read twice, in practice, however, it is placed in between the two letters. Therefore, when the **adhak** occurs between two letters it is the second letter of the two that is to be repeated. For transliteration purposes the **adhak** has the effect of doubling the consonant effected.

Reading

1. ਅੱਖ, ਪੱਟ, ਲੱਤ 2. ਰੱਖ, ਪੱਗ ਸ਼ਾਮ
akhkh, patt, latt rakhkh, pagg shaam
eye, thigh, leg
3. ਅੱਠ ਹੱਥ 4. ਸੱਤ ਨੱਕ
athth hathth satt nakk
eight hands

**Writing pattern**

ਟ → ਰਾ ਟ	ਠ → ਵਾ ਠ
ਤ → ਚ ਤ	ਥ → ਵਾ ਥ ਥ

Exercises

- E** 1. Read the following words out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਸ਼ਾਮ ਪੱਗ ਰੱਖ
b. ਅੱਠ ਨੱਕ
c. ਸੱਤ ਹੱਥ
d. ਅੱਖ, ਲੱਤ, ਪੱਟ

2. Write out the following words:

- a. ਪੱਟ b. ਅੱਠ c. ਹੱਥ

4 ਸਿਹਾਰੀ ਫਿ ਫਿ sihaaree i

The dependent form of the sihaaree vowel is placed to the left of the letter being affected. For transliteration purposes it is represented by the letter *i*.

Reading

1. ਕਿਰਨ, ਇੱਟ, ਇੱਕ, ਕਿੱਲ kiran, itt, ikk, kill
Kiran, brick, one, nail
2. ਜਿੱਲ, ਸਿੱਧ ਲਿਖ jill, sidh-dhaa likh
Jill, write straight
3. ਦਿਲਬਰ, ਰਿੱਛ ਗਿੰਹ dilbar, richch ginh
Dilbar, count the bears
4. ਇਹ ਚਾਰ ਹਿਰਨ ਹਨ ih chaar hiran han
these are four deers

Writing pattern

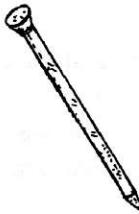
ਟ → ਰਾ ਟ	ਛ → ਵਾ ਛ
ਧ → ਵਾ ਧ	ਤ → ਚ ਤ
ਤ → ਚ ਚ	

Exercises

1. Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.
- ਇੱਕ ਇੱਟ
 - ਕਿਰਨ ਸਿੱਧਾ ਲਿਖ
 - ਦਿਲਬਰ ਕਿੱਲ ਗਿਣ
 - ਇਹ ਚਰ ਰਿੱਛ ਹਨ
2. Write the names in Gurmukhi of the items in the pictures.



a) richch



b) kill



c) hiran

5 ਬਿਹਾਰੀ ਈ ੧ bihaaree ee

The dependent form of the **bihaaree** vowel is placed to the right of the letter that is being affected. For transliteration purposes it is represented by the letter *ee*.

Reading

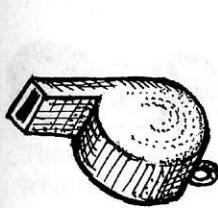
- ਸੀਟੀ, ਡੱਬੀ, ਵਲੀ, ਸੀਤਾ
seetee, dabbee, vaalee, seetaa
whistle, small box, earring, Sita
- ਰੀਟਾ, ਗਲੀਚਾ ਸਾਫ਼ ਕਰ
reetaa, ghaleechaa saaf kar
Rita, clean the rug
- ਚਾਚੀ ਖਤਾਈ ਲਿਆਈ
chaachee khataaee liaaee
Aunty has bought a biscuit
- ਈਸ਼ਰ ਦੀ ਬਿੱਲੀ ਕਾਲੀ ਸੀ
eeshar dee billee kaalee see
Ishar's cat was black

Writing pattern

ਗ → ਗ ਏ ਹੁ ਗੁ ਖ → ਖ ਏ ਪੁ ਖੁ
ਤ → ਤ ਏ ਤੁ ਤੁ ਫ → ਫ ਏ ਫੁ ਫੁ

Exercises

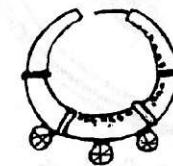
1. Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.
- ਰੀਟਾ ਬਿੱਲੀ ਲਿਆਈ
 - ਸੀਤਾ ਖਤਾਈ ਲਿਆਈ
 - ਚਾਚੀ ਗਲੀਚਾ ਲਿਆਈ
 - ਈਸ਼ਰ ਸੀਟੀ ਲਿਆਈ
2. Write the names in Gurmukhi of the items in the pictures.



a. seetee



b. billee



c. vaalee

6 ਅੱਕੜ ਉ _ aunkarh u

The dependent form of the vowel **aunkarh** is placed under the letter to be affected. For transliteration purposes it is represented by the letter *u*.

Reading

- ਦੁੱਧ, ਚਕੱਣ, ਸੁਖ, ਪੀ
dudh dh, dhakkanh, sukh, pee
milk, lid, Sukh, drink
- ਉਪਕਾਰ, ਉੱਨ ਲਿਆ
upkaar, unn liaa
Upkar, bring the wool
- ਯੁਵਕ, ਜ਼ਬਾਨ ਨਾ ਕੱਚ
yuvak zabaan naa kadhdh
Young boy! Do not stick out your tongue.
- ਗੁਲਾਬ, ਚੁੱਪ ਕਰ
gulaab, chupp kar
Gulab, keep quiet

Writing pattern

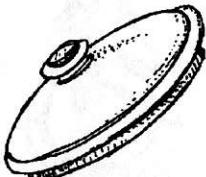
ਉ → ਉ ਏ ਹੁ ਉੁ ਤ → ਤ ਏ ਨੁ ਤੁ
ਏ → ਏ ਏ ਏੁ ਚ → ਚ ਏ ਚੁ

Exercises

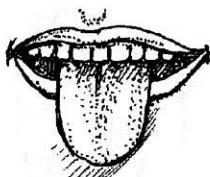
- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਸੁਖ ਚੱਕਣ ਲਿਆ
c. ਜੁਵਕ ਢੁੱਧ ਪੀ
- b. ਗੁਲਬ ਉਨ ਲਿਆ
d. ਉਪਕਾਰ ਚੁੱਪ ਕਰ

- 2.** Write the name of the following pictures in Gurmukhi:



a. dhakkhan



b. zabaan



c. unn

7 ਢਲੈਂਕਰੇ ਉ _ dulainkarhe oo

The dependent form of the vowel **dulainkarhe** appears under the letter being affected. For purposes of transliteration the symbol *oo* is used to represent the **dulainkarhe**.

Reading

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ਸੂਰ, ਫੜ, ਝਾੜ੍ਹ, ਭੁਪ
soor, pharr, jhaarhoo, bhoop
<i>pig, hold, broom, Bhup</i> | 2. ਰੂਪ, ਆਹੂ ਖ
roop, aarhoo khaa
<i>Rup, eat the peach</i> |
| 3. ਸਰੂਪ ਦਾ ਉਠ
Saroop daa ooth
<i>Sarup's camel</i> | 4. ਅਨੂਪ, ਮੂਰਤ ਬਣ
Anoop, mooraṭ banhaa
<i>Anup, draw a picture</i> |

Writing pattern**Exercises**

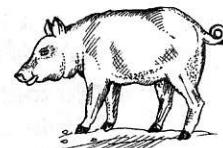
- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਸਰੂਪ ਦਾ ਉਠ
c. ਅਨੂਪ ਆਹੂ ਖ
- b. ਰੂਪ ਮੂਰਤ ਬਣ
d. ਭੁਪ ਝਾੜ੍ਹ ਫੜ

- 2.** Write the Gurmukhi of the items in the pictures.



a. ooth



b. soor



c. jhaarhoo

8 ਲਾਂਵ ਏ ^ laanv e

The dependent form of the vowel **laanv** is placed on top of the affected letter. For transliteration purposes the letter *e* will be used to symbolise the **laanv**.

Reading

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ਲੇਲੇ, ਪਿਆਰੇ, ਭੇਡ, ਮੇਰਾ
lele, piaare, bhed, meraa
<i>lambs, beloved, sheep, my</i> | 2. ਇਹ ਛੇ ਮੇਜ਼ ਹਨ
ih che mez han
<i>These are six tables</i> |
| 3. ਉਹ ਜੇਨ ਦਾ ਸੇਬ ਏ
uh jen daa seb e
<i>That is Jane's apple</i> | 4. ਡੋਵਿਡ, ਸ਼ੇਰ ਦੇਖ
devid, sher dekh
<i>David, look at the lion</i> |

Exercises

- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- a. ਇਹ ਛੇ ਲੇਲੇ ਹਨ
c. ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਸੇਬ ਏ
- b. ਲੇਲੇ ਪਿਆਰੇ ਹਨ
d. ਉਹ ਭੇਡ ਏ

- 2.** Fill in the blanks by writing the correct words in Gurmukhi:

- a. _____ lele b. _____ bhed c. _____ seb

9 ਦੁਲਾਂਵਾਂ ਐ ^ dulaanvaan ai

The dependent form of the vowel **dulaanvaan** is written on top of the affected letter. For transliteration purposes the symbol *ai* is used to represent **dulaanvaan**.

Reading

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ਸਵੈਟਰ, ਬੈਗ, ਜਰਨੈਲ, ਪੈਰ
svaitar, baig, jarnail, pair
<i>sweater, bag, Jarnail, foot</i> | 2. ਇਹ ਐਨਕ ਲੈ
ih ainak lai
<i>Have these spectacles</i> |
| 3. ਅੱਜ ਐਤਵਾਰ ਹੈ
ajj aitvaar hai
<i>Today is Sunday</i> | 4. ਇਹ ਕੈਮਰਾ ਮੇਰੀ ਭੈਣ ਦਾ ਹੈ
ih kaimraa meree bhainh <u>dā</u> hai
<i>This is my sister's camera</i> |

Exercises

- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| a. ਇਹ ਕੈਮਰਾ ਜਰਨੈਲ ਦਾ ਹੈ | b. ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਸਵੈਟਰ ਹੈ |
| c. ਇਹ ਬੈਗ ਮੇਰੀ ਭੈਣ ਦਾ ਹੈ | d. ਇਹ ਐਨਕ ਲੈ |

- 2.** Fill in the blanks by writing the correct words in Gurmukhi:

- | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| a. _____ bhaih | b. _____ aitvaar | c. _____ ainak |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|

10 ਹੋੜਾ ਓ horhaa o

The dependent form of the vowel **horhaa** appears above the affected letter. For transliteration purposes the letter *o* is used to represent **horhaa**.

Reading

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ਖੋਤਾ, ਮੋਟਾ, ਘੋੜਾ, ਸੋਟੀ
khotaa, motaa, ghorhaa, sotee
<i>donkey, fat, horse, stick</i> | 2. ਸੋਹਣ ਕੋਲ ਤੋਤਾ ਹੈ
sohanh kol totaa hai
<i>Sohan has a parrot.</i> |
| 3. ਰੋਟੀ ਖਾ ਮੋਹਨ
rotee khaa mohan
<i>Eat your food Mohan.</i> | 4. ਆਓ ਬੱਚਿਓ ਮੇਰ ਦੇਖੋ
ao bachchio mor <u>dekho</u>
<i>Come on children look at
the peacock.</i> |

Exercises

- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| a. ਸੋਹਣ ਰੋਟੀ ਖਾ | b. ਖੋਤਾ ਮੋਟਾ ਹੈ |
| c. ਮੋਹਨ ਕੋਲ ਘੋੜਾ ਹੈ | d. ਆਓ ਬੱਚਿਓ ਤੋਤਾ ਦੇਖੋ |

- 2.** Fill in the missing letters in Gurmukhi:

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| a. — ਤਾ khotaa | b. — ਟਾ motaa | c. — ਝਾ ghorhaa |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|

11 ਕਨੌਰਾ ਔ ^ kanaurhaa au

The dependent form of the **kanaurhaa** vowel appears above the affected letter. For transliteration purposes the symbol *au* is used to represent **kanaurhaa**.

Reading

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ਫੌਜੀ, ਪੌਰੀ, ਬਲੋਰ, ਦੌਰ
faujee, pauree, balaur, daurh
<i>soldier, ladder, playing marbles, run</i> | 2. ਸ਼ਰਨ ਕੌਰ, ਚੌਲ ਉਬਾਲ
sharan kaur, chaul ubaal
<i>Sharan Kaur, boil the rice</i> |
| 3. ਉਹ ਔਰਤ ਕੌਣ ਹੈ ?
uh aurat kaunh hai?
<i>Who is that woman?</i> | 4. ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਖਿਡੋਣੇ ਹਨ
ih mere khidaunhe han
<i>These are my toys.</i> |

Exercises

- 1.** Read the following sentences out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| a. ਚੌਲ ਉਬਾਲ | b. ਉਹ ਕੌਣ ਹੈ ? |
| c. ਉਹ ਫੌਜੀ ਹੈ | d. ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਬਲੋਰ ਹਨ |

- 2.** Fill in the missing letters and vowels in Gurmukhi:

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| a. — ਲ chaul | b. f — ਟੇ khidaunhe | c. — ਜੀ faujee |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|

12 ਬਿੰਦੀ bindee • and ਟਿੱਪੀ tippee ^ n

The **bindee** and the **tippee** both serve to add a nasal sound to a particular vowel. For transliteration purposes, the letter *n* is used for both the **tippee** and **bindee**.

Reading

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ਸਿੰਘ, ਚੁੰਜ, ਮੂੰਹ
singh, chunj, moonh
<i>lion, beak, mouth</i> | 2. ਅੰਬ, ਜੰਵ, ਲੰਕਾ
amb, jannj, lanngaa
<i>mango, marriage party, lame person</i> |
| 3. ਕਾਨ, ਗੱਦ, ਕੈਂਚੀ, ਮੀਂਹ
kaan, gend, kainchee, meenhh
<i>crow, ball, scissors, rain</i> | 4. ਹੋਨਥ, ਪਾਂਡ, ਉੰਗਲੀ, ਵਤਾਊਂ
honth, paund, unglee, vataaoon
<i>lips, pound, finger, aubergine</i> |

Writing pattern

• • ਅ ਅ
 ਏ → ਏ ਏ ਏ ਏ → ਏ ਏ ਏ

Exercises

1. Read the following words out loud and check your pronunciation with the audio recording.
- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| a. ਸਿੰਘ, ਜੰਵ, ਕੌਂਚੀ | b. ਚੁੱਜ, ਲੰਕਾ, ਉੱਗਲੀ |
| c. ਮੂੰਹ, ਅੰਥ, ਮੰਹ | d. ਕਾਂ, ਗੋਂਦ, ਵਤਾਊ |
2. Fill in the missing letters and vowels in Gurmukhi:
- a. ਜ— jannj b. ਲ— lanngaa c. ਵ— vataaoon

1 | ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?

tuhaadaa kee haal hai?

How are you?

In this unit you will learn:

- how to use simple greetings
- how to introduce yourself
- how to ask how people are

1 What is your name?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ?

gall baat 1 tuhaadaa kee naam hai?

It is the first day of the new Panjabi class at Heywood College. Mr Charan Singh is the teacher and Jane, Henry and David are students.

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਜੀ !

Charan Singh saਤ sree akaal jee!
Hello! (see Commentary section)

ਜੇਨ ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਜੀ !
Jane saਤ sree akaal jee!
Hello!

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਹੈ। ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ?

Charan Singh meraa naam charan singh hai. tuhaadaa kee naam hai?
My name is Charan Singh. What's your name? (to Jane)

ਜੇਨ ਜੀ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਜੇਨ ਹੈ।
Jane jee meraa naam jen hai.
My name is Jane.

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ
Charan Singh ਅੱਛਾ ! ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ?
achchaa. tuhaadaa kee naam hai?
OK! What's your name? (to Henry)

ਹੈਨਰੀ
Henry ਜੀ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਹੈਨਰੀ ਹੈ।
jee meraa naam hainree hai.
My name is Henry.

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ
Charan Singh ਸ਼ਾਬਾਸ਼ !
shaabaash!
Well done!

David and Jane exchange greetings in an informal manner.

ਜੇਨ
Jane ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਂ ਜੇਨ ਏ। ਤੇਰਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਂ ਏ ?
sat sree akaal. meraa naan jen e. teraa kee naan e?
Hello. My name is Jane. What's your name?

ਡੇਵਿਦ
David ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਂ ਡੇਵਿਡ ਏ।
sat sree akaal. meraa naan devid e.
Hello. My name is David.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਤੁਹਾਡਾ	tuhaadaa	<i>your (formal)</i>
ਕੀ	kee	<i>what</i>
ਨਾਮ	naam	<i>name (m.) (formal)</i>
ਹੈ	hai	<i>is (formal)*</i>
ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ	sat sree akaal	<i>Sikh greeting (literal meaning: God is truth)</i>
ਜੀ	jee	<i>honorific particle signifying respect (see Commentary)</i>
ਮੇਰਾ	meraa	<i>my</i>
ਅੱਛਾ	ach chaa	<i>OK, alright</i>
ਸ਼ਾਬਾਸ਼	shaabaash	<i>well done</i>
ਤੇਰਾ	teraa	<i>your (informal)</i>
ਨਾਂ	naan	<i>name (m.) (informal)</i>
ਏ	e	<i>is (informal)*</i>

* The ways in which is, am and are are formed in Panjabi will be referred to in Unit 2

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------------------|-------------|
| a) ਤੁਹਾਡਾ | tuhaadaa | means <i>your</i> | True/ False |
| b) ਮੇਰਾ | meraa | means <i>my</i> | True/ False |
| c) ਅੱਛਾ | achchaa | means <i>well done</i> | True/ False |

2. Arrange in correct word order

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) ਮੇਰਾ ਹੈ ਡੇਵਿਡ ਨਾਂ | meraa-hai-devid-naan | <i>My name is David.</i> |
| b) ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਹੈ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ? | tuhaadaa-hai-naam-kee? | <i>What is your name?</i> |
| c) ਨਾਂ ਏ ਕੀ ਤੇਰਾ ? | naan-e-kee-teraa? | <i>What is your name?</i> |

2 How are you?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?

gall baat 2 tuhaadaa kee haal hai?

Parveen and Talat meet each other in the city centre. Parveen is with her brother Rahim and sister Salma.

ਪਰਵੀਨ Parveen	ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ. ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ? asslaam alaikam. tuhaadaa kee haal hai? <i>Hello. How are you?</i>
ਤਲਤ Talat	ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ. ਮੇਰਾ ਹਾਲ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ। vaalaikam asslaam. meraa haal theek hai. <i>Hello. I'm fine.</i>
ਪਰਵੀਨ Parveen	ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਭਾਰਾ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਇਹ ਮੇਰੀ ਭੈਣ ਹੈ। ih meraa bharaa hai ate ih meree bhainh hai. <i>This is my brother and this is my sister.</i>
ਤਲਤ Talat	ਕੀ ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਪਰਵਾਰ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ ? ke tuhaadaa parvaar theek hai? <i>Is your family alright?</i>

ਸਲਮਾ ਤੇ ਰਹੀਮ
Salma and Rahim

ਸ਼ੁਕਰੀਆ। ਸਾਡਾ ਪਰਵਾਰ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।
shukreeaa. saadaa parvaar theek hai.
Thank you. Our family is fine.

ਤਲਤ
Talat

ਖੁਦਾ ਹਾਫਿਜ਼।
khudaa haafiz.
Goodbye.

ਰਹੀਮ, ਸਲਮਾ ਤੇ ਪਰਵੀਨ
Rahim, Salma
and Parveen

ਖੁਦਾ ਹਾਫਿਜ਼।
khudaa haafiz.
Goodbye.

ਸਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਹਾਲ	haal	condition (lit.) (m.)
ਹੈ	hai	is
ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?	tuhaadaa kee haal hai?	How are you? (see Commentary)
ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ	asslaam alaikam	Muslim greeting
ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ	vaalaikam asslaam	response to Muslim greeting
ਠੀਕ	theek	fine/OK/alright
ਇਹ	ih	this
ਭਰਾ	bharaa	brother (m.)
ਅਤੇ	ate	and
ਬੈਟੇ	bhainh	sister (f.)
ਪਰਵਾਰ	parvaar	family (m.)
ਸ਼ੁਕਰੀਆ	shukreeaa	thank you (m.)
ਸਾਡਾ	saadaa	our
ਖੁਦਾ ਹਾਫਿਜ਼	khudaa haafiz	Muslim departing phrase

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Begin the conversation



- a) ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ
vaalaikam asslaam
Hello.



- b) ਮੇਰਾ ਹਾਲ ਠੀਕ ਏ
meraa haal theek e
I am fine.

- c) ਜੀ, ਪਰਵਾਰ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ
Jee, parvaar theek hai
The family is fine.

2. Match the expressions

- a) ਮੇਰਾ ਭਰਾ meraa bharaa
- b) ਮੇਰੀ ਬੈਟੇ meree bhainh
- c) ਸਾਡਾ ਪਰਵਾਰ saadaa parvaar

1. our family
2. my brother
3. my sister

ਲੋਕੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points

Possessive adjectives

1. Adjectives are words which describe people, places and objects. The words my, your and his/her are possessive adjectives. Unlike in English, the possessive adjective in Panjabi changes according to what is being possessed. In Dialogues 1 and 2 the word **ਹਾਲ** (condition) is

grammatically masculine and therefore requires a masculine possessive adjective. Similarly, a woman talking about her children will use two forms of the word *my*, distinguishing between her son and daughter. ਮੇਰਾ meraa would apply to the male and ਮੇਰੀ meree for the female. Note that it is the ending which changes. This distinction is the same even if the father were talking about his son and daughter.

Examples:

Mother talking about her children:

ਮੇਰਾ ਲੜਕਾ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।	meraa larhkaa theek hai.	<i>My son is fine.</i>
ਮੇਰੀ ਲੜਕੀ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।	meree larhkee theek hai.	<i>My daughter is fine.</i>

Father talking about his children:

ਮੇਰਾ ਲੜਕਾ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।	meraa larhkaa theek hai.	<i>My son is fine.</i>
ਮੇਰੀ ਲੜਕੀ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।	meree larhkee theek hai.	<i>My daughter is fine.</i>

You will have noticed that there is no difference between the sentences spoken by the mother and the father. The form of the possessive adjective does not depend on the gender of the possessor (i.e. whether male or female) but on the gender of what is being possessed. In addition to gender, possessive adjectives also change according to whether the possessed object is singular or plural. As both parents are talking about one person, the possessive adjective is in the *singular* form.

There are, therefore, three factors which need to be taken into account when selecting the appropriate possessive adjective:

- whether the object is masculine or feminine
 - whether the object is singular or plural
 - whether the situation is formal or informal
2. In addition to describing objects, possessive adjectives are also used to describe different states of being, i.e. how you are, how you are feeling or other personal descriptions such as your name. You will remember from Dialogue 2 that Parveen uses the possessive adjective *your* when asking her friend Talat *How are you?* The literal meaning of this question in Panjabi is *How is your condition?*. Talat responds by saying *I'm fine*, literally *My condition is fine* with the possessive adjective *my*.

The following tables illustrate the way in which possessive adjectives are formed with singular, masculine and feminine objects. Note that the plural forms given here (their, our) refer only to the nature of the possessor, not of the object being possessed.

Possessive adjectives with singular masculine objects

1st person

ਮੇਰਾ	meraa	<i>my</i>
ਸਾਡਾ	saadaa	<i>our</i>

2nd person

ਤੇਰਾ	teraa	<i>your (informal)</i>
ਤੁਹਾਡਾ	tuhaadaa	<i>your (formal)</i>

3rd person

ਇਹ ਦਾ/ਇਸ ਦਾ	ih <u>daa</u> /is <u>daa</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਇਹਨਾਂ ਦਾ	ihna <u>andaa</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>
ਊਹ ਦਾ/ਊਸ ਦਾ	uh <u>daa</u> /us <u>daa</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਊਹਨਾਂ ਦਾ	uhna <u>aan</u> <u>daa</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>
		<i>their</i>

Possessive adjectives with singular feminine objects

1st person

ਮੇਰੀ	meree	<i>my</i>
ਸਾਡੀ	saadee	<i>our</i>

2nd person

ਤੇਰੀ	teree	<i>your (informal)</i>
ਤੁਹਾਡੀ	tuhaadee	<i>your (formal)</i>

3rd person

ਇਹ ਦੀ/ਇਸ ਦੀ	ih <u>dee</u> /is <u>dee</u>	his/her
ਇਹਨਾਂ ਦੀ	ihnaan <u>dee</u>	his/her (formal) their
ਊਹ ਦੀ/ਊਸ ਦੀ	uh <u>dee</u> /us <u>dee</u>	his/her
ਊਹਨਾਂ ਦੀ	uhnaan <u>dee</u>	his/her (formal) their

Further examples of possessive adjectives with plural objects will be illustrated in Unit 3.

Formal and informal speech

There is a clear distinction between formal and informal speech in Panjabi. For instance, two sisters talking over the phone will use significantly different speech from two strangers meeting for the first time. Let us consider the example of a telephone conversation between Surinder and Mohinder who are sisters.

Surinder **ਕਿੱਦਾਂ ਮੋਹਿੰਡਰ ?** kiddaan Mohinder? *How are you, Mohinder?*
 Mohinder **ਠੀਕ ਹਾਂ। ਤੇਰਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?** theek haan. teraa kee haal e? *I'm fine. How are you?*

Now let's contrast this situation with two strangers meeting in an office.

Mr Sandhu **ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ਜੀ ?** tuhaadaa kee haal hai jee? *How are you?*

Mr Johal **ਧੰਨਵਾਦ। ਮੇਰਾ ਹਾਲ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।** dhanavaad meraa haal theek hai.
Thank you. I am fine.

If you compare these two example situations, you will notice that there are two Panjabi words for the same English word *your*. In the first meeting between Mr Singh and the Panjabi class at Heywood College, the words **ਤੇਰਾ** teraa and **ਤੁਹਾਡਾ** tuhaadaa are used for *your*. Either word is used depending on who is being addressed. The word **ਤੁਹਾਡਾ** tuhaadaa is used normally when addressing more than one person (plural) or when addressing one person, male or female, formally as a sign of respect. Therefore, the word **ਤੁਹਾਡਾ** tuhaadaa serves two purposes:

1 HOW ARE YOU?

- to address a singular male/female in a formal manner
- to address more than one person, male or female, in an informal or formal manner

Conversely, the word **ਤੇਰਾ** teraa is used only in an informal manner to address a single person, male or female.

Here are two common examples of the formal and informal:

ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa kee naam hai? *What is your name?* (formal)

ਤੇਰਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ? teraa kee naam hai? *What is your name?* (informal)

Asking questions in Panjabi

In Dialogue 1 the word **ਕੀ** kee is used to turn a statement into a question. For example:

Statement—**ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਪਰਵਰਚ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।** tuhaadaa parvaar *Your family is fine.*

Question—**ਕੀ ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਪਰਵਰਚ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ ?** ke tuhaadaa *Is your family parvaar theek hai?* *fine?*

However, you do not always need to use a question word, or *interrogative*, to turn a statement into a question. The use of intonation (rise and fall of the voice in speech) and emphasis can serve the same purpose. Raising your voice at the end of a sentence or using a questioning tone are equally effective. To ask the question *What is your name?* you can simply say:

ਜੀ ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਨਾਮ ? jee tuhaadaa naam? *Your name, please?*

The use of any question depends on the context of the conversation, the relationship between the speakers, and the number of people involved. You may have noted that the question *How are you?* is given as **ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?** tuhaadaa kee haal hai? There are three literal meanings of this sentence: *What is your condition?*, *How are you getting on?* and *How are you feeling?* The various forms of *How are you?* will be used throughout the rest of the book. So look out for them!

There are many ways of asking and responding to the question *How are you?* in Panjabi. Some of the possibilities are listed in the Commentary section. You do not have to learn all of these, but they are useful to know when trying to understand the speech of other Panjabi speakers.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. How are you?

There are various ways of saying *How are you?* in Panjabi. Here are some examples:

- ਤੂੰ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਹੋ ? toon kiven hain? (informal)
- ਤੇਰਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ? teraa kee haal hai? (informal)
- ਕਿੱਦਾਂ ? kiddaan? (colloquial)

Now let's have a look at the variety of responses to the question *How are you?*

- ਠੀਕ ਏ theek e *Fine.* (informal)
- ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਕਿਰਪਾ ਹੈ tuhaadee kirpaa *By your blessings.*
- hai *(I am fine)* (formal)
- ਵਾਹਿਗੁਰੂ ਦਾ ਸ਼ੁਕਰ ਹੈ vaahiguroo daa *By the grace of God.*
- shukar hai *(I am fine)* (formal)

It is common for Panjabi speakers to respond to *How are you?* reciprocally by asking the same of the enquirer:

- ਤੂੰ ਸੁਣ toon sunhaa *You tell (how you are).* (informal)
- ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣਓ tuseen sunhaao *You tell (how you are).* (formal)

As in English when asked the question *How are you?* many people say *thank you* after replying with such responses as *I'm fine*. There are a few common ways of expressing *thank you* in Panjabi:

- ਧੰਨਵਾਦ dhanavaad
- ਸ਼ੁਕਰਿਆ shukreeaa
- ਮਿਹਰਬਾਨੀ miharbaanee
- ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਕਿਰਪਾ ਹੈ tuhaadee kirpaa hai.

2. Panjabi greetings

Punjabi greetings are chosen, not according to the time of day – as in cases such as *Good morning* or *Good evening* – but according to the religion of the speakers. All the world's main faiths are represented in Panjab. However, after the partition of the region, the main religious group in West Panjab (Pakistan) is Muslim, with a sizeable Christian minority, and in East Panjab there is a mixture of Sikhs and Hindus with a Christian and

Buddhist minority. Throughout the remainder of the book, we have focused on the Hindu, Sikh and Muslim religious groupings.

Sikhs greet each other by saying: ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਜੀ **sat sree akaal jee**, or simply ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ **sat sree akaal**. There is an associated body language with each greeting. When saying ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ **sat sree akaal** the hands are, usually, joined together in front of the chest, with the head slightly bowed. In formal and respectful circumstances the suffix **ਜੀ jee** is added. The reply to the greeting is the same, **ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ sat sree akaal**. This is also used on departure, and may be combined with other sayings such as ਫਿਰ ਮਿਲਾਂ ਜੇ **phir milaan ge** (*see you again*) or ਚੱਥ ਰਾਖਾ **rabb raakhaa** (*May God protect you*).

The Muslim greeting is **ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ asslaam alaikam**, which is taken from Arabic and means *Peace be upon you*. The reply to this is **ਵਾਲਾਕਮ asslaam vaalaikam asslaam**, which means *Peace be upon you also*. On departing a Muslim may say **ਖੁਦਾ ਹਾਫਿਜ਼ khudaa haafiz**, which means *May God protect you*. Men will greet each other by a shake of the hand and an embrace or by the raising of the right hand. Women would greet one another with an embrace or a clasping of the hand.

ਨਮਸਤੇ namaste, **ਨਮਸਤੇ ਜੀ namaste jee**, or **ਨਮਸਕਾਰ namaskaar** are different forms of Hindu greetings. The greeting is from Sanskrit and literally means *I greet you respectfully*. The reply to **ਨਮਸਤੇ namaste** is **ਨਮਸਤੇ, namaste**. Men may shake hands in greeting. However, to and among women the folding of hands and a slight bowing of the head is considered a mark of respect. There is no specific departing phrase.

It is considered good practice to use the greeting of the other person's religion on first meeting. Therefore if Mr Singh, who is a Sikh teacher, had a Muslim student in his class, he would greet him by saying **ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ asslaam alaikam**. The student could equally reply **ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ, vaalaikam asslaam** or say **ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ sat sree akaal** as a sign of respect. However, if you are not certain of the other person's religious background, it is advisable to use the westernised, secular greeting *hello* or *hello jee*.

ਜੀ jee is an extra added word known as an honorific particle, signifying respect. The use of the word **ਜੀ jee** is very common in the Panjabi language. It can be added to the end (and sometimes before) almost any sentence as a sign of respect in a formal context. To some extent **jee** is the equivalent of *please* and also of *sir/madam* in English.

ਅੰਡਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

1. Word search

Three words are hidden in the box. These words are ਅੱਛਾ achchaa, OK, ਸ਼ਾਬਾਸ਼ shaabaash, well done, and ਰੱਖ ਰਾਖ rabb raakhaa, goodbye. Find them by looking horizontally across each of the rows.

ਉ	ਰੱ	ਬ	ਰਾ	ਖਾ
ਮਾ	ਪ	ਰ	ਗ	ਚ
ਸ਼ਾ	ਬਾ	ਸ	ਕਾ	ਯ
ਜ	ਜ	ਖ	ਸ	ਬਾ
ਕੱ	ਲ	ਹਿ	ਅੱ	ਛਾ

2. Greeting response

How would you respond to someone who greets you with the following expressions?

- a) ਨਮਸਤੇ namaste
- b) ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ asslaam alaikam
- c) ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ sat sree akaal

3. Use the appropriate formal and informal possessive adjectives in the following sentences.

- a) _____ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ? _____ kee naam hai? *What is your name?* (formal)
- b) _____ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ? _____ kee haal hai? *How are you?* (informal)
- c) _____ ਕੀ ਨਾਂ ਦੇ? _____ kee naan e? *What is your name?* (informal)

4. Complete the conversation

You have just met Kiran, a new student in the Panjabi class. Following the English prompts complete the following conversation in Panjabi.

Kiran ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਜੀ। ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ? sat sree akaal jee. tuhaadaa kee naam hai?

Hello. What is your name?

You Say hello, tell her your name and ask what her name is.

Kiran ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਕਿਰਾਨ ਹੈ। ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ? meraa naam Kiran hai. tuhaadaa kee haal hai?

My name is Kiran. How are you?

You Tell her you are fine and then ask her how she is.

Kiran ਮੇਰਾ ਹਾਲ ਵੀ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ। meraa haal vee theek hai.
I am fine too.

You Say goodbye.

2 | मैं किरन हाँ main kiran haan

I'm Kiran

In this unit you will learn:

- how to say who you are
- how to ask about and describe ethnicity or nationality
- about Panjabi sentence word order

1 Are you English too?

गल बात 1 की तुम्हारी वी अंगरेज हो ?

gall baat 1 kee tuseen vee angrez ho?

It is the second day of the Panjabi class at Heywood College. Mr Singh is the teacher and Henry, Jane, Ashok, Kiran and David are students attending the class.

चरन सिंਘ जेन, की तुू जरमन हों ?

Charan Singh jen, kee toon jarman hain?
Jane, are you German?

जेन नहीं जी, मैं जरमन नहीं हाँ। मैं अंगरेज हाँ।

Jane naheen jee, main jarman naheen haan. main angrez haan.
No, I'm not German. I'm English.

डेविड मैं वी अंगरेज हाँ अते मैं विदिआरबी हाँ।

David main vee angrez haan ate main vidiaarthi haan.
I'm also English and I am a student.

चरन सिंਘ बहुत अँड्हा ! अशोक, की तुम्हारी भारती हो ?

Charan Singh bahut achchaa. ashok, kee tuseen bhaartee ho?
Very good. Ashok, are you Indian?

अशोक
Ashok

मेरा देस भारत है अते मेरी बोली गुजराती है।
meraa desh bhaarat hai ate meree bolee gujraatee hai.
My country is India and my language is Gujarati.

चरन सिंਘ
Charan Singh

साधास ! हैनरी, की किरन गुजराती है ?
shaabaash! hainree, kee kiran gujraatee hai?
Well done! Henry, is Kiran Gujarati?

हैनरी
Henry

नहीं, उह पंजाबी है अते हिंदू है।
naheen, uh panjaabee hai ate hindoo hai.
No, she is Panjabi and Hindu.

चरन सिंਘ
Charan Singh

यैनवाद।
dhannvaad.
Thank you.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

तुू	<u>toon</u>	<i>you (informal)</i>
ਜਰਮਨ	<u>jarman</u>	<i>German (m./f.)</i>
अंਗਰੇਜ	<u>angrez</u>	<i>English (m./f.)</i>
ਵਿਦਿਆਰਥੀ	<u>vidiaarthi</u>	<i>student (m./f.)</i>
ਤੁਸੀਂ	<u>tuseen</u>	<i>you (formal)</i>
ਭਾਰਤੀ	<u>bhaartee</u>	<i>Indian (m./f.)</i>
ਦੇਸ	<u>desh</u>	<i>country (m.)</i>
ਭਾਰਤ	<u>bhaarat</u>	<i>India (m.)</i>
ਬਹੁਤ ਅੱਛਾ	<u>bahut achchaa</u>	<i>very good</i>
ਬੋਲੀ	<u>bolee</u>	<i>language (f.)</i>
ਗੁਜਰਾਤੀ	<u>gujraatee</u>	<i>a person from Gujarat or of Gujarati origin (m./f.)</i>
ਵੀ	<u>vee</u>	<i>also</i>
ਹੋਣ	<u>honhaa</u>	<i>to be</i>
ਮੈं	<u>main</u>	<i>I</i>
ਤੇ	<u>te</u>	<i>and</i>
ਨਹੀं	<u>naheen</u>	<i>no</i>
ਪੰਜਾਬੀ	<u>panjaabee</u>	<i>a person from Panjab or of Panjabi origin (m./f.)</i>
अਤੇ	<u>ate</u>	<i>and</i>
ਹਿੰਦੂ	<u>hindoo</u>	<i>Hindu (m./f.)</i>



abhiāas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

Say whether these statements about the students' ethnicities and nationalities are true or false.

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| a) किरन गुजराती है | kiran gujraathee hai | True / False |
| b) जेन जर्मन है | jen jarman hai | True / False |
| c) अशोक भारती है | ashok bhaaratee hai | True / False |

2. Listen to the tape and tick the correct box

	Punjabi	English	Gujarati
Jeevan			
John			
Ram			

2 I'm Kiran

गॅल बात 2 मैं किरन हूँ

gall baat 2 main kiran haan

Kiran and Ashok meet at the Hindu temple. They have only met once in the Panjabi class and are still unacquainted with one another.

किरन
Kiran

नमस्ते। मैं किरन हाँ। की तुम्हीं अशोक हो ?
namaste. main kiran haan. kee tuseen ashok ho?
Hello. I'm Kiran. Are you Ashok?

अशोक
Ashok

नमस्ते। हाँ जी, मैं अशोक हाँ। इह मेरे माता जी हन, निमसज शरमा।
namaste. haan jee, main ashok haan. ih mere maataa jee han, misaz sharmaa.
Hello. Yes, I'm Ashok. This is my mother, Mrs Sharma.

किरन

Kiran

निमसज शरमा

Mrs Sharma

किरन

Kiran

अशोक

Ashok

नमस्ते मिसज शरमा। तुहाड़ा की हाल है ?

namaste misaz sharmaa. tuhaadaa kee haal hai?

Hello Mrs Sharma. How are you?

मैं ठीक हाँ। की तेरे माता जी इच्छे हन? असीं देने सहेलीआं हाँ।

main theek haan. kee tere maataa jee iththe han? aseen donon saheleeaan haan.

I'm fine. Is your mother here? We are both friends.

नहीं जी, उह इच्छे नहीं हन, उह घर हन।

naheen jee, uh iththe naheen han, uh ghar han.

No, she's not here. She's at home.

माता जी, किरन ते मैं देने इच्छे कलास विच हाँ।

maataa jee, kiran te main donon ikko kalaas vich haan.

Mother, Kiran and I are both in the same class.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

इह	ih	he, she, it
माता जी	maataa jee	mother (f.)
मैं	main	I
इच्छे	iththe	here
असीं	aseen	we
देने	donon	both
ਸहेली	sahelee	friend (f.)
उह	uh	he, she, that, they
नहीं	naheen	no
घर	ghar	house, home (m.)
असीं देने	aseen donon	both of us
इच्छे	ikko	same
कलास	kalaas	class (f.)
वਿਚ	vich	in



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiāas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.



1. Listen and give appropriate responses

Kiran ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਹੋ ? kee <u>tuseen</u> ashok ho?	Ashok
Kiran ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa kee haal hai?	Mrs Sharma
Mrs Sharma ਕੀ ਤੇਰੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਇੱਥੇ ਹਨ ? kee tere maataa jee <u>iththe</u> han?	Kiran

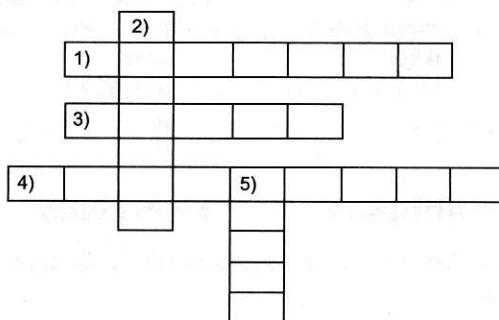
2. Arrange in correct word order

- a. ਹਾਂ ਮੈਂ ਕਿਰਨ haan-main-kiran *I am Kiran.*
 b. ਹੋ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ? ho-ashok-kee-tuseen? *Are you Ashok?*
 c. ਨਹੀਂ ਇੱਥੇ ਉਹ ਹਨ naheen-iththe-uh-han *She is not here.*

3. Crossword

Complete the crossword in English using clues taken from Dialogues 1 and 2.

- 1) ਕਿਰਨ _____ ਹੈ kirin _____ hai
- 2) ਜੇਨ _____ ਹੈ jen _____ hai
- 3) ਕਿਰਨ ਤੇ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਦੋਨੋਂ ਇੱਕੋ _____ ਵਿਚ ਹਨ kirin te ashok donon ikko _____ vich han
- 4) ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਦੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ _____ ਹੈ ashok de maataa jee daa naam _____ hai
- 5) ਕਿਰਨ ਦੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ _____ ਹਨ kirin de maataa jee _____ han



bolee baare Language points

Subject pronouns

Pronouns are words used in the place of nouns, or naming words, which are used to refer to persons, places or objects. In English the words *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they* and *we* are called subject pronouns. In Panjabi they are very important as the endings of verbs change according to which subject pronoun is being used, as will be seen in subsequent units.

Singular subject pronouns

First person	ਮੈਂ	main	<i>I</i>
Second person	ਤੁਸੀਂ	toon	<i>you</i> (informal)
	ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen	<i>you</i> (formal)

Third person	ਇਹ	ih	<i>he/she/it</i>
	ਉਹ	uh	<i>he/she/it</i>

Plural subject pronouns

First person	ਆਸੀਂ	aseen	<i>we</i>
Second person	ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen	<i>you</i>
	ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen	<i>you</i>

Third person	ਇਹ	ih	<i>they</i> (near)
	ਉਹ	uh	<i>they</i> (far)

Unlike in English, but as in all the Latin-based languages, persons, places and objects (nouns) are grammatically either male or female in Panjabi. Even though some objects have ambiguous status in the sense that some people may refer to them as masculine and others as feminine, generally all nouns, even those with ambiguous status, belong to either the masculine or feminine gender. Some nouns can be used for both male and female, such as doctor. You will note in the vocabulary sections that we have given (m.), (f.) and (m./f.) to represent the gender of a noun.

There is no gender distinction in the actual forms of subject pronouns, only in the verb endings that refer to the subject pronoun. For example, **ਉਹ uh** can refer to one man or woman or a group of either men or women. There is no way of distinguishing, by looking only at the subject pronoun,

between he, she or they as the third person singular and plural forms are interchangeable. It is the *verb ending* which will enable you to recognise whether it is he, she or they being referred to. In Panjabi there is no equivalent to the word *it* which implies gender neutrality in English.

Use of subject pronouns

1. **ਇਹ ih** and **ਊਹ uh** literally mean *he/she/it* in the singular and *they* in the plural. There is however a recognisable distinction between the use of **ਊਹ uh** and **ਇਹ ih**. **ਊਹ uh** refers to a person or persons absent or at a distance, whereas **ਇਹ ih** is used when the person or persons are present or in close proximity.

2. In English the words *these* and *those* are called demonstrative pronouns. In Panjabi there are no specific equivalents. **ਊਹ uh** and **ਇਹ ih**, however, often translate into *those* and *these*, respectively, in many situations.

3. When talking about a singular person who is deserving of respect, such as Kiran's mother in Dialogue 2, it is grammatically correct always to use the plural form:

ਊਹ ਇੱਥੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਨ, ਊਹ ਘਰ ਹਨ। uh iththe naheen han, uh ghar han. *She's not here, she's at home.*

ਊਹ uh and **ਇਹ ih** are used in the plural, in this case, which is reflected in the use of the plural form of **ਹੋਣਾ (ਹਨ) honhaa (han)** instead of the singular **ਹੈ hai**, even though only one mother (she) is being talked about.

4. In a similar way, the word **ਤੂਂ toon** you is used informally and **ਤੁਸੀਂ tuseen** is used in both formal speech as well as in the plural form. These two forms of you require discretion in their application. **ਤੂਂ toon** is used between family members and close friends as well as when speaking to younger people. It is also used in public speech where a degree of informality is expected, such as when bargaining in the market or fixing the price of a taxi fare. **ਤੁਸੀਂ tuseen** is a more formal and polite form which is used between people of equal status and age as well as to people deserving respect due to age or social standing. However, when the distinction between the formal and informal use is not obvious, it is always safest to use the formal. Formal and informal speech is a crucial distinction in Panjabi and will crop up many times as you progress through the course. If you have some knowledge of French or Spanish, you will note the

similarity here between the singular, informal use of *you, tú* and the plural and singular formal, forms of *you, vous* (French) and *usted* (Spanish).

The present tense of ਹੋਣਾ honhaa is, am and are

Subject pronouns are assigned appropriate forms of the verb *to be*. This can similarly be compared with English: *I am, you are, we are, he is, they are*. In Panjabi *to be* is expressed in the verb **ਹੋਣਾ honhaa** which denotes states of being, conditions and existence. Note the following pairings of subject pronouns with their assigned forms of **ਹੋਣਾ honhaa**:

Singular

First person	ਮੈਂ ਹਾਂ	main haan	<i>I am</i>
Second person	ਤੂਂ ਹੈ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਹੈ	toon hain tuseen ho	<i>you are (informal) you are (formal)</i>
Third person	ਇਹ ਹੈ ਊਹ ਹੈ	ih hai uh hai	<i>he/she/it is he/she/it is</i>

Plural

First person	ਅਸੀਂ ਹਾਂ	aseen haan	<i>we are</i>
Second person	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਹੋ	tuseen ho	<i>you are</i>
Third person	ਇਹ ਹਨ ਊਹ ਹਨ	ih han uh han	<i>they/these are they/those are</i>

Formal uses of possessive adjectives

The formal uses of subject pronouns in Panjabi also extend to possessive adjectives. In Unit 1 we saw how possessive adjectives are formed with singular masculine and feminine objects. Possessive adjectives used to describe people with respect or in a formal situation always take the formal form, even when the person being described is in the singular. Note the following examples where the possessive adjectives and forms of **ਹੋਣਾ honhaa, to be** change according to the formal and informal contexts in which they are used to describe singular people. In the following examples, note how **ਮੇਰੀ meree** (*my*) and **ਤੇਰੀ teree** (*your*) change into **ਮੇਰੇ mere** and **ਤੁਹਾਡੇ tuhaade**.

- Formal** ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਹਨ ih mere maatā jee han *This is my mother.*
- Informal** ਇਹ ਮੇਰੀ ਮਾਤਾ ਹੈ ih meree maatā hai *This is my mother.*
- Formal** ਕੀ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਇੱਥੇ ਹਨ ? kee tuhaade maatā jee iththe han? *Is your mother here?*
- Informal** ਕੀ ਤੇਰੀ ਮਾਤਾ ਇੱਥੇ ਹੈ ? kee teree maatā iththe hai? *Is your mother here?*

These examples illustrate how the plural in Panjabi can be used to make speech more formal. However, this is only one aspect of plural possessive adjectives. In these examples the object here is itself not in the plural (and the form of the adjective is being used in a formal situation). Unit 3 illustrates possessive adjectives with plural objects.

Word order

Note the word order of a simple Panjabi sentence – subject (person carrying out the action) first, verb (the action) last and the rest in between. The sentence *I am fine* is written in Panjabi as *I fine am*, where *I* is the subject and *am* is the verb. For example: ਮੈਂ ਠੀਕ ਹਾਂ main theek haan *I am fine*

ਮੈਂ	ਠੀਕ	ਹਾਂ
main	theek	haan
<i>I</i>	<i>fine</i>	<i>am</i>
subject		verb

Word order in Panjabi is generally more flexible than it is in English. Note how the meaning does not change though the word order does in the following sentences:

- ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa naam kee hai?
 ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa kee naam hai?

Both examples mean *What is your name?* However, this does not mean that any word order is allowed. The form of the verb ਹੋਣਾ honhaa (*ਹੈ hai*) is still at the end of the sentence in both examples.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. Where are you from?

The question of where someone comes from depends on who is doing the asking and where the conversation is taking place. For example, a person born in Panjab living in London will respond that they are from India if the questioner is an English person. However, if the questioner is a fellow Panjabi they may say the district or the village they are from. This apparently simple question becomes even more complicated when asked to diaspora South Asians. The response to the question *Where are you from?* can give rise to replies such as *Birmingham* or *New Jersey* which are quite legitimate responses. Increasingly, the use of a religious identity tagged onto a national identity is a form of self-identification used in the diaspora. Therefore, a young person responding to the question *Who are you?* may reply a *British Muslim* or *Canadian Sikh*. It is important to remember that Panjabi speakers come from a huge variety of national, religious and social contexts and this is reflected in the many possibilities that the questions *Where do you come from?* and *Who are you?* can evoke.

If you meet a Panjabi in England or North America, they are likely to live, or at least have relatives, in three areas which are known as centres of Panjabi settlement: Southall in England, Yuba City in California and Vancouver in Canada. Each of these areas is often called *Little Panjab*. Early Panjabi immigrants settled here and these places are still icons on the global map of Panjabi travels, serving as temporary embarkation ports to would-be emigrants. These areas are distinctive for the range of shops selling South Asian goods such as groceries, sweets, music, jewellery, clothing and food. Apart from being a central shopping area they are the focus of social, religious, political and cultural activities.

2. Names

South Asian names can provide many clues about a person's sex, background, country of origin and religious affiliation. These are often very important pieces of information, particularly when engaging in formal conversation.

Sikh names

Most Sikhs have three names: a personal name, a second name and a surname. The second name, 'Singh' for men and 'Kaur' for women is in

fact a religious name and its addition is one of the main ways of distinguishing men from women. Otherwise first names can be the same for men and women. Surnames vary from representing someone's caste or the name of their village.

Hindu names

The Hindu naming system is similar to the English naming system, in that most individuals have one or two personal names followed by a common surname. First names are generally male and female specific. A middle name of Kumar or Chand is quite popular in North India and is a way of distinguishing a Hindu Panjabi from a Sikh.

Muslim names

Muslim names tend to be less fixed in the order of first and second name. There is also a tendency for women not to have the surnames of their husbands, but just to have the word **bibi** or **begum** attached, which means lady or woman. Muslim names tend to be a composite of Koranic names with some local flavour. Male and female names are distinguished.

Throughout the book you will come across a range of Sikh, Hindu and Muslim names. Try and see if you can distinguish them. It is worth remembering, however, that some names transcend religious boundaries, and also that you may come across a lot of nicknames.



ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

1. Complete the box

ਹਨ	han	
ਹੈ		is
ਹੋ	ho	are

2. Say the sentences in Panjabi

- a) Are you Ashok?; b) Are you Kiran?; c) I am Kiran.; d) He is Ashok.

3. Refer to the dialogue and choose the correct forms of *to be* from the options given

- a) ਕੀ ਤੂੰ ਜਰਮਨ _____ (ਹੋ, ਹੈ)? kee toon jarman _____ (ho, hain)?
Are you German?

b) ਮੈਂ ਵੀ ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ _____ (ਹਾਂ, ਹੈ) main vee angrez _____ (haan, hai).
I'm also English.

c) ਕੀ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਤੇ ਕਿਰਨ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ _____ (ਹੈਂ, ਹਨ) ? kee ashok te kiran panjaabee _____ (hain, han)? *Are Ashok and Kiran Panjabi?*

4. Word search

Three words are hiddens in the box. These words are ਜਰਮਨ **jarman** German, ਪੰਜਾਬੀ **panjaabee** Panjabi and ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ **angrez** English. Find them by looking horizontally across each of the rows.

ਉ	ਜ	ਰ	ਮ	ਨ
ਕ	ਖ	ਪ	ਰ	ਲ
ਪੰ	ਜਾ	ਬੀ	ਸੀ	ਸਿ
ਟ	ਅੰ	ਗ	ਚੇ	ਜ
ਕੇ	ਕਾ	ਕਿ	ਕੀ	ਕੋ

3 | ਇਸ ਦਾ ਸੁਆਦ ਕੀ ਹੈ ? is daa suaad kee hai?

What does it taste like?

In this unit you will learn:

- the names of vegetables and Panjabi food
- how to ask questions
- how to describe people and things

1 What is this?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਇਹ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?

gall baat 1 ih kee hai?

Mr Singh has taken the Panjabi class to Southall in order to give the students an opportunity to hear and speak Panjabi in a real situation. They are in a grocery shop.

ਹੈਨਰੀ	ਇਹ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
Henry	ih kee hai? <i>What is this?</i>
ਡੁਕਾਂਦਾਰ	ਇਹ ਕਰੋਲਾ ਹੈ।
dukaandaar	ih karelaa hai.
Shopkeeper	<i>It (this) is a bitter gourd.</i>
ਹੈਨਰੀ	ਇਸ ਦਾ ਸੁਆਦ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
Henry	is <u>daa suaad</u> <u>kee</u> <u>hai</u> ? <i>What does it taste like?</i>
ਡੁਕਾਂਦਾਰ	ਇਸ ਦਾ ਸੁਆਦ ਕੌਰਾ ਹੈ।
Shopkeeper	is <u>daa suaad</u> <u>kaurhaa</u> <u>hai</u> . <i>It has a bitter taste.</i>
ਜੇਨ	ਉਸ ਸਬਜ਼ੀ ਦਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ?
Jane	us sabzee <u>daa</u> <u>keen</u> <u>naam</u> <u>hai</u> ? <i>What is the name of that vegetable?</i>

ਡੁਕਾਂਦਾਰ	ਛੋਟੀ ਸਬਜ਼ੀ ਭਿੰਡੀ ਹੈ ਤੇ ਵੱਡੇ ਸਲਗਮ ਹਨ।
Shopkeeper	chotee sabzee bhinddee hai te vadde shalgam han.
ਜੇਨ	<i>The small vegetable is okra and the large ones are turnips.</i>
Jane	ਕੀ ਸਲਗਮ ਮਿੱਠਾ ਹੈ ਜਾਂ ਕਸੈਲਾ ?
	kee shalgam miththaa hai jaan kasailaa?
	<i>Are turnips sweet or bitter?</i>
ਡੁਕਾਂਦਾਰ	ਉਹ ਮਿੱਠੇ ਹਨ ਤੇ ਬਹੁਤ ਸਸਤੇ ਵੀ ਹਨ।
Shopkeeper	uh miththe han te bahut sastee vee han.
	<i>They are sweet and also very cheap.</i>

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਕਰੋਲਾ	karelaa	bitter gourd (type of vegetable) (m.)
ਇਸ	is	it, this
ਦਾ	<u>daa</u>	of
ਸੁਆਦ	<u>suaad</u>	taste (m.)
ਕੌਰਾ / ਕਸੈਲਾ	kaurhaa/ kasailaa	bitter (v.)
ਉਸ	us	that
ਸਬਜ਼ੀ	sabzee	vegetable (f.)
ਛੋਟਾ	chotaa	small (v.)
ਭਿੰਡੀ	bhinddee	okra (type of vegetable) (f.)
ਵੱਡਾ	vaddaa	big, large (v.)
ਸਲਗਮ	shalgam	turnip (m.)
ਸਸਤਾ	sastaa	cheap (v.)
ਮਿੱਠਾ	miththaa	sweet (v.)
ਜਾਂ	jaan	or
ਬਹੁਤ	bahut	very

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

- ਭਿੰਡੀ bhinddee means *bitter* True / False
- ਕਰੋਲਾ karelaa means *okra* True / False
- ਸਲਗਮ shalgam means *turnip* True / False
- ਸਸਤਾ sastaa means *expensive* True / False
- ਸੁਆਦ suaad means *taste* True / False

2. Mr Khan's shopping list

Mr Khan is at the local grocery shop buying vegetables. Listen to the tape to hear which items he has purchased from the shopping list that Mrs Khan has given him. As the items are spoken on the tape, tick them off the list. Don't worry if you can't recognise all the words.

ਕਰੋਲ	karelaa	bitter gourd
ਸ਼ਲਗਮ	shalgam	turnip
ਭਿੰਡੀ	bhinddee	okra
ਗਜ਼ਰ	gaajar	carrots
ਆਲੂ	aaloo	potatoes
ਗੋਡੀ	gobhee	cauliflower
ਟਮਾਟਰ	tamaatar	tomatoes
ਮਟਰ	matar	peas

2 Which sweets are good?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਕਿਹੜੀਆਂ ਮਿਠਿਆਈਆਂ ਚੰਗੀਆਂ ਹਨ ?

gall baat 2 kihrheeaan mithiaaeeeaaan changeeaan han?

After visiting the grocery shop, Mr Singh takes Jane and Henry to the Panjabi sweet shop (ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਦੀ ਦੁਕਾਨ mithiaaee dee dukaan). Panjabi sweet shops are not like confectionery shops, because although they are most famous for the sweet dishes that they sell, they also provide a range of other dishes.

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ Mr Singh	ਇਹ ਬਹੁਤ ਚੰਗੀ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਦੀ ਦੁਕਾਨ ਹੈ। ih bahuṭ changee mithiaaee dee dukaan hai. <i>This is a very good sweet shop.</i>
ਜੇਨ Jane	ਇਥੋਂ ਕਿਹੜੀਆਂ ਮਿਠਿਆਈਆਂ ਚੰਗੀਆਂ ਹਨ ? iththe kihrheeaan mithiaaeeeaaan changeeaan han? <i>Which sweets are good here?</i>
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ Mr Singh	ਸਾਰੀਆਂ ਮਿਠਿਆਈਆਂ ਚੰਗੀਆਂ ਹਨ ਪਰ ਲੱਡੂ ਖਾਸ ਸੁਆਦੀ ਹਨ। saareeaan mithiaaeeeaaan changeeaan han par laddoo khaas suaadee han. <i>All of them are good, but ladoos are especially tasty.</i>

ਹੈਨਰੀ Henry	ਪਰ ਲੱਡੂ ਮਹਿੰਗੇ ਹਨ। par laddoo mahinge han. <i>But ladoos are expensive.</i>
ਜੇਨ Jane	ਕੀ ਕੋਈ ਨਮਕੀਨ ਚੀਜ਼ ਹੈ ? kee kooe namkeen cheez hai? <i>Is there anything salty?</i>
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਪਕੌਰੇ ਤੇ ਸਮੋਸੇ ਹਨ। haan jee, pakaurhe te samose han. <i>Yes, there are pakoras and samosas.</i>
ਜੇਨ Jane	ਕੀ ਸਮੋਸੇ ਕਰਾਰੇ ਹਨ ? kee samose karaare han? <i>Are the samosas spicy?</i>
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਸਮੋਸੇ ਬਹੁਤ ਕਰਾਰੇ ਹਨ। haan jee, samose bahuṭ karaare han. <i>Yes, the samosas are very spicy.</i>

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਕਿਹੜੀ	kihrhee	which, which one (v.)
ਮਿਠਿਆਈ	mithiaaee	Punjabi sweet (f.)
ਚੰਗੀ	changee	good (v.)
ਦੁਕਾਨ	dukaan	shop (f.)
ਇਥੇ	iththe	here
ਲੱਡੂ	laddoo	a type of Panjabi sweet (m.)
ਖਾਸ	khaas	especially
ਸੁਆਦੀ	suaadee	tasty
ਪਰ	par	but
ਮਹਿੰਗਾ	mahingaa	expensive, costly (v.)
ਕੋਈ	kooe	any
ਚੀਜ਼	cheez	thing (f.)
ਨਮਕੀਨ	namkeen	salty
ਹਾਂ ਜੀ	haan jee	yes (polite)
ਪਕੌਰਾ	pakaurhaa	a type of deep-fried pastry similar to fritters (m.)
ਸਮੋਸਾ	samosaa	triangular stuffed pastry (m.)
ਕਰਾਰਾ	karaaraa	spicy (v.)

ਅਡਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Complete the table

ਮਿੱਠਾ		sweet
ਕੌਰਾ	kaurhaa	
	suaad	taste

2. Arrange in correct word order

- a) ਹੈ ਦੁਕਾਨ ਇਹ hai-dukaan-ih This is a shop.
- b) ਹੈ ਚੰਗੀ ਦੁਕਾਨ ਇਹ hai-changee-dukaan-ih This is a good shop.
- c) ਇਹ ਦੀ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਹੈ ਦੁਕਾਨ ih-dee-mithiaaee-hai-dukaan This is a sweet shop.
- d) ਹੈ ਦੁਕਾਨ ਦੀ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਚੰਗੀ ਇਹ hai-dukaan-dee-mithiaaee-changee-ih This is a good sweet shop.

3 This is our sitting room

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 3 ਇਹ ਸਾਡੀ ਬੈਠਕ ਹੈ

gall baat 3 ih saadee baithak hai

Mr Singh has taken his students to visit his house and is showing them around.

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਇਹ ਸਾਡੀ ਬੈਠਕ ਹੈ। ਮਾਫ ਕਰਨਾ, ਹਰ ਪਾਸੇ ਮੇਰੀਆਂ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ ਹਨ।
Charan Singh ih saadee baithak hai. maaf karnaa, har paase mereeaan kitaabaan han.
This is our sitting room. Sorry, my books are everywhere.

ਹੈਨਰੀ ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਘਰ ਵੱਡਾ ਹੈ। ਪੌੜੀਆਂ ਚੌੜੀਆਂ ਹਨ।
Henry tuhaadaa ghar vaddaa hai. paurheeaan chaurheeaan han.
Your house is big. The stairs are wide.
 ਜੇਨ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਕਮਰੇ ਹਨ ?
Jane kinne kamre han?
How many rooms are there?

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ

Charan Singh

ਅਸ਼ੋਕ

Ashok

ਚਰਨ ਸਿੰਘ

Charan Singh

ਚਾਰ ਕਮਰੇ ਹਨ ਅਤੇ ਦੋ ਗ੍ਰਾਸਲਖਾਨੇ ਹਨ।

chaar kamre han ate do ghusal khaane han.

There are four rooms and two bathrooms.

ਬਗੀਚਾ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ ਪਰ ਰਸੋਈ ਛੋਟੀ ਹੈ।

bagheechaa lanbaa hai par rasooee chottee hai.

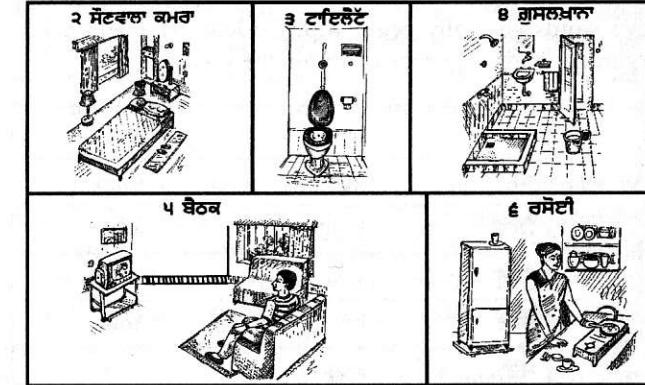
The garden is long but the kitchen is small.

ਇਹ ਸੱਚ ਹੈ, ਪਰ ਮੇਰੇ ਬੱਚੇ ਅਤੇ ਮੇਰੀ ਪਤਨੀ ਇੱਥੋਂ ਖੁਸ਼ ਹਨ।

ih sachch hai, par mere bachche ate meree patnee

iththe khush han.

That's true, but my children and my wife are happy here.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਬੈਠਕ

baithak

sitting room (f.)

ਮਾਫ ਕਰਨਾ

maaf karnaa

sorry

ਹਰ ਪਾਸੇ

har paase

everywhere

ਪੌੜੀਆਂ

paurheeaan

stairs (f.)

ਚੌੜਾ

chaurhaa

wide (v.)

ਕਮਰਾ

kamraa

room (m.)

ਕਿੰਨੇ

kinne

how many

ਗ੍ਰਾਸਲਖਾਨਾ

ghusal khaanaa

bathroom (m.)

ਬਗੀਚਾ

bagheechaa

garden (m.)

ਲੰਬਾ

lanbaa

long (v.)

ਰਸੋਈ

rasooee

kitchen (f.)

ਸੱਚ	sachch	<i>true, truth (v.)</i>
ਬੱਚੇ	bachche	<i>children (m.)</i>
ਪਤਨੀ	patnee	<i>wife (f.)</i>
ਖੁਸ਼	khush	<i>happy</i>

聆听吧 bolee baare Language points

Interrogative words

Interrogative words change sentences into questions. In Panjabi interrogative words generally begin with the letter ਕ k and may appear at the beginning of the sentence or within the sentence.

ਕੌਣ	kaunh	<i>who</i>
ਕੀ	kee	<i>what</i>
ਕਿਥੋਂ	kiththe	<i>where</i>
ਕਿਉਂ	kiun	<i>why</i>
ਕਿਵੇਂ	kiven	<i>how</i>
ਕਦੋਂ	kadon	<i>when</i>
ਕਿਹੜਾ	kihrhaa	<i>which*</i>
ਕਿਹੜੀ	kihrhee	<i>which*</i>

*Note that these two examples of which only apply to singular objects.

The endings of **ਕਿਹੜਾ** *kihrhaa* and **ਕਿਹੜੀ** *kihrhee* change according to the nature of the noun to which it is referring: whether it is singular or plural, or masculine or feminine.

Examples:

ਉਹ ਕੌਣ ਹੈ ?	uh kaunh hai?	<i>Who is he/she?</i>
ਉਹ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?	uh kee hai?	<i>What is that?</i>
ਉਹ ਕਿਥੋਂ ਹੈ ?	uh kiththe hai?	<i>Where is she/he?</i>
ਉਹ ਇਥੋਂ ਕਿਉਂ ਹੈ ?	uh iththe kiun hai?	<i>Why is he/she here?</i>
ਉਹ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਹੈ ?	uh kiven hai?	<i>How is she/he?</i>

3 WHAT DOES IT TASTE LIKE?

ਕਲਾਸ ਕਦੋਂ ਹੈ ?	kalaas kadon hai?	<i>When is the class?</i>
ਕਿਹੜਾ ਫਲ ? (m.)	kihrhaa phal? (m.)	<i>Which fruit?</i>
ਕਿਹੜੀ ਸਬਜ਼ੀ ? (f.)	kihrhee sabzee? (f.)	<i>Which vegetable?</i>

Nouns

In Panjabi, nouns are affected by gender, either masculine or feminine, and number, either singular or plural. Every noun in Panjabi, even an inanimate object, is assigned a masculine or feminine gender and has a singular or plural numerical character. The process of assignment of gender to nouns is quite arbitrary. There are no obvious reasons, for example, why ਕੁਰਸੀ *kursee* chair is feminine and ਮੇਜ਼ *mez* table is masculine. However, in logical terms, all nouns which represent males are masculine and those which represent females are feminine. For example, ਮੁੰਡਾ *mundaa* boy is masculine and ਕੁੜੀ *kurhee* girl is feminine.

There are no steadfast rules about the distinction of the gender of inanimate objects. In Panjabi this is a matter of convention, whereby the gender of a noun is often simply understood. There is a general code that nouns ending in ਈ (ee) are feminine and nouns ending in ਅ (aa) are masculine, such as ਲੜਕਾ *larhkaa* boy and ਲੜਕੀ *larhkee* girl. Exceptions to this, however, are plentiful, with words such as ਚਾਥੀ, *haathee* (elephant) masculine, ਮਾਂ, *maan* (mother) feminine and ਮਾਲਾ, *maalaa* (necklace) feminine all having endings which counter this general code. So be careful! You will learn more about nouns as you go along.

Type 1: Variable nouns

Variable nouns are those which change from the singular form when they are plural.

Masculine

Singular	ਮੁੰਡਾ	mundaa	boy
Plural	ਮੁੰਡੇ	munde	boys
Singular	ਚਾਚਾ	chaachaa	uncle
Plural	ਚਾਚੇ	chaache	uncles

Feminine

Singular	ਕੁੜੀ	kurhee	<i>girl</i>
Plural	ਕੁੜੀਆਂ	kurheeaan	<i>girls</i>
Singular	ਦੁਕਾਨ	dukaan	<i>shop</i>
Plural	ਦੁਕਾਨਾਂ	dukaanaan	<i>shops</i>

Type 2: Invariable nouns

Invariable nouns are those which do not change forms from the singular to the plural.

Masculine

Singular	ਆਦਮੀ	aadmee	<i>man</i>
Plural	ਆਦਮੀ	aadmee	<i>men</i>
Singular	ਹੱਥ	hathth	<i>hand</i>
Plural	ਹੱਥ	hathth	<i>hands</i>

Some other examples of invariable nouns:

ਮੇਡੀ	motee	<i>pearl</i>
ਹਾਰ	haar	<i>necklace</i>
ਨਾਕ	nakk	<i>nose</i>
ਦਰਿਆ	dariaa	<i>river</i>

Note that generally all feminine nouns are variable, that is feminine nouns change from the singular to the plural form.

Adjustable nouns

In Panjabi the same noun can often be used to represent both genders by simply changing the ending to express their femininity or masculinity. These types of nouns are irregular, though the pattern of endings that they take can be distinctly identified.

Masculine		Feminine	
ਚਾਚਾ	chaachaa <i>uncle</i>	= ਚਾਚੀ	chaachee <i>paternal aunt</i>
ਪੁੱਤਰ	puttar <i>son</i>	= ਪੁੱਤਰੀ	puttaree <i>daughter</i>
ਊਠ	ooth <i>male camel</i>	= ਊਠਣੀ	oothnhee <i>female camel</i>
ਨੌਕਰ	naukar <i>male servant</i>	= ਨੌਕਰਾਣੀ	naukaraanhee <i>maid</i>
ਬਾਲ	baal <i>male child</i>	= ਬਾਲੜੀ	baalrhee <i>female child</i>
ਰਾਜਾ	raajaa <i>king</i>	= ਰਾਣੀ	raanhee <i>queen</i>
ਮੋਚੀ	mochee <i>male cobbler</i>	= ਮੋਚਣ	mochanh <i>female cobbler</i>

Some nouns are significantly different from their masculine/feminine counterparts:

ਭਾਰ	bharaa	<i>brother</i>	=	ਭੈਣ	bhainh	<i>sister</i>
ਮੁੰਡਾ	mundaa	<i>boy</i>	=	ਕੁੜੀ	kurhee	<i>girl</i>
ਬੰਦਾ	bandaa	<i>man</i>	=	ਜਾਨਾਨੀ	janaanee	<i>woman</i>

Nouns borrowed from English

Words borrowed from English are also classified in terms of gender and are pluralised according to the pattern of Panjabi nouns. For example:

Masculine

singular		plural	
ਕੈਮਰਾ	kaimraa	<i>camera</i>	ਕੈਮਰੇ
ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ	taileefon	<i>telephone</i>	ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ
			<i>telephones</i>

Feminine

singular		plural	
ਪਲੇਟ	palet	<i>plate</i>	ਪਲੇਟਾਂ
ਪੈਂਸਲ	painsal	<i>pencil</i>	ਪੈਂਸਲਾਂ
			<i>plates</i>
			<i>pencils</i>

Similarly, the plural of ਸਮੋਸਾ *samosaa* (*samosa*) is ਸਮੋਸੇ *samose* in Panjabi and *samosas* in English.

Adjectives

An adjective is a word that gives descriptive information about a noun, pronoun or another adjective. Generally, adjectives come before the noun and after the pronoun. Similar to nouns, adjectives are also either masculine or feminine and are used in singular and plural forms, reflecting the gender and numerical traits of the nouns that they are describing. There are two types of simple adjectives, variable and invariable.

Variable adjectives

Variable adjectives end in ਅਾ aa for the masculine and ਈ ee for the feminine such as ਵੱਡਾ vaddaa (masculine) and ਵੱਡੀ vaddee (feminine) big. They inflect (i.e. change their endings) with the number and the gender of the noun.

Masculine singular	ਵੱਡਾ ਲੜਕਾ	vaddaa larhkaa	<i>big boy</i>
Masculine plural	ਵੱਡੇ ਲੜਕੇ	vadde larhke	<i>big boys</i>
Feminine singular	ਵੱਡੀ ਲੜਕੀ	vaddee larhkee	<i>big girl</i>
Feminine plural	ਵੱਡੀਆਂ ਲੜਕੀਆਂ	vaddeeaan larhkeeaan	<i>big girls</i>

When the noun is the same for both genders and singular/plural forms, it is the variable adjective and/or the verb which will indicate the numerical and gender characteristics of the noun.

Examples:

Singular	ਇਹ ਵੱਡਾ ਮਕਾਨ ਹੈ	ih vaddaa makaan hai	<i>This is a big house.</i>
Plural	ਇਹ ਵੱਡੇ ਮਕਾਨ ਹਨ	ih vadde makaan han	<i>These are big houses.</i>

Variable adjectives also indicate the gender characteristic of the noun.

ਇਹ ਵੱਡਾ ਮੇਜ਼ ਹੈ	ih vaddaa mez (m.) hai	<i>This is a big table. (m.)</i>
ਇਹ ਵੱਡੀ ਕੁਰਸੀ ਹੈ	ih vaddee kursee (f.) hai	<i>This is a big chair. (f.)</i>

There are some exceptions regarding adjectives of this type. Some adjectives do not change their form according to the noun's gender and number associations, despite the fact that they end in ਈ ee or ਅਾ aa such as:

ਵਧੀਆ vadhiaa superior ਗੁਲਾਬੀ gulaabee pink

You need to learn such exceptions as you go along.

Invariable adjectives

Invariable adjectives do not change according to the nouns that they specify and do not end with ਅਾ aa or ਈ ee, such as:

3 WHAT DOES IT TASTE LIKE?

ਲਾਲ	laal	<i>red</i>
ਖੁਸ਼	khush	<i>happy</i>
ਸਾਫ਼	saaf	<i>clean</i>
ਖੁਸ਼ ਲੜਕਾ	khush larhkaa	<i>happy boy</i>
ਖੁਸ਼ ਲੜਕੇ	khush larhke	<i>happy boys</i>
ਖੁਸ਼ ਲੜਕੀ	khush larhkee	<i>happy girl</i>
ਖੁਸ਼ ਲੜਕੀਆਂ	khush larhkeeaan	<i>happy girls</i>

The simple verb

Verbs indicate activity and are also called action words. Throughout the book the Panjabi verb is referred to in the infinitive form (i.e. the form *to*). The root of the verb plus the ending -ਣਾ nhaa or the ending -ਨਾ naa form the infinitive. Here are some common examples of verbs in the infinitive, or simple form:

Infinitive form (= 'to _____')	Root	Ending
ਲਿਖਣਾ likhnhaa <i>to write</i>	-ਲਿਖ	ਲਿਖ likh
ਦੇਣਾ denhaa <i>to give</i>	-ਦੇ	ਦੇ denhaa
ਖਾਣਾ khaanhaa <i>to eat</i>	-ਖਾ	ਖਾ khaa
ਆਉਣਾ aaunhaa <i>to come</i>	-ਆਉ	ਆਉ aau
ਬੋਲਣਾ bolnhaa <i>to speak</i>	-ਬੋਲ	ਬੋਲ bol
ਕਹਿਣਾ kahinhaa <i>to say</i>	-ਕਹਿ	ਕਹਿ kahi
ਰਹਿਣਾ rahinhaa <i>to live, stay</i>	-ਰਹਿ	ਰਹਿ rahi
ਕਰਨਾ karnaa <i>to do</i>	-ਕਰ	ਕਰ kar

The simple verb is also used as a form of command particularly related to actions in the near future.

Examples:

ਜਲਦੀ ਆਉਣਾ	jaldee aaunhaa	<i>come back quickly</i>
ਹੌਲੀ ਬੋਲਣਾ	haulee bolnhaa	<i>speak softly</i>
ਚਿੱਠੀ ਲਿਖਣਾ	chiththee likhnhaa	<i>write a letter</i>

The possessive particle ਦਾਂ dāa of

In Panjabi, possession is expressed through the particle ਦਾਂ. In English possession is not usually expressed using the word *of*, for example, *the pencil of the girl* would usually be written *the girl's pencil*. The particle ਦਾਂ dāa is therefore similar to the apostrophe *s* in English as it establishes the relationship between possessions. The particle ਦਾਂ dāa of should agree with the gender and number of the object being possessed. Generally, it takes the following forms:

ਦਾਂ	<u>dāa</u>	masculine singular
ਦੇ	<u>de</u>	masculine plural
ਦੀ	<u>dee</u>	feminine singular
ਦੀਆਂ	<u>deeaan</u>	feminine plural

Words such as *of*, *in*, *to* or *from* are called prepositions in English and signify place or position. These words come before the noun and are therefore called prepositions.

In Panjabi these kinds of words come after the noun and are therefore called postpositions. This is also the second function of ਦਾਂ dāa in that it dictates word order and acts as a grammatical point determining the endings of the nouns and adjectives associated with the possession.

Examples:

ਕੁੜੀ ਦੀਆਂ ਪੈਸਲਾਂ	kurhee <u>deeaan</u> painsalaan	<i>the girl's pencils</i>
ਅਦਮੀ ਦੀ ਦੁਕਾਨ	aadmee <u>dee</u> <u>dukaan</u>	<i>the man's shop</i>
ਮੇਰੀ ਭੈਣ ਦਾ ਕਮਰਾ	meree bhainh <u>dāa</u> kamraa	<i>my sister's room</i>

Possessive adjectives with plural objects

In Unit 1 you learned about possessive adjectives with singular objects. When objects being possessed are plural, the endings of possessive adjectives change accordingly. The following tables illustrate the use of the possessive adjective with plural objects.

Possessive adjectives with plural masculine objects

1st person

ਮੇਰੇ	mere	<i>my</i>
ਸਾਡੇ	saade	<i>our</i>

3 WHAT DOES IT TASTE LIKE?

2nd person

ਤੇਰੇ	<u>tere</u>	<i>your (informal)</i>
ਤੁਹਾਡੇ	<u>tuhaade</u>	<i>your (formal)</i>

3rd person

ਇਹ ਦੇ/ਇਸ ਦੇ	ih <u>de/is de</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਇਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ	ihnaan <u>de</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>
ਊਹ ਦੇ/ਊਸ ਦੇ	uh <u>de/us de</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਊਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ	uhnaan <u>de</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>

Possessive adjectives with plural feminine objects

1st person

ਮੇਰੀਆਂ	<u>mereeaan</u>	<i>my</i>
ਸਾਡੀਆਂ	<u>saadeeaan</u>	<i>our</i>

2nd person

ਤੇਰੀਆਂ	<u>tereeaan</u>	<i>your (informal)</i>
ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ	<u>tuhaadeeaan</u>	<i>your (formal)</i>

3rd person

ਇਹ ਦੀਆਂ / ਇਸ ਦੀਆਂ	ih <u>deeaan</u> / <u>is deeaan</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਇਹਨਾਂ ਦੀਆਂ	ihnaan <u>deeaan</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>
ਊਹ ਦੀਆਂ / ਊਸ ਦੀਆਂ	uh <u>deeaan</u> / <u>us deeaan</u>	<i>his/her</i>
ਊਹਨਾਂ ਦੀਆਂ	uhnaan <u>deeaan</u>	<i>his/her (formal)</i>

ਮੇਰੇ ਬੱਚੇ	mere bachche	<i>my children</i>
ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ	<u>tuhaadeeaan</u> kitaabaan	<i>your books</i>
ਊਹਨਾਂ ਦੀਆਂ ਮਿਠਾਈਆਂ	uhnaan <u>deeaan</u> mithiaaeeeaaan	<i>their sweets</i>
ਸਾਡੇ ਲੜਕੇ	saade larhke	<i>our sons</i>



Numbers

In Dialogue 3, you were introduced to the numbers **ਚਾਰ chaar** and **ਦੋ do**. The following is the list of numbers from 1–20. The topic vocabulary list at the end of the book gives the remaining numbers up to 100.

੧	1	ਇੱਕ	ikk	੧੧	11	ਗਿਆਰਾਂ	giaaraan
੨	2	ਦੋ	do	੧੨	12	ਬਾਰਾਂ	baar-haan
੩	3	ਤਿੰਨ	tinn	੧੩	13	ਤੇਰਾਂ	ter-haan
੪	4	ਚਾਰ	chaar	੧੪	14	ਚੌਥਾਂ	chaud-haan
੫	5	ਪੰਜ	panj	੧੫	15	ਪੰਦਰਾਂ	pandaraan
੬	6	ਛੇ	che	੧੬	16	ਸੋਲਾਂ	solhaan
੭	7	ਸੱਤ	satt	੧੭	17	ਸਤਾਰਾਂ	sataar-haan
੮	8	ਅੱਠ	athth	੧੮	18	ਅਠਾਰਾਂ	athaar-haan
੯	9	ਨੌ	naun	੧੯	19	ਉਨੀ	unnee
੧੦	10	ਦਸ	das	੨੦	20	ਵੀਹ	veeh

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. The vegetable seller ਸਬਜ਼ੀ ਵਾਲਾ sabzee vaalaa



3 WHAT DOES IT TASTE LIKE?

In Panjab, fresh seasonal vegetables are available in abundance. The land is rich and the climate is tropical. Vegetables can generally be bought from a variety of sources. A street hawker carrying vegetables in his hand-pulled cart will make his daily rounds in the streets, shouting the names of vegetables at the top of his lungs in a manner that signals his presence more than does the content of his wares. Vegetables can also be bought from the market (often called a ਮੰਡੀ **mandee** or even ਮਾਰਕੇਟ **maarket**) where dozens of greengrocery stalls and shops are situated next to each other. These stalls offer a wide variety of fresh vegetables (**ਸਬਜ਼ੀਆਂ sabzeeaan**) according to the season. In Panjab, visiting the market, especially in the evenings, is more than just for shopping; it is also a social and entertaining experience. Prices are not displayed so that customers have to make enquiries to shopkeepers, comparing prices of different stalls and bargaining as they go along. An accepted and often time-consuming part of shopping in Panjab is bargaining. Once a bargain has been made, the shopkeeper uses his age-old technique of weighing the goods between two pans on his scale. Most shopkeepers are efficient in mentally calculating the price of the weighed goods and are keen to chat, pointing out the low prices of other vegetables on offer and generally to praise their goods. This is a contrast to shopping for vegetables in western countries which is usually impersonal and mechanical.

2. The Panjabi sweet shop ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਦੀ ਦੁਕਾਨ mithiaaee dee dukaan

Sweet shops are an integral part of shopping areas catering for South Asian communities in England, America, Canada and other parts of the world. These sweet shops are not like confectionery shops or bakeries, as they are often attached to take-away restaurants and also offer a range of spicy snacks and nibbles. It is customary for most South Asians to exchange boxes of sweets among friends and family on happy occasions. These can range from weddings and birthdays to festivals. Sweet shops, therefore, remain busy throughout the year. There is an enormous variety of sweets from different regions of the Indian sub-continent. Most sweet shops in the diaspora offer about fifty of the more common types of sweets and savoury dishes. Here is a list of some of the more popular items.

Sweets

ਲੱਡੂ
laddoo

a sweet round ball, generally orange in colour, consisting of tiny particles made of gram flour

ਗੁਲਾਬ ਜਾਮਨਾ	a round soft brown ball made of milk powder soaked in gulaab jaamanh a sweet syrup
ਬਰਫੀ	a bar of milk powder, similar to fudge, which is cut into diamond and rectangular shapes and is also found in a variety of colours such as white, pink and green
ਜਲੇਬੀਆਂ	whirls of batter, yellow-orange in colour, which are soaked in a sweet syrup
ਰਸ ਗੁੱਲੇ	sweet round balls made of cheese soaked in a clear sweet syrup
ਰਸ ਮਲਾਈ	sweet round balls made of cheese soaked in thick, sweet milk
ਗਜਰੇਲਾ	a sweet dish made from grated carrots
ਪਿੰਨੀਆਂ	sweet round balls made from ground lentils and gram flour

Savouries

There are about a dozen salty dishes which are available from sweet shops. These are the most common ones:

ਪਕੋੜੇ	seasoned and spiced vegetables covered in a gram flour batter which are deep fried in oil
ਸਮੋਸੇ	deep-fried triangular pastries filled with boiled peas, potatoes and sometimes minced meat



ਅਡਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

1. Choose the appropriate adjectives

Bitter gourd and turnip are masculine and okra is feminine.

small

ਛੋਟਾ **chotaa**

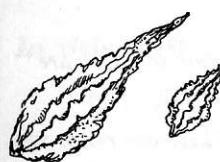
ਛੋਟੀ **chotee**

big

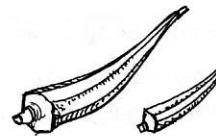
ਵੱਡਾ **vaddaa**

ਵੱਡੀ **vaddee**

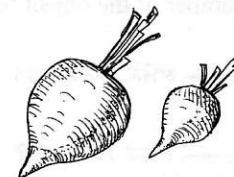
- a) ਇਹ ਕਰੋਲਾ _____ ਹੈ। ih karelaa _____ hai. This bitter gourd is small.
- b) ਇਹ ਕਰੋਲਾ _____ ਹੈ। ih karelaa _____ hai. This bitter gourd is large.
- c) ਇਹ ਭਿੰਡੀ _____ ਹੈ। ih bhindee _____ hai. This okra is small.
- d) ਇਹ ਭਿੰਡੀ _____ ਹੈ। ih bhindee _____ hai. This okra is large.
- e) ਇਹ ਸ਼ਲਗਮ _____ ਹੈ। ih shalgam _____ hai. This turnip is small.
- f) ਇਹ ਸ਼ਲਗਮ _____ ਹੈ। ih shalgam _____ hai. This turnip is large.



ਕਰੋਲਾ



ਭਿੰਡੀ



ਸ਼ਲਗਮ

2. Who has ordered what?

Mr Singh, Jane and Henry have each ordered several food items. Listen to the tape and tick the box to show who has ordered what.

	ਸਮੋਸਾ samosaa	ਲੱਡੂ laddoo	ਪਕੋੜੇ pakaurhe	ਰਸ ਮਲਾਈ ras malaaee	ਭਿੰਡੀ bhindee	ਗੋਬੀ gobhee
Mr Singh						
Jane						
Henry						

3. Who am I?

After reading the commentary section, try to guess who I am from the descriptions given below.

- a) I am sweet, full of syrup, round and dark brown in colour.
- b) I am sweet like fudge, in diamond and rectangular shapes and come in a variety of different colours such as white, pink and green.
- c) I am a very popular savoury snack, triangular in shape, covered in pastry, filled with potatoes and peas, and deep fried.

d) I am like a fritter, dipped in a batter of gram flour mixture, and deep fried. My core ingredients are usually cauliflower, potatoes and aubergine.

4. Insert the correct possessive adjectives

(Remember that the forms of possessive adjectives change not only in terms of who is in possession of the object, but also by the gender and number of the object being possessed.)

- a. — ਸਮੇਸੇ ਸੁਆਦੀ ਹਨ samose suaadee han. *Their samosas are tasty.*
- b. — ਲੜਕੇ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਹਨ? larhke kiththe han? *Where are my sons?*
- c. — ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ ਹਰ ਪਸੇ ਹਨ kitaabaan har paase han. *Our books are everywhere.*
- d. — ਮਿਠਿਆਈਆਂ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ mithiaaeeaan sabh ton changeeaaan han. *Your (formal) sweets are the best!*

4 | ਬੜੀ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਦੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ ! barhee khushee dee gall hai!

That's very good news!

In this unit you will learn:

- how to introduce yourself and others
- how to ask and answer questions about work
- how to ask and respond to questions about place of origin
- how to talk about your family
- how to describe actions and objects in the present

1 What do you do?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਦੇ ਹੋ ?

gall baat 1 tuseen kee karde ho?

Dr Singh and Mrs Sharma are travelling on a train going from Birmingham to London. They are meeting for the first time.

ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮ Mrs Sharma	ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਕੀ ਇਹ ਸੀਟ ਖਾਲੀ ਹੈ ? sat sree akaal. kee ih seat <u>khaalee</u> <u>hai</u> ? <i>Hello. Is this seat vacant?</i>
ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ Dr Singh	ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ ਹਾਂ ਜੀ ਖਾਲੀ ਹੈ। ਬੈਠੋ ਜੀ। sat sree akaal. haan jee, <u>khaalee</u> <u>hai</u> . baiitho jee. <i>Hello. Yes, it's vacant. Please sit down.</i>
ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮ Mrs Sharma	ਧੰਨਵਾਦ। ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ ਹੈ। ਸਰਦਾਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ, ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ। <u>dhanvaaad</u> . meraa naam misaz sharmaa hai. sardaar saahib, tuaadaa kee naam hai? <i>Thank you. My name is Mrs Sharma. Sardar Sahib, what is your name?</i>

ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ

ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਅਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਡਾਕਟਰ ਹਾਂ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਦੇ ਹੋ, ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ ?

Dr Singh

meraa naam ajeet singh hai. main daaktar haan. tuseen kee kardé ho, misaz sharmaa ?

My name is Ajeet Singh. I'm a doctor. What do you do, Mrs Sharma?

ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ

ਮੈਂ ਅਧਿਆਪਕਾ ਹਾਂ ਅਤੇ ਮੈਂ ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ ਵਿਚ ਰਹਿੰਦੀ ਹਾਂ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹੋ ?

Mrs Sharma

main adhiaapkaa haan ate main birmingham vich rahindee haan. tuseen kiththe rahin de ho?

I am a teacher and I live in Birmingham. Where do you live?

ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ

ਮੈਂ ਵੀ ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ ਵਿਚ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ। ਮੈਂ ਕੀਨੀਆ ਤੋਂ ਹਾਂ। ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ?

Dr Singh

main vee birmingham vich rahindaa haan. main kee neeaan ton haan. kee tuseen panjaab ton ho?

I live in Birmingham too. I am from Kenya. Are you from Panjab?

ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ

ਨਹੀਂ ਜੀ। ਮੈਂ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਤੋਂ ਹਾਂ।

Mrs Sharma

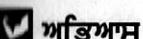
naheen jee. main dillee ton haan.

No. I'm from Delhi.



shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਸੀਟ	seet	seat (f.)
ਖਾਲੀ	khaalee	empty, vacant
ਬੈਠਣਾ	baithnhaa	to sit
ਬੈਠੋ ਜੀ	baitho jee	please sit down (formal)
ਸਰਦਾਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ	sardaar saahib	Mr (see Commentary)
ਡਾਕਟਰ	daaktar	doctor (m./f.)
ਅਧਿਆਪਕ	adhiaapkaa	teacher (f.)
ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ	birmingham	Birmingham (m.)
ਰਹਿਣਾ	rahinhaa	to stay, to live
ਕੀਨੀਆ	keeneeaa	Kenya (m.)
ਤੋਂ	ton	from
ਪੰਜਾਬ	panjaab	Panjab (m.)
ਦਿੱਲੀ	dillee	Delhi (f.)



abhihaar Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises

1. Fill in the blanks

Following the first example, fill in the blanks with the Panjabi phrases according to the English ones given to you. You may borrow phrases from the dialogue.

- a) ਮੈਂ ਡਾਕਟਰ ਹਾਂ main daaktar haan *I am a doctor.*
- b) _____ Is this seat vacant? _____ *Yes, it is.*
- c) _____ I'm a teacher. _____
- d) _____ What do you (formal) do? _____

2. Arrange in correct word order

a) *I live in Birmingham too.*

ਵੀ ਮੈਂ ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ

vee main birmingham rahindaa haan

b) *I am from Delhi.* ਦਿੱਲੀ ਤੋਂ ਮੈਂ ਹਾਂ dillee ton main haan

c) *What do you do?* ਤੁਸੀਂ ਹੋ ਕਰਦੇ ਕੀ ? tuseen ho kardé kee ?

3. Remarks and responses

The following conversation is between two unacquainted passengers on a train. Put the responses of Passenger B into order according to Passenger A's remarks by using the correct corresponding number.

	Passenger A	Passenger B
1	ਕੀ ਇਹ ਟਰੇਨ ਲੰਡਨ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ ? kee ih taren landan jaandee hai?	a) ਮੈਂ ਲੀਡਜ਼ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ main leedz rahindaa haan
2	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹੋ ? tuseen kiththe rahinde ho?	b) ਮੈਂ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਹਾਂ main adhiaapkaa haan
3	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਦੇ ਹੋ ? tuseen kee kanm karde ho?	c) ਹਾਂ, ਇਹ ਟਰੇਨ ਲੰਡਨ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ haan, ih taren landan jaandee hai
4	ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਰਿੰਦੀ ਬੋਲਦੇ ਹੋ ? kee tuseen hinddee bolde ho?	d) ਮੈਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ ਹਾਂ main panjaab ton haan
5	ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ਜਾਂ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ? kee tuseen panjaab ton ho jaan dillee ton ho?	e) ਮੈਂ ਰਿੰਦੀ ਅਤੇ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਹਾਂ main hinddee ate panjaabee boldaa haan

• 2 That's very good news!

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਬੜੀ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਦੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ !

gall baat 2 barhee khushee dee gall hai!

While Dr Singh and Mrs Sharma chat on the train going from Birmingham to London, Fatima Khan boards the train at Coventry. Mrs Sharma and Fatima Khan know each other. Fatima Khan addresses Mrs Sharma by her first name, Sita.

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ

ਨਾਮਤੇ ਸੀਤਾ। ਤੇਰੀ ਸਿਹਤ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਹੈ ?

namaste seeetaa. teree sihat kiven hai?

Hello Sita. How's your health?

ਨਾਮਤੇ ! ਮੇਰੀ ਸਿਹਤ ਹੁਣ ਬਿਲਕੁਲ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ। ਮਿਹਰਬਾਨੀ।

namaste! meree sihat hunh bulkul theek hai.

miharbaanee.

Hello! My health is perfectly fine now. Thank you.

ਬੜੀ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਦੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ !

barhee khushee dee gall hai!

That's very good news!

ਤੇਰੇ ਪਰਵਰ ਦਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?

tere parvaar daa kee haal hai?

How is your family?

ਸਾਰੇ ਠੀਕ ਹਨ। ਮਿਸਟਰ ਖਾਨ ਮੌਜ਼ਾਂ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ। ਸਡਾ ਬੋਟਾ ਅਤੇ ਬੋਟੀ ਕਾਲਜ ਵਿਚ ਪੜ੍ਹੇ ਹਨ।

saare theek han. mistar khaan maujaan karde han.

saadaa betaa ate betee kaalaj vich parhhde han.

Everyone is fine. Mr Khan is enjoying life. Our son and daughter are studying at college.

Sita Sharma

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ

Fatima Khan

ਸੀਤਾ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ

Sita Sharma

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ

Fatima Khan

(Sita Sharma introduces Dr Singh and Fatima Khan to one another.)

ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ

ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ, ਇਹ ਮੇਰੀ ਸਹੇਲੀ ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ ਹੈ। ਫਾਤਿਮਾ, ਇਹ ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਹਨ।

daaktar singh, ih meree sahelee faatimaa khaan hai. faatimaa, ih daaktar singh han.

Sita Sharma

Dr Singh, this is my friend Fatima Khan. Fatima, this is Dr Singh.

ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ

ਅਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੋਕਮ

asslaam alaikam.

Hello.

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ

ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅਸਲਾਮਾ।

vaalaikam asslaam.

Fatima Khan

Hello.

(Sita addresses Fatima.)

ਸੀਤਾ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ, ਅਗਲੇ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਨੂੰ ਸਕੂਲ ਦੀਆਂ ਛੁੱਟੀਆਂ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ।

ਬੱਚਿਆਂ ਨਾਲ ਬਚਪਨੀਆਂ ਆਉਣਾ।

faatimaa, agle hafte noon sakool deeaan chutteeaan

shuroo hundeeaan han. bachchiaan naal birmingham

aunhaas.

School holidays start next week. Come with the children to Birmingham.

ਫਾਤਿਮਾ ਖਾਨ

ਇਨਸ਼ਾ ਅੱਲਾ।

inshaa allaa.

Fatima Khan

We'll try. [literally: If God wishes]

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਬੜੀ

barhee

very (v.)

ਖੁਸ਼ੀ

khushee

good (f.) (lit. happiness)

ਗੱਲ

gall

matter, news (f.)

ਸਿਹਤ

sihat

health (f.)

ਹੁਣ

hunh

now

ਬਿਲਕੁਲ

bilkul

absolutely, perfectly

ਸਾਰੇ

saare

everyone, all (v.)

ਮੌਜ਼ਾਂ ਕਰਨ

maujaan karna

to enjoy

ਬੋਟਾ

betaa

son (m.)

ਬੋਟੀ

betee

daughter (f.)

ਕਾਲਜ

kaalaj

college (m.)

ਪੜ੍ਹਨ

parhhnaa

to read, to study

ਸਹੇਲੀ

sahelee

friend (f.)

ਅਗਲਾ

aglaa

next

ਹਫ਼ਤਾ

haftaa

week (m.)

ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੋਣਾ

shuroo honhaa

to start, to begin

ਸਕੂਲ

sakool

school (m.)

ਛੁੱਟੀਆਂ

chutteeaan

holidays (f.)

The example of **ਕਰਨਾ** shows the manner in which verb roots ending with consonants are formed in the simple present tense. However, those roots which end in vowels follow a slightly different pattern. The nasal consonant is placed between the root and the present tense endings. Here, the verb **ਪੀਣਾ** **peenhaa** (*to drink*) is used to illustrate. Note that the **binddee** follows the bihaaree **ੰ ee** of **ਪੀਣਾ** **peenhaa**.

Simple verb: **ਪੀਣਾ** **peenhaa** *to drink*. Verb root: **ਪੀ** **pee**:

subject + (object, where appropriate) + simple present + auxiliary = present tense

ਮੈਂ **main** *I* (subject) (1st person, singular feminine) + **ਪਾਣੀ** **paanhee** water (object) + **ਪੀਂਦੀ** **peendee** drink (present of *to drink*) + **ਹਾਂ** **haan** am (auxiliary) (1st person singular) = ਮੈਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀ ਹਾਂ **main paanhee peendee haan** *I drink water.*

Singular

Masculine	Feminine	
ਮੈਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦਾ ਹਾਂ main paanhee peendaa haan	ਮੈਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀ ਹਾਂ main paanhee peendee haan	<i>I drink water</i>
ਤੂੰ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦਾ ਹੈ toon paanhee peendaa hain	ਤੂੰ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀ ਹੈ toon paanhee peendee hain	<i>you drink water</i>
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦਾ ਹੈ ih/uh paanhee peendaa hai	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀ ਹੈ ih/uh paanhee peendee hai	<i>he, she, it drinks water</i>

4 THAT'S VERY GOOD NEWS!

Plural

Masculine	Feminine	
ਆਸੋਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੇ ਹਾਂ aseen paanhee peende haan	ਆਸੋਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ aseen paanhee peendeeaan haan	<i>we drink water</i>
ਤੁਸੋਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੇ ਹੋ tuseen paanhee peende ho	ਤੁਸੋਂ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀਆਂ ਹੋ tuseen paanhee peendeeaan ho	<i>you drink water</i>
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੇ ਹਨ ih/uh paanhee peende han	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ ih/uh paanhee peendeeaan han	<i>they drink water</i>

Here are a few more examples of other verbs in the simple present:

ਮੈਂ ਸੋਚਦੀ ਹਾਂ main sochdee haan	<i>I think</i>
ਬੱਚੇ ਖੇਡਦੇ ਹਨ bachche khedde han	<i>the children play</i>
ਆਸੀਂ ਉਰਦੂ ਬੋਲਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ aseen urdu boldeeaan haan	<i>we speak Urdu</i>

Subject-verb agreement

The verb in a sentence must agree with the gender and number of its subject (with a few exceptions in the past tense which will be discussed in Unit 10). If the subject is feminine and singular, then the verb must also be feminine and singular. As you should have noticed in the previous section on the simple present tense, there are two verbs: one is the main verb which indicates the action and the other is the auxiliary verb (a form of **ਹੋਣਾ** *to be*). The main verb changes according to the gender and number of the subject, and the auxiliary verb must also agree with the subject but only changes according to the person (1st – *I*, 2nd – *you*, 3rd – *they*) of the subject.

In the following examples note how the verbs (main and auxiliary) are in agreement with the subject.

ਮੈਂ	ਜਾਂਦੀ	ਹਾਂ	main	jaandee	haan
ਉਹ	ਜਾਂਦੇ	ਹਨ	uh	jaande	han
ਤੁਸੀਂ	ਜਾਂਦੇ	ਹੋ	tuseen	jaande	ho
ਮੁੰਡੇ	ਜਾਂਦੇ	ਹਨ	mundee	jaande	han

Notice that the main verb and the auxiliary verb agree with one another in the singular and plural aspect of the subject. This is an essential element of forming sentences in Panjabi, and it should therefore be understood how verbs change accordingly.

Simple postpositions

You will recall from Unit 3 that the particle **ਦਾ** dāa, in addition to showing possession, can be used as a postposition. Simple postpositions can be used to denote a number of different senses. In Panjabi the most common simple postpositions are as follows:

ਵਿਚ, ਦੇ ਵਿਚ	vich, <u>de</u> vich	<i>in, inside</i>
ਤੋਂ	<u>ton</u>	<i>from</i>
ਤੇ	<u>te</u>	<i>on</i>
ਤਕ	<u>tak</u>	<i>until, up to</i>
ਨਾਲ, ਦੇ ਨਾਲ	naal, <u>de</u> naal	<i>with</i>
ਨੂੰ	<u>noon</u>	<i>to</i>

Here are some simple examples of the uses of postpositions:

ਬਾਗ ਵਿਚ	baagh vich	<i>in the garden</i>
ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ	panjaab <u>ton</u>	<i>from Panjab</i>
ਮੇਜ਼ ਤੇ	mez <u>te</u>	<i>on the table</i>
ਅੱਜ ਤਕ	ajj <u>tak</u>	<i>until today</i>
ਇਥੋਂ ਤਕ	iththe <u>tak</u>	<i>up to here</i>
ਪਰਵਾਰ ਨਾਲ	parvaar naal	<i>with the family</i>
ਕਲਮ ਨਾਲ	kalam naal	<i>with a pen</i>
ਅਮ੍ਰੀਕਾ ਨੂੰ	amreekaa <u>noon</u>	<i>to America</i>
ਸ਼ਾਮ ਨੂੰ	shaam <u>noon</u>	<i>in the evening</i>

Nouns in the oblique

Punjabi nouns can be used in three different cases (modes of expression): the vocative, direct, and oblique. Each has its own corresponding way of formation. The vocative case reflects direct speech and will be dealt with in Unit 8. Direct nouns only change according to gender and number, as has been explained in Unit 3, and are not affected by any postposition. In contrast, the oblique case refers to the changes that some nouns undergo when affected by postpositions. In the examples of nouns with postpositions, all of the nouns are in the oblique case, though their forms

do not reveal this because they are either invariable or are feminine in gender (see Unit 3). All nouns before a postposition, whether or not in a changed form, take on the oblique case. Generally, proper nouns such as names of people and places are not inflected by the postposition which follows them. In addition, masculine and feminine nouns have noticeably different formations in the oblique. You will note that feminine nouns in the singular and plural do not change in the oblique. Only masculine nouns change form when followed by postpositions.

Masculine singular

direct	oblique					
ਮੰਡਾ	mundaa	<i>boy</i>	ਮੰਡੇ ਨੂੰ	mundee	<i>noon</i>	<i>to the boy</i>
ਘੜਾ	ghorhaa	<i>horse</i>	ਘੜੇ ਤੇ	ghorhe	<i>te</i>	<i>on the horse</i>
ਕਮਰਾ	kamraa	<i>room</i>	ਕਮਰੇ ਵਿਚ	kamre	<i>vich</i>	<i>in the room</i>

Masculine plural

direct	oblique					
ਮੰਡੇ	mundee	<i>boys</i>	ਮੰਡਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ	mundiaan	<i>noon</i>	<i>to the boys</i>
ਘੜੇ	ghorhe	<i>horses</i>	ਘੜਿਆਂ ਤੇ	ghorhiaan	<i>te</i>	<i>on the horses</i>
ਕਮਰੇ	kamre	<i>rooms</i>	ਕਮਰਿਆਂ ਵਿਚ	kamriaan	<i>vich</i>	<i>in the rooms</i>

Feminine singular

direct	oblique					
ਤਸਵੀਰ	tasveer	<i>picture</i>	ਤਸਵੀਰ ਵਿਚ	tasveer	<i>vich</i>	<i>in the picture</i>
ਕੁੜੀ	kurhee	<i>girl</i>	ਕੁੜੀ ਨੂੰ	kurhee	<i>noon</i>	<i>to the girl</i>
ਜਨਨੀ	janaanee	<i>lady</i>	ਜਨਨੀ ਤੇ	janaanee	<i>ton</i>	<i>from the lady</i>

Feminine plural

direct	oblique					
ਤਸਵੀਰਾਂ	tasveeraan	<i>pictures</i>	ਤਸਵੀਰਾਂ ਵਿਚ	tasveeraan	<i>vich</i>	<i>in the pictures</i>
ਕੁੜੀਆਂ	kurheeaan	<i>girls</i>	ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਨੂੰ	kurheeaan	<i>noon</i>	<i>to the girls</i>
ਜਨਨੀਆਂ	janaanee	<i>ladies</i>	ਜਨਨੀਆਂ ਤੇ	janaaneeaan	<i>ton</i>	<i>from the ladies</i>

Adjectives in the oblique

Adjectives must agree with the nouns they describe. Therefore, it is only logical that adjectives should also change form when attached to a noun followed by a postposition. In a similar manner to the oblique forms of nouns, adjectives are inflected in the oblique case, in addition to carrying the feminine or masculine, singular or plural nature of the nouns which they qualify. When adjectives are attached to oblique nouns, they also become oblique. Invariable adjectives, however, do not change. Notice the pattern of inflection of the adjectives in the following examples:

Direct	Oblique
ਵੱਡਾ ਬੇਟਾ	<i>elder son</i>
vaddaa betaa	ਵੱਡੇ ਬੇਟੇ ਨੂੰ vadde bete noon
ਵੱਡੇ ਬੇਟੇ	<i>elder sons</i>
vadde bete	ਵੱਡਿਆਂ ਬੇਟਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ vaddiaan betiaan noon
ਵੱਡੀ ਬੇਟੀ	<i>elder daughter</i>
vaddee betee	ਵੱਡੀ ਬੇਟੀ ਨਾਲ vaddee betee naal
ਵੱਡੀਆਂ ਬੇਟੀਆਂ	<i>elder daughters</i>
vaddeeaaan beteeaaan	ਵੱਡੀਆਂ ਬੇਟੀਆਂ ਨਾਲ vaddeeaaan beteeaaan naal
ਲਾਲ ਗੱਡੀ	<i>red car</i>
laal gaddee	ਲਾਲ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ laal gaddee vich
ਲਾਲ ਗੱਡੀਆਂ	<i>red cars</i>
laal gaddeeaan	ਲਾਲ ਗੱਡੀਆਂ ਵਿਚ laal gaddeeaan vich

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

Employment and the Panjabi diaspora

There has been a long history of labour migration from Panjab to all parts of the world. The descendants of officers in the British Indian police force formed the core of the community in Malaysia and the Philippines, while political migrants at the beginning of the twentieth century formed the core of the old community in Vancouver, Canada. In Britain, migration occurred after World War II and was primarily into the old industrial heartlands of the Midlands and the North, with a sizeable group also working in London. From a predominantly rural background to urban Britain, Panjabi men went from tilling the land to toiling on factory floors.

In the 1960s in Britain a Panjabi man would almost definitely be working in a factory or foundry in labouring or semi-skilled occupations. This is in contrast to migration to America in the 1960s where, due to the operation of quotas, only professionals such as doctors and engineers were allowed entry from the Indian sub-continent.

As communities have settled and the old industrial manufacturing sector has gone into decline, Panjabis are now found in all walks of life in Britain and North America. However, there is a concentration in certain parts of the economy, particularly in traditional professions such as law, medicine and engineering as well as self-employment. A large number of Panjabis are also involved in business ventures in textiles, food processing and retailing, the most popular niche markets. At the same time there is an increasing diversity of occupational and class profiles of Panjabis, from the long-term unemployed to multimillionaires.

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

1. True or false?

- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------------------|--------------|
| a. ਸਿਹਤ | sihat | means <i>health</i> | True / False |
| b. ਬਿਲਕੁਲ | bilkul | means <i>alright</i> | True / False |
| c. ਅਧਿਆਪਕ | adhiaapaka | means <i>doctor</i> | True / False |
| d. ਖੁਸ਼ੀ | khushee | means <i>fine</i> | True / False |

2. Who made the statements?

Reread the dialogues, then look at the following:

- ਇਹ ਡਾਕਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਹਨ। ih daaktar singh han. *This is Doctor Singh.*
- ਮਿਸਟਰ ਖਾਨ ਮੌਜ਼ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ। mistar khaan maujaan karde han. *Mr Khan is enjoying life.*
- ਮੈਂ ਵੀ ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ। main vee barmingham rahindaa haan. *I live in Birmingham too.*

3. Oblique or direct?

The following sentences contain adjectives and nouns which have been underlined. Identify which ones are direct and which ones are oblique.

- ਕੀ ਇਹ ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਬੇਟੀ ਹੈ? kee ih tuhaadee betee hai? *Is this your daughter?*

- b) ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਬੇਟੇ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹੈ ? tuhaade bete daa naam kee hai? What is your son's name?
- c) ਕਮਰਾ ਸਾਫ਼ ਹੈ। kamraa saaf hai. The room is clean.
- d) ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਕਮਰੇ ਵਿਚ ਹਨ। kurheeaan kamre vich han. There are girls in the room.
- e) ਅਗਲੇ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਨੂੰ ਆਉਣਾ। agle hafte noon aaunhaa. Come next week.

4. Subjects and verbs into plural forms

Listen to the following sentences and/or read them in the following list. The sentences are in the present tense. Change the subjects and verbs from the singular to the plural. Remember that the verbs (both main and auxiliary) must agree with the subject. The first one has been done for you.

- a) ਮੈਂ ਲੰਡਨ ਵਿਚ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਦੀ ਹਾਂ main landan vich kanm kardee haan
I work in London.
- ਅਸੀਂ ਲੰਡਨ ਵਿਚ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ aseen landan vich kanm kardeean
We work in London.
- b) ਮੇਰੀ ਬੇਟੀ ਸਕੂਲ ਵਿਚ ਪੜ੍ਹਦੀ ਹੈ meree betee sakool vich parhhdee hai
- c) ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਲੜਕਾ ਕਿਥੋਂ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa larhkaa kiththe rahindaa hai?
- d) ਕੀ ਉਹ ਮੁੰਡਾ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਹੈ ? kee uh mundaa panjaabee boldaa hai?

5 | ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਸੀ ? kee gall see?

What was the matter?

In this unit you will learn:

- how to describe continuous actions in the present and past
- how to form commands and requests
- how to express was and were

1 What are you doing?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਤੂਂ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈं ?

gall baat 1 toon kee kar rahee hain?

Geeta and Sita are two women working in a garments factory. They are sitting next to one another as they are sewing and have the following conversation.

ਜੀਤਾ ਨਮਸਤੇ ! ਤੂਂ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈਂ ?

Geeta namaste! toon kee kar rahee hain?

Hello! What are you doing?

ਸੀਤਾ ਨਮਸਤੇ। ਮੈਂ ਜੇਬਾਂ ਲਗਾ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ। ਮੇਰੀ ਮਸ਼ੀਨ ਕੰਮ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ। ਮੈਂ ਸੂਟੀ ਵਰਤ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ।

Sita namaste. main jebaan lagaa rahee haan. meree masheen kanm naheen kar rahee. main soooee varq rahee haan.
Hello. I am stitching pockets. My machine is not working so I am using a needle.

ਜੀਤਾ ਤੂਂ ਸਮਾਂ ਜਾਇਆ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ। ਸੁਣ! ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਛੱਡ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ।

Geeta toon samaan zaaiaa kar rahee hain. sunh! main kanm chadd rahee haan.

You are wasting your time. Listen! I am leaving work.

ਸੀਤਾ ਤੂਂ ਕੰਮ ਕਿਉਂ ਛੱਡ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ ?

Sita toon kanm kiun chadd rahee hain?

Why are you leaving work?

- ਗੀਤ** ਮੈਨੇਜਰ ਸਾਡੀ ਤਨਖਾਹ ਨਹੀਂ ਵਧਾ ਰਿਹਾ। ਉਹ ਸਡੀਆਂ ਮੰਗ ਪੁਰੀਆਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ।
- Geeta** mainejar saadee tankhaah naheen vadhaa rihaa. uh saadeeaan mangaan pooreeaan naheen kar rihaa hai.
The manager is not increasing our pay. He is not fulfilling our demands.
- ਸੀਤਾ** ਤੂੰ ਠੀਕ ਕਹਿ ਰਹੀ ਹੋ !
- Sita** toon theek kahi rahee hain!
You're right! (literally: You are saying it right).

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਕਰਨਾ	karnaa	to do
ਜੋਬਾਂ	jebaan	pockets (m./f.)
ਲਗਾਉਣਾ	lagaaunhaha	to stitch, to apply, to put on
ਮਸ਼ੀਨ	masheen	machine (f.)
ਕੰਮ ਕਰਨਾ	kanm karnaa	to work
ਸੂਟੀ	sooee	needle (f.)
ਵਰਤਣਾ	varatnhaa	to use
ਸਮਾਂ	samaan	time (m.)
ਜਾਇਆ ਕਰਨਾ	zaaiaa karnaa	to waste time
ਸੁਣਨਾ	sunhnaa	to listen
ਕੰਮ	kanm	work (m.)
ਛੱਡਣਾ	chaddnhaha	to leave, to quit
ਮੈਨੇਜਰ	mainejar	manager (m./f.)
ਤਨਖਾਹ	tankhaah	pay, salary (f.)
ਵਧਾਉਣਾ	vadhaaunhaha	to increase
ਮੰਗਾਂ	mangaan	demands (f.)
ਪੁਰੀਆਂ	pooreeaan	fulfilling
ਠੀਕ	theek	right, correct
ਕਹਿਣਾ	kahinaha	to speak

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Arrange in correct word order

- a) ਨਮਸਤੇ ਹੈਂ ਰਹੀ ਕਰ ਕੀ ਤੂੰ ? namaste-hain-rahee-kar-kee-toon? *Hello. What are you doing?*

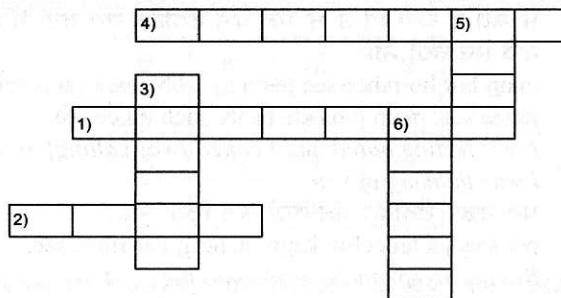
- b) ਮੈਂ ਜੇਬਾਂ ਹਾਂ ਰਹੀ ਲਗਾ main-jebaan-haan-rahee-lagaa *I am stitching pockets.*

- c) ਨਹੀਂ ਵਧਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਤਨਖਾਹ ਮੈਨੇਜਰ ਸਾਡੀ naheen-vadhaa-rihaa tankhaah-mainejar-saadee *The manager is not increasing our pay.*

2. Crossword

Using the words given to you in Panjabi, complete the crossword with the English translations.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. ਮਸ਼ੀਨ | masheen |
| 2. ਕੰਮ | kanm |
| 3. ਤਨਖਾਹ | tankhaah |
| 4. ਜੋਬਾਂ | jebaan |
| 5. ਸਮਾਂ | samaan |
| 6. ਸੂਟੀ | sooee |



2 What was the matter?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਸੀ ?

gall baat 2 kee gall see?

Preet and Sumeet are close friends. They are meeting each other after the weekend.

- ਪ੍ਰੀਤ** ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਕਿਥੇ ਸੀ ?
Preet tuseen kallh kiththe see?
Where were you yesterday?
- ਸੁਮੀਤ** ਆਸੀਂ ਘਰ ਸੀ।
Sumeet aseen ghar see.
We were at home.

ਪ੍ਰੀਤ Preet	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਵੇਰੇ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਸੀ ? <u>tuseen</u> savere kee kar rahe see? <i>What were you doing in the morning?</i>
ਸੁਮੀਤ Sumeet	ਮੈਂ ਫਿਲਮ ਦੇਖ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। ਬੱਚੇ ਖੇਡ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ। <u>main</u> filam dekh rahee see. bachche khed rahe san. <i>I was watching a film. The children were playing.</i>
ਪ੍ਰੀਤ Preet	ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਪਤੀ ਜੀ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ ? <u>tuhaade</u> patee jee kee kar rahe san? <i>What was your husband doing?</i>
ਸੁਮੀਤ Sumeet	ਉਹ ਕਾਰ ਧੋ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ। uh kaar <u>dho</u> rahe san. <i>He was washing the car.</i>
ਪ੍ਰੀਤ Preet	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿਉਂ ਪੁੱਛ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ? ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਸੀ ? <u>tuseen</u> kiun <u>puchch</u> rahe ho? kee gall see? <i>Why are you asking? What was the matter?</i>
ਸੁਮੀਤ Sumeet	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਰ ਹੋ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ ਤੇ ਮੈਂ ਸਭ ਪਾਸੇ ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਬੱਚੇ ਸੋਚ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। <u>main</u> bor ho rahee see <u>te</u> <u>main</u> sabh paase taileefon kar rahee see. <u>main</u> <u>tuhaade</u> baare soch rahee see. <i>I was feeling bored and I called [was calling] everywhere. I was thinking of you.</i>
ਪ੍ਰੀਤ Preet	ਪਰ ਸਾਡਾ ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ ਕੰਮ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ। par saadaa taileefon <u>kanm</u> naheen kar rihaa see. <i>But our telephone was not working.</i>

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਗੱਲ	gall	matter (f.) (literal meaning: talk)
ਕੱਲ੍ਹ	kallh	yesterday
ਸਵੇਰੇ	savere	morning
ਫਿਲਮ	filam	film (f.)
ਦੇਖਣਾ	dekhnhaa	to watch
ਖੇਡਣਾ	khednhaa	to play
ਪਤੀ	patee	husband (m.)
ਕਾਰ	kaar	car (f.)
ਧੋਣਾ	dhonhaa	to wash
ਪੁੱਛਣਾ	puchchnhaa	to ask
ਬੋਰ ਹੋਣਾ	bor honhaa	to be bored, to feel bored

ਸਭ	sabh	all, every
ਸਭ ਪਾਸੇ	sabh paase	everywhere
ਪਾਸੇ	paase	direction, way
ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ ਕਰਨਾ	taileefon karnaa	to call by telephone
ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਬਾਰੇ	tuhaade baare	about you
ਸੋਚਣਾ	sochnhaa	to think



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Word search

Four Panjabi words are hidden in the box. These words are **kaar**, **sumeet**, **kallh** and **ghar**. Find them by looking horizontally across each of the rows.

ਕ	ਸ	ਮੀ	ਤ
ਕੌ	ਲੁ	ਟ	ਤ
ਬ	ਤ	ਘ	ਰ
ਸ	ਕਾ	ਰ	ਮ

2. Answer in Panjabi questions about the dialogue

- ਸੁਮੀਤ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ ? sumeet kee kar rahee see?
- ਬੱਚੇ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ ? bachche kee kar rahe san?
- ਸੁਮੀਤ ਦਾ ਪਤੀ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ ? sumeet daa patee kee kar rihaa see?



bolee baare

bolee baare

Language points

The present continuous tense (-ing)

The present continuous tense is generally used when an action is in progress. In English it is often signified by adding *-ing* to the end of a verb. In Panjabi, the stem, also known as the root, of the verb does not change its form. But the auxiliary verb and the progressive marker must agree with the subject. The progressive aspect of the verb, comparable with *-ing* in English, is expressed through ਰਹਿ *rahi* the stem of ਰਹਿਣਾ.

rahinhaa. It stands on its own as a separate word and should not be attached to either the main verb (*to . . .*) or the auxiliary verb. The progressive marker changes according to the gender and number of the subject.

For example: ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ main khaa rihaa haan I am eating

ਮੈਂ **main** I (subject) (1st person singular, masculine) + **ਖਾ** **khaa** (stem of the verb **ਖਣਾ** (to eat)) + **ਰਿਹਾ** **rihaa** (= -ing) (progressive marker) (masculine/singular) + **ਹਾਂ** **haan** (auxiliary verb (am))

The forms of **ਰਿਹਾ** **rihi** are as follows:

Masculine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine singular	Feminine plural
ਰਿਹਾ rihaa	ਰਹੇ rahe	ਰਹੀ rahee	ਰਹੀਆਂ raheeaan

The auxiliary verb also reflects the person, number and gender of the subject and takes on the present tense forms of **ਹੋਣਾ** **honhaa** as discussed in Unit 2.

1st person

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ main khaa rihaa haan	I am eating
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ main khaa rahee haan	I am eating
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੇ ਹਾਂ aseen khaa rahe haan	we are eating
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ aseen khaa raheeaan haan	we are eating

2nd person

Masculine singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈਂ toon khaa rihaa hain	you are eating
Feminine singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਰਹੀ ਹੈਂ toon khaa rahee hain	you are eating

Masculine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ tuseen khaa rahe ho	you are eating
Feminine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਹੋ tuseen khaa raheeaan ho	you are eating

3rd person

Masculine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ uh/ih khaa rihaa hai	he is eating
Feminine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਖਾ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ uh/ih khaa rahee hai	she is eating
Masculine plural	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਖਾ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ uh/ih khaa rahe han	they are eating
Feminine plural	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਖਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਹਨ uh/ih khaa raheeaan han	they are eating

Uses of present continuous

Sometimes the simple present (see Unit 4) and present continuous tenses become interchangeable with one another when the action is on going and habitual.

Simple present

ਮੈਂ ਸਕੂਲ ਵਿਚ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਦਾ ਹਾਂ main sakool vich kanm kardaa haan I work in a school.

Present continuous

ਮੈਂ ਸਕੂਲ ਵਿਚ ਕੰਮ ਕਰ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ main sakool vich kanm kar rihaa haan I am working in a school.

The present continuous tense may also be used in instances where an action in the immediate future is being denoted, though it may not be happening at the present time:

ਉਹ ਸ਼ਾਮ ਨੂੰ ਆ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ uh shaam noon aa rihaa hai He is coming in the evening.

A less formal but more common manner of this use of the present continuous occurs if we drop the auxiliary verb. The meaning of the sentence does not change. However, because the sense becomes slightly less formal a change of **ਰਿਹਾ** **rihaa** to **ਰਿਹਾਂ** **rihaan** by nasalising the ending is required.

Examples:

ਉਹ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾਂ	uh jaa rihaan	<i>He's going</i>
ਮੈਂ ਪੜ੍ਹ ਰਿਹਾਂ	main parhh rihaan	<i>I'm reading</i>

The imperative

The imperative is a form of the verb which expresses request, command or suggestion. The imperative has two forms: formal and informal. The formal imperative adds the vowel sound 'o' to the stem of the verb and the informal uses the stem on its own. Here are two examples which illustrate the formal and informal aspects of the imperative using the verb **ਸੁਣਨਾ**, *sunhnaa, to listen:*

(ਤੂ) ਸੁਣ (toon) sunh	<i>Listen!</i> (you, informal)
(ਤੁਸੀਂ) ਸੁਣੋ (tuseen) sunho	<i>Listen!</i> (you, formal)

ਤੂ **toon** (*you*) is generally used with children, close relatives, equals and intimate relations while ਤੁਸੀਂ **tuseen** (*you*) is used as a respectful address with elders or formal acquaintances or in references to more than one person. The person and the tone of voice used to express imperative situations determine the nature of the order or request. For example, an imperative form in the 2nd person ਤੁਸੀਂ **tuseen** would denote a more polite, formal request while an imperative using the 2nd person ਤੂ **toon** would reflect a more informal although authoritative order.

Was and were

The past tense of the verb *to be* ਹੋਣਾ honhaa is *was* and *were*. You have already learned that the auxiliary verb is formed with the verb *to be*. Just as the present tense of *to be* becomes *is, am* and *are*, the past tense of *to be* becomes *was* and *were*.

Here is the past tense of the verb honhaa ਹੋਣਾ *to be*:

Singular

Plural

ਮੈਂ ਸੀ	main see	<i>I was</i>	ਅਸੀਂ ਸੀ	aseen see	<i>we were</i>
ਤੂ ਸੀ	toon see	<i>you were</i>	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੀ	tuseen see	<i>you were</i>
ਇਹ ਸੀ	ih see	<i>he/ she/ it was</i>	ਇਹ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	ih san/see	<i>they were</i>
ਉਹ ਸੀ	uh see	<i>he/she/that was</i>	ਉਹ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	uh san/see	<i>they were</i>

Note that **ਸੀ** see can be used with any number, person or gender.

The past continuous tense

The past continuous tense describes actions which had continued to happen before and after a particular time (in English *was ...-ing* and *were ...-ing*). The past continuous tense follows the same pattern as the present continuous except that the auxiliary verb takes the past form. The progressive marker (-ing) is followed by the appropriate forms of *was* and *were*. **ਸੀ** see is the most commonly used past auxiliary, although **ਸਨ** san is also used for the plural. Both are neutral of gender and number.

Masculine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine singular	Feminine plural
ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ rihaa see	ਰਹੇ ਸਨ rahe san	ਰਹੀ ਸੀ rahee see	ਰਹੀਆਂ ਸਨ raheeaaan san

ਮੈਂ **main** I (subject) (1st person singular, masculine) + ਖਾਂ **khaa** (stem of the verb ਖਾਣਾ (*to eat*) + **ਰਿਹਾ** **rihaa** (= -ing) (progressive marker) (masculine singular) + **ਸੀ** see (auxiliary verb) (*was*) =

ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ main khaa rihaa see *I was eating*

1st person

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ	main jaa rihaa see	<i>I was going</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ	main jaa rahee see	<i>I was going</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਜਾ ਰਹੇ ਸੀ	aseen jaa rahe see	<i>we were going</i>
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਜਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਸੀ	aseen jaa raheeaaan see	<i>we were going</i>

2nd person

Masculine singular	ਤੂ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ	toon jaa rihaa see	<i>you were going</i>
Feminine singular	ਤੂ ਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ	toon jaa rahee see	<i>you were going</i>
Masculine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾ ਰਹੇ ਸੀ	tuseen jaa rahe see	<i>you were going</i>
Feminine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਸੀ	tuseen jaa raheeaaan see	<i>you were going</i>

3rd person

Masculine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ	uh/ih jaa rihaa see	<i>he was going</i>
Feminine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ	uh/ih jaa rahee see	<i>she was going</i>
Masculine plural	ਉਜ/ਇਹ ਜਾ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	uh/ih jaa rahe san/see	<i>they were going</i>
Feminine plural	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਜਾ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	uh/ih jaa raheeaaan san/see	<i>they were going</i>

Negative sentences

Generally, sentences are made negative by inserting **ਨਹੀਂ naheen** (*not*) between the verb stem and the progressive marker.

Statement	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ	main khaa rihaa haan	<i>I am eating</i>
Negative	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ	main khaa naheen rihaa	<i>I am not eating haan</i>

In colloquial speech the auxiliary verb is often dropped in positive and negative statements. A native Panjabi speaker may instead say: **ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਰਿਹਾ।** main khaa naheen rihaa.

Making interrogative sentences

An interrogative sentence is made simply by adding **ਕੀ kee** at the beginning of the sentence. The literal definition of **ਕੀ kee** is ‘what’ which can turn a statement into a question.

Statement	ਤੂੰ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ	toon khaa rihaa hain	<i>you are eating</i>
Interrogative	ਕੀ ਤੂੰ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ?	kee toon khaa rihaa	<i>Are you eating hain?</i>

If **ਕੀ kee** is inserted between the subject and the verb, the meaning of the sentence will change. Note and compare the following sentences:

ਤੂੰ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ	toon khaa rihaa hain	<i>you are eating</i>
ਕੀ ਤੂੰ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ?	kee toon khaa rihaa hain?	<i>Are you eating?</i>
ਤੂੰ ਕੀ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ?	toon kee khaa rihaa hain?	<i>What are you eating?</i>

Similarly, other interrogative pronouns can be used in turning statements into questions such as **ਕਿਉਂ kiun** (*why*), **ਕਿਵੇਂ kiven** (*how*) and **ਕਿਥੋਂ kiththe** (*where*).

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. ਕੁਲ੍ਹ kallh (*yesterday and tomorrow*)

In Panjabi there is one word which means both *yesterday* and *tomorrow* – **ਕੁਲ੍ਹ kallh**. This may at first seem quite confusing, but the sense in which **ਕੁਲ੍ਹ kallh** is used in a conversation can be gauged from the tense of the verbs and the sense of the context. For example:

ਮੈਂ ਕੁਲ੍ਹ ਘਰ ਸੀ	main kallh ghar see	<i>I was (at) home yesterday.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਕੁਲ੍ਹ ਆ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ	main kallh aa rahee haan	<i>I am coming tomorrow.</i>

There is, however, a specific word for tomorrow – **ਭਲਕ bhalak** – but it is rarely used. The most common forms of signifying time are:

ਅੱਜ	ajj	<i>today</i>
ਕੁਲ੍ਹ	kallh	<i>yesterday/tomorrow</i>
ਭਲਕ/ਭਲਕੇ	bhalak/ bhalke	<i>tomorrow</i>
ਪਰਸੋ	parson	<i>day before yesterday/ day after tomorrow</i>

You will see all of these forms used in later units.

2. Panjabi women at work

In rural Panjab, women play a significant part in the contribution to the household economy. From helping in the fields to animal husbandry, women play a central role in the rural economy. This has continued in the diaspora, where Panjabi women have worked in factories in a similar way to their male counterparts. The factories of the Midlands in Britain and more recently Silicon Valley in California have employed Panjabi women. In Britain these women have been at the forefront of industrial struggles, the most well known being ‘Imperial Typewriters’ and the more recent ‘Burnsalls’ Strike’. The contemporary concentration of Panjabi women in

the textiles sector in sewing and stitching of garments is a continuity with the jobs they had on arrival. The daughters of these migrants are now forging new paths in a wide variety of occupations and businesses, a selection of which can be found in the book, *The Golden Thread*, by Zerbanoo Gifford.

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

1. Change the informal sentences into formal sentences

Complete this exercise by replacing the subject pronoun ਤੁ (toon) with ਤੁਸੀਂ (tuseen).

- ਤੁ ਸਮਾਂ ਜਾਇਆ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈं toon samaan zaaiaa kar rahee hain *You are wasting your time*
- ਤੁ ਕੰਮ ਕਿਉਂ ਛੱਡ ਰਹੀ ਹੈं? toon kanm kiun chadd rahee hain? *Why are you leaving work?*
- ਤੁ ਠੀਕ ਕਹਿ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ toon theek kahi rahee hain *You are (saying) right.*

2. Complete the table

ਪਤੀ		husband
ਘਰ	ghar	
	kallh	yesterday

3. Change present continuous to past continuous

Listen to the tape. Phrases have been given to you in the present continuous (i.e. am/is/are _ -ing). Change them to the past continuous (i.e. was/were _ -ing). The first one has been done for you.

- ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ main kanm kar rahee haan *I am working*
ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ main kanm kar rahee see *I was working*
- ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਪੁੱਛ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ? tuseen kee puchch rahe ho? *What are you asking?*
- ਉਹ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ? uh kee kar rahe han? *What are they doing?*
- ਉਹ ਕਾਰ ਧੋ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ uh kaar dho rihaa hai *He is washing the car.*

4. Fill in the blanks

Using the pictorial clues given, fill in the blanks with the main verb stem of the continuous actions being done.

a. ਗੀਤਾ ਟੈਨਿਸ _____

geetaa tainas (tennis) _____



b. ਅਵਤਾਰ ਖਾਂਦਾ _____

avtaar khaanhaa _____



c. ਸੀਤਾ ਤੇ ਗੀਤਾ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ _____

seetaa te geetaa panjaabee _____



d. ਮੰਡਾ ਕਿਤਾਬ _____

mundaa kitaab _____



6 | ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਪੜ੍ਹੇ ਸੀ ? kee tuseen jalandhar parhhe see?

*Did you study in
Jalandhar?*

In this unit you will learn:

- how to express actions in the immediate past
- how to express habitual actions in the past
- about Sikh wedding customs
- about kinship and relations

1 We went to London

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਅਸੀਂ ਲੰਡਨ ਗਏ ਸੀ

gall baat 1 aseen landan gae see

Surjit Singh and Pavan Singh are friends and both belong to the Sikh religion. They are having a conversation on the phone.

ਮੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਸਤ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਐਤਵਾਰ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ? ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਘਰ ਆਇਆ ਸੀ।
Surjit Singh sat sree akaal. tuseen aitvaar kiththe see? main tuhaade ghar aaiaa see.

ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ Hello. Where were you on Sunday? I came to your house.
Pavan Singh ਅਸੀਂ ਇਥੋਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਸੀ। ਅਸੀਂ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਲੰਡਨ ਗਏ ਸੀ।
aseen iththe naheen see. aseen hafte de akheer landan gae see.

ਮੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਕੀ ਕੋਈ ਖਾਸ ਮੌਕਾ ਸੀ ?
Surjit Singh kee koe khaas maukaa see?
Was there any special occasion?

ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ	ਹਾਂ ! ਮੇਰੀ ਡਤੀਜੀ ਦਾ ਵਿਆਹ ਸੀ। Pavan Singh haan! meree bhaateejee daa viaah see. <i>Yes! It was my niece's wedding.</i>
ਮੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ	ਵਧਾਈਆਂ। ਕਿਹੜੇ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਤੋਂ ਬਰਾਤ ਆਈ ਸੀ ? Surjit Singh vadhaaeeaan. kihrh shahir ton baraat aeee see? <i>Congratulations. Which city did the marriage party come from?</i>
ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ	ਉਹ ਮਾਂਚੈਸਟਰ ਤੋਂ ਆਈ ਸੀ। ਤਕਰੀਬਨ 100 ਬੰਦੇ ਸਨ। Pavan Singh uh maanchaistar ton aeee see. takreeban 100 bande san. <i>They came from Manchester. There were about 100 people.</i>
ਮੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ	ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਿਹਾ ? Surjit Singh viaah kiven rihaa? <i>How did the wedding go?</i>
ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ	ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਹਣਾ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਦੀ ਆਓ ਤੇ ਵਿਆਹ ਦੀਆਂ ਛੋਟੇ ਦੇਖੋ। Pavan Singh bahut suhnhaa. tuseen kadee aao te viaah deeaan foto dekho. <i>Excellent. Come over sometime and see the wedding photographs.</i>



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਲੰਡਨ	landan	London (m.)
ਐਤਵਾਰ	aitvaar	Sunday (m.)
ਹਫ਼ਤੇ	hafte	week (m.)
ਅਖੀਰ	akheer	end
ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ	hafte de akheer	weekend (m.)
ਕੋਈ	kooee	any
ਖਾਸ	khaas	special
ਮੌਕਾ	maukaa	occasion (m.)
ਡਤੀਜੀ	bhaateejee	niece (f.)
ਵਿਆਹ	viaah	wedding (m.)
ਵਧਾਈਆਂ	vadhaaeeaan	congratulations
ਸ਼ਹਿਰ	shahir	city (m.)
ਮਾਂਚੈਸਟਰ	maanchaistar	Manchester (m.)
ਤਕਰੀਬਨ	takreeban	about, approximately

ਬੰਦੇ	<u>bande</u>	people (m.)
ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਿਹਾ	<u>kiven</u> <u>rihaa</u>	how did it go?
ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਹਣਾ	<u>bahut</u> <u>suhnhaa</u>	very nice, excellent (v.)
ਫੋਟੋ	<u>foto</u>	photograph (f.)
ਕਦੀ	<u>kadee</u>	sometime
ਆਓ	<u>aao</u>	come (formal)

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Answer the following questions about Dialogue 1 in either short or long form

- ਪਵਨ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ? pavan hafte de akheer kiththe see?
- ਖਾਸ ਮੌਕਾ ਕੀ ਸੀ ? khaas maukaa kee see?
- ਕਿਹੜੇ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਤੋਂ ਬਰਾਤ ਆਈ ਸੀ ? kihrhe shahir ton baraat aaee see?
- ਵਿਆਹ ਤੇ ਤਕਰੀਬਨ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਬੰਦੇ ਸਨ ? viaah te takreeban kinne bande san?

2. Translate the following into formal Panjabi

- Where were you on Sunday?
- Where were you yesterday?
- Where were you over the weekend?

2 Did you study in Jalandhar?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਪੜ੍ਹੇ ਸੀ ?

gall baat 2 kee tuseen jalandhar parhhe see?

Surjit Singh visits Pavan Singh in order to see the photographs of Pavan's niece's wedding.

ਸੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਲ ਜੀ। ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ?
 Surjit Singh sat sree akaal jee. kee haal hai?
Hello. How are you?

6 DID YOU STUDY IN JALANDHAR?

ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਲ। ਵਾਹਿਗੁਰੂ ਦੀ ਕਿਰਪਾ ਨਾਲ ਸਭ ਕੁਝ ਠੀਕ ਠਾਕ ਹੈ।
 Pavan Singh sat sree akaal. vaahiguroo dee kirpa naal sabh kujh theek thaak hai.
Hello. By the grace of God, everything is fine.

(Pavan hands the wedding album over to Surjit)

ਸੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ (pointing to one of the photographs)
 Surjit Singh ਇਹ ਪੁਰਸ਼ ਤੇ ਇਸਤਰੀ ਕੌਣ ਹਨ ?
 ih pursh te istaree kaunh han?
Who are this gentleman and lady?
 ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਭਰਾ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਇਹ ਮੇਰੀ ਭਾਂਧੀ ਹੈ। ਅਸੀਂ ਇੱਕੋ ਮਕਾਨ ਵਿਚ
 ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਸੀ।
 Pavan Singh ih mera bharaa hai ate ih meree bhaabee hai. aseen ikko makaan vich rahinde see.
He is my brother, and she is my sister-in-law. We used to live in one house.

ਸੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ (looking at another photograph)
 Surjit Singh ਕੀ ਇਹ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਚਾਚਾ ਜੀ ਹਨ ?
 kee ih tuhaade chaachaa jee han?
Is this your uncle?
 ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਹਾਂ ਜੀ। ਅਸੀਂ ਕਾਲਜ ਵਿਚ ਹਾਕੀ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਖੇਡੇ ਸੀ।
 Pavan Singh haan jee. aseen kaalaj vich haakee ikaththe khedde see.
Yes. We used to play hockey together in college.

ਸੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਪੜ੍ਹੇ ਸੀ ?
 Surjit Singh kee tuseen jalandhar parhhe see.
Did you study in Jalandhar?
 ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਨਹੀਂ ਜੀ ਮੈਂ ਹੁਸ਼ਾਅਰਪੁਰ ਪੜ੍ਹਦਾ ਸੀ।
 Pavan Singh naheen jee. main hushiaarpur parhhdaa see.
No. I used to study in Hoshiarpur.

ਸੁਰਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਕੀ ਵਿਆਹ ਵਿਚ ਬਹੁਤ ਪ੍ਰਾਹੁਣੇ ਸਨ ?
 Surjit Singh kee viaah vich bahut prahunhe san?
Were there a lot of guests at the wedding?
 ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਹਾਂ, ਇਹ ਇੱਕ ਚੰਗ ਇਕੱਠ ਸੀ।
 Pavan Singh haan, ih ikk changaa ikathth see.
Yes, it was a good gathering.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਰਹਿਣ	rahinhaa	<i>to live, to stay</i>
ਕਿਰਪਾ	kirpaa	<i>blessings (f.)</i>
ਸਭ ਕੁਝ	sabh kujh	<i>everything</i>
ਠੀਕ ਠਾਕ	theek thaak	<i>OK, fine</i>
ਪੁਰਸ	purash	<i>gentleman (m.)</i>
ਇਸਤਰੀ	istaree	<i>lady (f.)</i>
ਭਾਬੀ	bhabee	<i>sister-in-law (f.) (brother's wife)</i>
ਚਾਚਾ ਜੀ	chaachaa jee	<i>uncle (m.) (father's brother)</i>
ਕਾਲਜ	kaalaj	<i>college (m.)</i>
ਖੇਡਣ	khednhaa	<i>to play</i>
ਪ੍ਰਾਹੁਣੇ	praahunhe	<i>guests (m.)</i>
ਇੱਕ	ikk	<i>one, a</i>
ਇਕੱਠ	ikathth	<i>gathering (m.)</i>



abhiyas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Complete the table

The first one has been done for you.

ਪੁਰਸ	purash	man
	istaree	
ਇਕੱਠ		
		guests
	kaalaj	
		sister-in-law

2. Identify whether the statements are formal or informal

Tick the appropriate box.

- a) ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਭਰਾ ਹੈ ih meraa bharaa hai
This is my brother.

Formal Informal

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------	--------------------------

- b) ਇਹ ਮੇਰੀ ਭਾਬੀ ਹੈ
ih meree bhabee hai
This is my sister-in-law.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------	--------------------------

- c) ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਚਾਚਾ ਜੀ ਹਨ
ih mere chaachaa jee han
This is my uncle.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------	--------------------------

ਤੀਬਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points

The past tense

The past tense in Panjabi describes actions or states of condition which have taken place at a particular time before the present one. Here we will discuss three different constructions of the past tense: the simple past, the remote past and the past habitual. As was shown in Unit 5, *was* and *were* in Panjabi are expressed through the past tense of the auxiliary verb *to be* ਹੋਣਾ honhaa. The more common forms for the past tense, however, are ਸੀ see and ਸਨ san. The appropriate form of the past of *to be* is determined by person, number and mode of address (formal or informal). Here are some examples to refresh your memory:

ਮੁੰਡਾ ਚੰਗਾ ਸੀ mundaa changaa see *The boy was good.*
ਮੁੰਡੇ ਚੰਗੇ ਸਨ munde change san *The boys were good.*

The simple past tense

The simple past tense is used when expressing actions or conditions completed in the past. The simple past is formed by adding appropriate endings to the stem of the main verb. The endings added to the stem reflect the gender and number of the subject. To determine if the subject is 1st/2nd or 3rd person, you need to refer to the subject pronoun. Here, the verb 'to speak' ਬੋਲਣਾ bolnhaa, will be used to illustrate the various past tenses:

Verb	Stem
ਬੋਲਣਾ bolnhaa (to speak)	ਬੋਲ - bol

Now note the endings added to the stem:

ਮੈਂ	main	I (subject) (1st person masculine)
ਬੋਲਿਆ	boliaa	spoke (simple past form of the verb 'to speak' ਬੋਲਣਾ)

1st person

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ	<u>main</u> boliaa	<i>I spoke</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲੀ	<u>main</u> bolee	<i>I spoke</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੇ	<u>aseen</u> bole	<i>we spoke</i>
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ	<u>aseen</u> boleeaan	<i>we spoke</i>

2nd person

Masculine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲਿਆ	<u>toon</u> boliaa	<i>you spoke</i>
Feminine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲੀ	<u>toon</u> bolee	<i>you spoke</i>
Masculine plural formal	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੇ	<u>tuseen</u> bole	<i>you spoke</i>
Feminine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ	<u>tuseen</u> boleeaan	<i>you spoke</i>

3rd person

Masculine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਬੋਲਿਆ	<u>uh/ih</u> boliaa	<i>he spoke</i>
Feminine singular	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਬੋਲੀ	<u>uh/ih</u> bolee	<i>she spoke</i>
Masc. plural f.	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਬੋਲੇ	<u>uh/ih</u> bole	<i>they spoke</i>
Feminine plural	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ	<u>uh/ih</u> boleeaan	<i>they spoke</i>

Some verbs change in a more irregular manner in the past tense. You will have to learn and watch out for them. Verbs such as **ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa** to go/ਕਰਨਾ karnaa to do and **ਦੇਣਾ denhaa** to give take on irregular forms in the past tense which do not derive from the root. Here we give the example of how **ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa** to go is formed in the simple past tense. Note that the forms are not affected by person, only by gender and number.

ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa – to go (went)

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine plural
ਜਾਣਾ	ਜਾਣੀ	ਜਾਣੇ	ਜਾਣੀਆਂ
giaa	gaee	gae	gaaeaan

The remote past

The remote past in Panjabi expresses actions which occurred prior to the present or the immediate past. The main verb used in the simple past is combined with the auxiliary verb in the past to form the remote past. The remote past tense is used when one is:

- being definitive in a statement
- emphasising a particular point
- conveying the completion of an action
- referring to the remote past

The form of the main verb follows the pattern of the simple past just shown while the auxiliary verb reflects the appropriate forms of *was* and *were*. For example:

1st person

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ	<u>main</u> boliaa see	<i>I spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲੀ ਸੀ	<u>main</u> bolee see	<i>I spoke, had spoken</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੇ ਸੀ	<u>aseen</u> bole see	<i>we spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ ਸੀ	<u>aseen</u> boleeaan see	<i>we spoke, had spoken</i>

2nd person

Masculine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ	<u>toon</u> boliaa see	<i>you spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲੀ ਸੀ	<u>toon</u> bolee see	<i>you spoke, had spoken</i>
Masculine plural formal	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੇ ਸੀ	<u>tuseen</u> bole see	<i>you spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ ਸੀ	<u>tuseen</u> boleeaan see	<i>you spoke, had spoken</i>

3rd person

Masculine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ	ih/uh boliaa see	<i>he spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲੀ ਸੀ	ih/uh bolee see	<i>she spoke, had spoken</i>
Masculine plural formal	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲੇ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	ih/uh bole san/see	<i>they spoke, had spoken</i>
Feminine plural	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	ih/uh boleeaan san/see	<i>they spoke, had spoken</i>

The remote past of ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa *to go* follows the same pattern using the simple past form with the appropriate form of was and were.

ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa – to go

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine plural
ਗਿਆ ਸੀ giaa see	ਗਈ ਸੀ gaee see	ਗਏ ਸੀ/ਸਨ gae see/san	ਗਈਆਂ ਸੀ/ਸਨ gaaeaan see/san

Past habitual tense – *used to*

In English *used to* expresses actions which occurred regularly in the past but which no longer exist in the present. In Panjabi the past habitual tense is used in the same manner. For example:

ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ main boldaa see *I used to speak*

The components of this example can be broken down as follows:

ਮੈਂ main *I* (subject) (1st person masculine)

ਬੋਲਦਾ boldaa *speak* (simple present form of *to speak* ਬੋਲਣਾ bolhhaa)

ਸੀ see *was* (simple past of *to be* ਹੋਣਾ honhaa)

Note from the example that the past habitual tense is formed with the main verb, which takes on the same form as in the simple present tense, and the past tense of *to be* ਹੋਣਾ honhaa. Some examples follow.

1st person

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ	main boldaa see	<i>I used to speak</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਸੀ	main boldee see	<i>I used to speak</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲਦੇ ਸੀ	aseen bolde see	<i>we used to speak</i>
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲਦੀਆਂ	aseen boldeeaan see	<i>we used to speak</i>

2nd person

Masculine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ	toon boldaa see	<i>you used to speak</i>
Feminine singular informal	ਤੁੰ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਸੀ	toon boldee see	<i>you used to speak</i>
Masculine plural formal	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲਦੇ ਸੀ	tuseen bolde see	<i>you used to speak</i>
Feminine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲਦੀਆਂ ਸੀ	tuseen boldeeaan see	<i>you used to speak</i>

3rd person

Masculine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ	ih/uh boldaa see	<i>he used to speak</i>
Feminine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਸੀ	ih/uh boldee see	<i>she used to speak</i>
Masculine plural formal	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲਦੇ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	ih/uh bolde san/see	<i>they used to speak</i>
Feminine plural	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਬੋਲਦੀਆਂ ਸਨ/ਸੀ	ih/uh boldeeaan san/see	<i>they used to speak</i>

Another form of the past habitual uses the verb expressing the action in the habitual and the habitual forms of ਹੋਣਾ honhaa with the past auxiliary. *I used to go* in this form is expressed in the following ways:

1st person

ਮੈਂ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਸੀ	<u>main jaandaa hundaa</u> see	<i>I used to go</i>
ਮੈਂ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ	<u>main jaandee hundee</u> see	<i>I used to go</i>
ਅਸੀਂ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਸੀ	<u>aseen jaande hunde</u> see	<i>we used to go</i>
ਅਸੀਂ ਜਾਂਦੀਆਂ ਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਸੀ	<u>aseen jaandeeaan hundeeaan</u> see	<i>we used to go</i>

2nd person

ਤੁੰਹ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਸੀ	<u>toon jaandaa hun daa</u> see	<i>you used to go</i>
ਤੁੰਹ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ	<u>toon jaandee hun dee</u> see	<i>you used to go</i>
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਸੀ	<u>tuseen jaande hun de</u> see	<i>you used to go</i>
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾਂਦੀਆਂ ਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਸੀ	<u>tuseen jaandeeaan hundee</u> aan see	<i>you used to go</i>

3rd person

ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਸੀ	<u>ih/uh jaandaa hundaa</u> see	<i>he used to go</i>
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ	<u>ih/uh jaandee hundee</u> see	<i>she used to go</i>
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਸਨ	<u>ih/uh jaande hunde</u> san	<i>he/she/they used to go</i>
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਜਾਂਦੀਆਂ ਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਸਨ	<u>ih/uh jaandeeaan hundeeaan</u> san	<i>they used to go</i>

You will come across these various forms of the past tense in subsequent units and there will therefore be plenty of opportunity to practice all of these constructions.

Negative sentences

Negative sentences in the various past tenses are formed by adding **ਨਹੀਂ naheen** either before or after the main verb.

Simple past

ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ main boliaa <i>I spoke</i>	ਮੈਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ main naheen boliaa <i>I did not speak</i>	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਨਹੀਂ ਸੀ main boliaa naheen <i>I did not speak/had not spoken</i>
--	--	--

Remote past

ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ main boliaa see <i>I spoke/had spoken</i>	ਮੈਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ main naheen boliaa see <i>I did not speak/had not spoken</i>	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਨਹੀਂ ਸੀ main boliaa naheen see <i>I did not speak/had not spoken</i>
--	--	--

Habitual past

ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ main boldaa see <i>I used to speak</i>	ਮੈਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ main naheen boldaa see <i>I did not use to speak</i>	ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਸੀ main boldaa naheen see <i>I did not use to speak</i>
---	--	--

Interrogative sentences

As with the other verb tenses in Panjabi, interrogative sentences are formed in the past by adding the question word **ਕੀ kee** at the beginning of the sentence. Here are some examples of how questions are made out of statements in the past:

Simple past

Statement	Question
ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ main boliaa <i>I spoke</i>	ਕੀ ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ? kee main boliaa? <i>Did I speak?</i>

Remote past

Statement	Question
ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ main boliaa see <i>I spoke/had spoken</i>	ਕੀ ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਿਆ ਸੀ? kee main boliaa see? <i>Did I speak/ Had I spoken?</i>

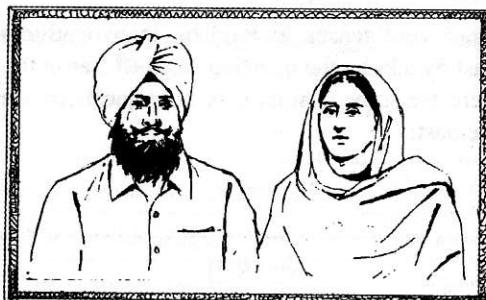
Habitual past

Statement	Question
ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ main boldaa see <i>I used to speak</i>	ਕੀ ਮੈਂ ਬੋਲਦਾ ਸੀ? kee main boldaa see? <i>Did I use to speak?</i>

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

Punjabi families

Punjabi weddings are seen as social occasions and signify the coming together of two families rather than of two individuals, as is traditionally the case in modern western marriages. Kinship relations form a central part of Panjabi society. Often families live in extended units with three or more generations all living under one roof. In contrast to English-speaking cultures, Panjabi has very specific terms for members of the nuclear and extended family. Most kinship terms are determined by the paternal and maternal nature of the relationship and whether or not it is a relationship by marriage. Beware ... these are only half of the possible kin names you may come across in conversation with Panjabis!



Paternal

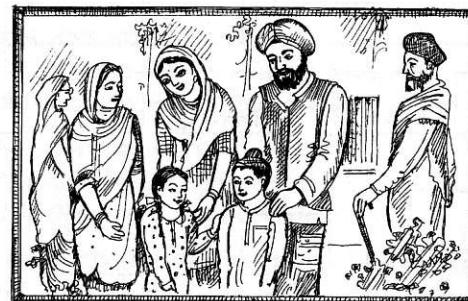
ਦਾਦਾ	<u>daadaa</u> father's father
ਦਾਦੀ	<u>daadee</u> father's mother
ਪਿਤਾ	<u>pitaa</u> father
ਅਬਾ	<u>abbaa</u> papa (father)
ਪਤੀ	<u>patee</u> husband
ਭਰਾ	<u>bharaa</u> brother
ਜੀਜਾ	<u>jeejaa</u> sister's husband
ਚਾਚਾ	<u>chaachaa</u> father's younger brother
ਚਾਚੀ	<u>chaachee</u> father's younger brother's wife
ਤਾਈਆ	<u>taaiaa</u> father's elder brother

Maternal

ਨਾਨਾ	<u>naanaa</u> mother's father
ਨਾਨੀ	<u>naanee</u> mother's mother
ਮਾਤਾ	<u>maataa</u> mother
ਅਮੀ	<u>amme</u> mother
ਪਤਨੀ	<u>patnee</u> wife
ਭੈਣ	<u>bainh</u> sister
ਭਾਬੀ	<u>bhaabee</u> brother's wife
ਮਾਸੀ	<u>maasee</u> mother's sister
ਮਾਸੜ	<u>maasarh</u> mother's sister's husband
ਮਾਮਾ	<u>maamaa</u> mother's brother

6 DID YOU STUDY IN JALANDHAR?

ਤਾਈ	<u>taaee</u> father's elder brother's wife	ਮਾਮੀ	maamee mother's brother's wife
ਭੂਆ	<u>bhooaa</u> father's sister	ਪੁੱਤਰੀ	<u>puttaree</u> daughter
ਫੁਫੜ	<u>phupharh</u> father's sister's husband	ਭਾਨ੍ਤ	<u>bhaanjaa</u> nephew (sister's son)
ਪੁੱਤਰ	<u>puttar</u> son	ਭਾਨ੍ਤੀ	<u>bhaanjee</u> niece (sister's daughter)
ਭਤੀਜਾ	<u>bhateejaa</u> nephew (brother's son)		
ਭਤੀਜੀ	<u>bhatejee</u> niece (brother's daughter)		



ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. The family tree

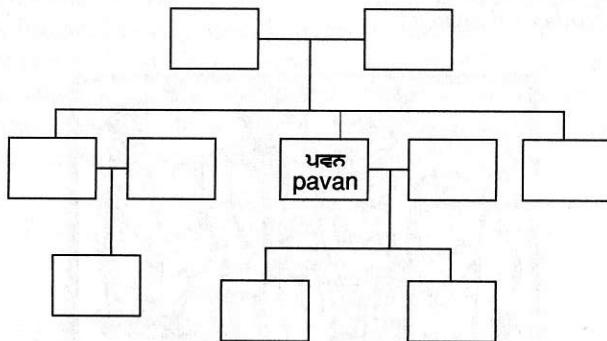
Pavan is showing his family photos to Surjit. Read and/or listen to the following passage on the audio tape. Then try to complete Pavan's family tree. (ਕੁਰਸੀ ਨਾਮ kursee naamaa.)

ਇਹ ਹੈ ਮੇਰਾ ਕੁਰਸੀ ਨਾਮ:

ਮੇਰੇ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਜੋਗਿੰਦਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਮੇਰੇ ਮਤਾ ਜੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਗੁਰਮੀਡ ਕੌਰ ਹੈ। ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਤਿੰਨ ਬੱਚੇ ਹਨ। ਮੈਂ, ਮੇਰਾ ਭਰਾ ਸੁਖਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਤੇ ਮੇਰੀ ਭੈਣ ਕੁਲਦੀਪ ਕੌਰ। ਮੇਰੀ ਭਾਬੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਜਗਜੀਤ ਕੌਰ ਹੈ ਤੇ ਮੇਰੇ ਭਤੀਜੇ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਗੁਰਡੇਜ ਸਿੰਘ ਹੈ। ਮੇਰੀ ਪਤਨੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਹਰਲੀਨ ਕੌਰ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਸਾਡੇ ਦੋ ਬੱਚੇ ਹਨ, ਇੱਕ ਪੁੱਤਰ, ਮਨਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਤੇ ਇੱਕ ਪੁੱਤਰੀ, ਬਲਦੇਵ ਕੌਰ।

ih hai meraa kursee naamaa:

mere pitaa jee daa naam jogindar singh hai ate mere maataa jee daa naam gurmeet kaur hai. uhnaan de tinn bachche han. main, meraa bharaa sukhjeet singh te meree bhaih kuldeep kaur. meree bhabee daa naam jagjeet kaur hai te mere bhateeje daa naam gurtej singh hai. meree patnee daa naam harleen kaur hai ate saade do bachche han, ikk putt^{ar}, manjeet singh te ikk puttree, baldev kaur.



2. Matching

Match the questions with their correct responses.

- a) मैं हफ्ते दे अधीर
मानचास्टर सी
main hafte de akheer
maanchaistar see
- b) मैं ऐडवर घर सी
main aitvaar ghar see

- c) मैं कल्लੁ ਲੰਡਨ ਸੀ
main kallh landan see

- i) ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ?
tuseen kallh kiththe see?
- ii) ਤੁਸੀਂ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ
ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ?
tuseen hafte de akheer
kiththe see?
- iii) ਤੁਸੀਂ ਐਡਵਰ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ?
tuseen aitvaar kiththe see?

3. True or false?

Indicate whether the following statements from the dialogues in the unit are true or false.

- a) ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਚਾਕੀ ਖੇਡਦਾ ਸੀ। pavan singh haakee kheddaa see. True/ False

6 DID YOU STUDY IN JALANDHAR?

- b) ਪਵਨ ਸਿੰਘ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਪੜ੍ਹਦਾ ਸੀ। pavan singh jalandhar parhhdaa see.

True / False

- c) ਵਿਆਹ ਵਿਚ ਬਹੁਤ ਪ੍ਰਾਹੁਣੇ ਸਨ। viaah vich bahut prahunhe san. True / False

4. Construct negative and interrogative sentences

The first example is given.

1. ਰਾਮ ਲੰਡਨ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਸੀ।

Ram landan rahindaa see.

Ram used to live in London.

- Negative: ਰਾਮ ਲੰਡਨ ਨਹੀਂ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਸੀ।

raam landan naheen rahindaa see.

Ram did not use to live in London.

- Interrogative: ਕੀ ਰਾਮ ਲੰਡਨ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਸੀ ?

kee raam landan rahindaa see ?

Did Ram use to live in London?

2. ਉਹ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਲੰਡਨ ਗਏ ਸਨ। uh hafte de akheer landan gae san.
They went to London over the weekend.

3. ਅਸੀਂ ਟਿਕੱਠੇ ਟੈਨਿਸ ਖੇਡਦੇ ਸੀ। aseen ikaththe tainas khedde see.
We used to play tennis together.

4. ਉਹ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ। uh panjaabee boldee hundee see.
She used to speak Panjabi.

7

ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਪੀਓ ਗੇ ? tuseen kee peeо ge?

What will you (have to) drink?

In this unit you will learn:

- how to express actions in the future
- days of the week
- how to tell the time
- about repetitive and rhyming words

1 I'll wait

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ ੧ ਮੈਂ ਉਡੀਕਾਂ ਗਾ

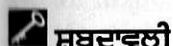
gall baat 1 main udeekaan gaa

Mr Ali and Mr Malik are old friends. Mr Ali is standing outside his house as Mr Malik happens to pass by.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਅਲੀ | ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਚਾਲ ਏ ? |
| Mr Ali | asslaam alaikam. kee haal chaal e? |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਮਲਿਕ | ਵਾਲੈਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮਾ ਮੈਂ ਠੀਕ ਠਕ ਹਾਂ। |
| Mr Malik | vaalaikam asslaam. main theek thaak haan. |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਅਲੀ | ਅੰਦਰ ਆ ਜਾ ਚਹ ਤੂ ਪੀ। |
| Mr Ali | andar aa jaa. chaah choo pee. |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਮਲਿਕ | ਅੱਜ ਮੈਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਠਹਿਰਾਂ ਗਾ। ਮੈਂ ਕਾਹਲ ਵਿਚ ਚਾਂ। |
| Mr Malik | ajj main naheen thahiraan gaa. main kaahal vich haan. |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਅਲੀ | ਕੀ ਤੂ ਕੱਲ ਆਵੇਂ ਗਾ ? |
| Mr Ali | kee toon kallh aaven gaa? |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਮਲਿਕ | ਇਨਸਾਅ ਅੱਲਾ। ਮੈਂ ਜ਼ਰੂਰ ਆਵੇਂ ਗਾ। ਕੱਲ ਸ਼ੈਡਵਾਰ ਹੈ। ਵਕਤ ਖੁੱਲ੍ਹਾ ਹੋਵੇ ਗਾ। |
| Mr Malik | inshaa alla. main zaroor aavaan gaa. kallh aitvaar hai.
vakat khullhaa hove gaa. |

- | | |
|------------|--|
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਅਲੀ | ਸੁਣ ! ਤੂ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਆਵੇਂ ਗਾ ? |
| Mr Ali | sunh! toon kinne vaje aaven gaa? |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਮਲਿਕ | ਆਸੀਂ ਸਾਰੇ ਕੱਲ ਪੰਜ ਵਜੇ ਆਵੇਂ ਗੇ। |
| Mr Malik | aseen saare kallh panj vaje aavaan ge. |
| ਮਿਸਟਰ ਅਲੀ | ਚੰਗਾ ਫਿਰ। ਮੈਂ ਉਡੀਕਾਂ ਗਾ। |
| Mr Ali | changaa phir. main udeekaan gaa. |

- | | |
|----------|---|
| Mr Ali | Hello! How are you? |
| Mr Malik | Hello! I'm fine. |
| Mr Ali | Come inside. Have some tea. |
| Mr Malik | I'm sorry. I won't stop today. I'm in a hurry. |
| Mr Ali | Will you come tomorrow? |
| Mr Malik | Hopefully [lit. If God wishes]. I'll definitely come. |
| Mr Ali | Tomorrow is Sunday. There will be plenty of time. |
| Mr Malik | Listen! What time will you come round? |
| Mr Ali | We'll all come tomorrow, at 5 o'clock. |
| Mr Ali | Fine then. I'll wait. |



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਉਡੀਕਾਂ	udeeknhaa	to wait
ਅੰਦਰ	andar	inside
ਆ ਜਾ	aa jaa	come (informal request)
ਅੱਜ	ajj	today
ਠਹਿਰਾਨ	thahirnaa	to stay
ਕਾਹਲ ਵਿਚ	kaahal vich	in a hurry
ਇਨਸਾਅ ਅੱਲਾ	inshaa allaa	hopefully [lit. If God wishes]
ਜ਼ਰੂਰ	zaroor	definitely
ਵਕਤ	vakat	time (m.)
ਖੁੱਲ੍ਹਾ	khullhaa	open, plenty (v.)
ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ	kinne vaje	what time
ਆਸੀਂ ਸਾਰੇ	aseen saare	all of us, we all
ਪੰਜ ਵਜੇ	panj vaje	five o'clock

**abhiāas****Exercises**

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Fill in the blanks

Complete the sentences by filling in the blank with the correct Panjabi word.

- a. मैं _____ आवं गा I'll definitely come.
- b. की तु _____ आवं गा ? Will you come tomorrow?
- c. तु _____ आवं गा ? What time will you come?

2. Arrange the sentences in the correct order

The order of the following sentences from the dialogue is mixed up. Can you unscramble them by numbering them in the correct order?

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| मिस्टर मलिक: | आसीं सारे कँलु पंਜ वजे आवं गो। |
| Mr Malik: | aseen saare kallh panj vaje aavaan ge. |
| मिस्टर मलिक: | दलेकम अॱसलाम, मैं ठीक ठाक हां। |
| Mr Malik: | vaalaikam asslaam, main theek thaak haan. |
| मिस्टर अली: | मुण! तु किने वजे आवं गा ? |
| Mr Ali: | sunh! toon kinne vaje aaven gaa? |
| मिस्टर अली: | अॱसलाम अॱलेकमा जी चल चल दे ? |
| Mr Ali: | asslaam alaikam. kee haal chaal e? |

2 What will you (have to) drink?

गँल बात 2 डुसीं की पी॑ गे ?

gall baat 2 tuseen kee peeо ge?

Mr and Mrs Malik visit Mr Ali's home. Mr Malik knocks on the door and Mr Ali opens it.

मिस्टर अली जी आइआं नु भाई सहिब ते भाई जी।

Mr Ali jee aaiaan noon bhaaee saahib te bhaabee jee.

(Mr and Mrs Ali exchange greetings with Mr and Mrs Malik)

मिस्त्र अली उश्शरीफ रँचे जी। डुसीं की पी॑ गे ?

Mrs Ali tashreef rakhkho jee. tuseen kee peeо ge?

मिस्टर मलिक शुक्रीआ मैं चाह पीवं गा।

Mr Malik shukreeaa. main chaah peevaan gaa.

मिस्त्र मलिक मैं रस लवां गी।

Mrs Malik main ras lavaan gee.

7 WHAT WILL YOU (HAVE TO) DRINK?

(Mrs Ali serves the drinks and then begins talking to Mrs Malik)

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| मिस्त्र अली | बँचे कडे आउण गे ? |
| Mrs Ali | bachche kadon aaunh ge? |
| मिस्त्र मलिक | उर १५ मिंटां विच आउण गे। |
| Mrs Malik | uh 15 mintaan vich aaunh ge. |
| मिस्त्र अली | की तु मेरे नाल उरदू फ़िलम देखें गी ? |
| Mrs Ali | kee toon mere naal urdu filam dekhene gee? |
| मिस्त्र मलिक | किरही फ़िलम ? |
| Mrs Malik | kihrhee filam? |
| मिस्त्र अली | 'अनारकली' द वजे टी वी ते आ रही है। |
| Mrs Ali | 'anaarkalee' 8 vaje tee vee te aa rahee hai. |
| मिस्त्र मलिक | चां जी। मैं ज़रूर देखां गी ! |
| Mrs Malik | haan jee. main zaroor dekhaan gee! |

Mr Ali Welcome brother and sister-in-law.
(Mr and Mrs Ali exchange greetings with Mr and Mrs Malik)

Mr Ali Please have a seat. What will you drink?

Mr Malik I'll have [drink] tea.

Mrs Malik I'll have juice.

(Mrs Ali serves the drinks and then begins talking to Mrs Malik)

Mrs Ali When will the children arrive?

Mrs Malik They'll be here in 15 minutes.

Mrs Ali Will you [would you like to] watch an Urdu film with me?

Mrs Malik Which film?

Mrs Ali Anarkali [name of a film] is on television at 8 o'clock.

Mrs Malik Yes. I'll definitely watch it!

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ**shabdaavalee****Vocabulary**

जੀ आइਆं नु	jee aaiaan noon	welcome
ਭਾਈ ਸਹਿਬ	bhaaee saahib	brother (m.)
ਭਾਈ ਜੀ	bhaabee jee	sister-in-law (f.)
ਤਸ਼ਰੀਫ ਰਾਂਖੇ ਜੀ	tashreef rakhkho jee	Please have a seat.
ਪੀਣਾ	peenhaa	to drink
ਰਸ	ras	(fruit) juice (m.)
ਲਾਨਾ	lainhaa	to take, to have
ਕਡੋ	kadon	when
ਮਿੰਟਾਂ	mintaan	minutes (m.)
ਮੇਰੇ ਨਾਲ	mere naal	with me

ਦੇਖਣਾ	dekhnaa	<i>to see, to watch</i>
ਉਰਦੂ	urdoo	<i>Urdu (m./f.)</i>
ਅਨਾਰਕਲੀ	anaarkalee	<i>name of a classic Urdu film (f.)</i>
੮ ਵਜੇ	8 vaje	<i>8 o'clock</i>
ਟੀ ਵੀ	tee vee	<i>TV (television) (m.)</i>

ਅਭਿਆਸ**abhiaas****Exercises**

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Questions to ask guests

Two guests, Mr and Mrs Malik, have come to your house for tea. Ask them the following questions.

- a) What will you have to drink?
- b) Would you like to watch television?
- c) Would you like to have juice or tea?

2. Word search

Three words *children*, *Urdu* and *sister-in-law* are hidden in Panjabi in the box. Find them by reading horizontally across each of the rows.

ਬ	ਚ	ਓ	ਪ	ਏ
ਸ	ਸ	ਕ	ਨ	ਹੋਂ
ਕ	ਕਿ	ਊ	ਰ	ਦੂ
ਸੋ	ਸਿ	ਕੁ	ਚ	ਨ
ਫਿ	ਤਾ	ਬੀ	ਹਾ	ਕੈ

ਬੋਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ**bolee baare language points****The future tense**

In Panjabi, as in English, the future tense is used when one is making predictions about the future or referring to intentions, offers, or promises in the future. The Panjabi ending **-ਗਾ gaa** is used to denote actions or

7 WHAT WILL YOU (HAVE TO) DRINK?

conditions in the future and means *will*, *shall* or *would*. As has been explained with other verb tenses in Panjabi, the form of the future tense varies according to the number and gender of the subject. Here are the ways in which **-ਗਾ gaa** is formed (notice that the forms of **-ਗਾ gaa** do not change according to the person of the subject):

-ਗਾ	gaa	masculine singular
-ਗੀ	gee	feminine singular
-ਗੇ	ge	masculine plural
-ਗੀਆਂ	geeaan	feminine plural

The future tense therefore, as is also the case with the present tenses, is constructed by combining the main verb with the auxiliary ending, **-ਗਾ gaa**. The main verb in the future tense, however, does vary according to the person as well as the number of the subject. In the first dialogue in this unit, the verb **ਉਡੀਕਣਾ udeeknhaa** to wait was used in the future tense **ਮੈਂ ਉਡੀਕਣਾਂ ਗਾ main udeekaan gaa**, I will wait. The example of **ਕਰਨਾ karnaa**, to do is now illustrated to show how verbs with stems ending in consonants are formed in the future.

ਕਰਨਾ – infinitive form of *to do* **ਕਰ** – stem

1st person

Masc. sing.	ਮੈਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗਾ	main karaan gaa	<i>I shall/will do</i>
Fem. sing.	ਮੈਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀ	main karaan gee	<i>I shall/will do</i>
Masc. pl.	ਅਸੀਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੇ	aseen karaan ge	<i>we shall/will do</i>
Fem. pl.	ਅਸੀਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀਆਂ	aseen karaan geeaan	<i>we shall/will do</i>

2nd person

Masc. sing. informal	ਤੂ ਕਰੋਂ ਗਾ	toon karen gaa	<i>you will do</i>
Fem. sing. informal	ਤੂ ਕਰੋਂ ਗੀ	toon karen gee	<i>you will do</i>
Masc. pl. formal	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਰੋ ਗੇ	tuseen karo ge	<i>you will do</i>
Fem. pl.	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਰੋ ਗੀਆਂ	tuseen karo geeaan	<i>you will do</i>

3rd person

Masc. sing.	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਕਰੋ ਗਾ	uh/ih kare gaa	<i>he will do</i>
Fem. sing.	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਕਰੋ ਗੀ	uh/ih kare gee	<i>she will do</i>
Masc. pl. formal	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਕਰਨ ਗੇ	uh/ih karan ge	<i>they will do</i>
Fem. pl.	ਉਹ/ਇਹ ਕਰਨ ਗੀਆਂ	uh/ih karan geeaan	<i>they will do</i>

Another construction of the future tense occurs when the stem of the main verb ends in a vowel such as ਜਾ-ਣਾ jaa-nhaa *to go*, ਆਉ-ਣਾ aau-nhaa *to come*, ਪੀ-ਣਾ pee-nhaa *to drink*, and ਲੈ-ਣਾ lai-nhaa *to have*. There are generally two acceptable ways of forming the future tense with such vowel-ending stems. The first manner follows the pattern as given for consonant-ending verb stems. The second manner in which the future tense is often formed is by inserting ਵਾ vavvaa after the vowel. There is no significant difference between the two, although the ਵਾ vavvaa forms often have a slightly more formal tone. Note these examples of the two commonly used main verb formations in the future tense:

ਮੈਂ main I	ਤੁਸੀਂ toon you (informal)	ਤੁਸੀਂ tuseen, you (formal)	ਇਹ ih he/she/it	ਇਹ ih he/she/they
ਅਸੀਂ aseen, we			ਉਹ uh (sing/informal)	ਉਹ uh (plural/formal)

ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa – *to go*, ਜਾ – stem

(1)	ਜਾਵਾਂ jaavaan	ਜਾਏ jaaen	ਜਾਓ jaao	ਜਾਏ jaae	ਜਾਣ jaanh
(2)	ਜਾਵਾਂ jaavaan	ਜਾਵੇ jaaven	ਜਾਵੇ jaavo	ਜਾਵੇ jaave	ਜਾਵਾਣ jaavanh

ਆਉਣਾ aaunhaa – *to come*, ਆ – stem

(1)	ਆਵਾਂ aavaan	ਆਏ aae	ਆਓ ao	ਆਏ aae	ਆਉਣ aaunh
-----	----------------	-----------	----------	-----------	--------------

7 WHAT WILL YOU (HAVE TO) DRINK?

(2)	ਆਵਾਂ aavaan	ਆਵੇ aaven	ਆਵੇ aavo	ਆਵੇ aave	ਆਵਾਣ aavanh
-----	----------------	--------------	-------------	-------------	----------------

ਪੀਣਾ peenhaa – *to drink*, ਪੀ – stem

(1)	ਪੀਆਂ peeaan	ਪੀਏ peeen	ਪੀਓ peeo	ਪੀੇ pee	ਪੀਣ peenh
(2)	ਪੀਵਾਂ peeavaan	ਪੀਵੇ peeven	ਪੀਵੇ peevo	ਪੀਵੇ peeve	ਪੀਵਾਣ peevanh

ਲੈਣਾ lainhaa – *to have, to take*, ਲੈ – stem

(1)	ਲਾਵਾਂ lavaan	ਲਾਏ laen	ਲੈ lo	ਲੈਏ lae	ਲੈਣ lainh
(2)	ਲਾਵਾਂ lavaan	ਲਾਵੇ laven	ਲਾਵੇ lavovo	ਲਾਵੇ lave	ਲਾਵਾਣ lavanh

More forms of the imperative

In Unit 5 the imperative was briefly introduced as a means of expressing a request, order or command. The formal and informal uses of the imperative were illustrated through the verb ਸੁਣਨ sunhnaa *to listen*:

ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣ tuseen sunh	listen (you, informal)
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣੋ tuseen sunho	listen (you, formal/plural)

The plural form of the imperative is used to denote a respectful tone when addressed to a single person. To make the request yet more formal and respectful, the English equivalent of *please* can also be added by use of the honorific particle ਜੀ jee.

ਸੁਣੋ ਜੀ sunho jee	please listen (you, formal)
----------------------	-----------------------------

Please in Panjabi is expressed in the phrase ਕਿਰਪਾ ਕਰ ਕੇ kirpaa kar ke. By using this phrase, a formal request can be made more polite:

ਅੰਦਰ ਆਓ	<u>andar</u> aao	come in
ਕਿਰਪਾ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਅੰਦਰ ਆਓ	kirpaa kar ke <u>andar</u> aao	please come in

Politeness is also expressed by forming the imperative in the future tense. ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣੋ ਜੇ ਜੀ? kee tuseen sunho ge jee? will you please listen?

The tone of the request can be softened with the word ਜਾਹਾ zaraa, just a little used in combination with the infinitive form of the verb. The infinitive specifies the action of what is being requested. The colloquial sense of the earlier request becomes ਜਾਹਾ ਸੁਣਨਾ zaraa sunhnaa, have a listen. With ਦੇਖਣਾ dekhnaa, to look the request becomes:

ਜਾਹਾ ਦੇਖਣਾ	zaraa dekhnaa	have a look
------------	---------------	-------------

Ordinal numbers

In Unit 3 you learned the cardinal numbers from 1 to 20. To expand your knowledge of numbers further here are the ordinal numbers.

ਪਹਿਲਾ	pahila	first
ਦੂਜਾ/ਦੂਜਾ	<u>doosraa/doojaa</u>	second
ਤੀਜਾ/ਤੀਜਾ	<u>teesraa/teejaa</u>	third
ਚੌਥਾ	chauthaa	fourth
ਪੰਜਵਾਂ	panjvaan	fifth
ਛੇਵਾਂ	<u>chevaan</u>	sixth
ਸੱਤਵਾਂ	<u>sattvaan</u>	seventh
ਅੱਠਵਾਂ	aththvaan	eighth

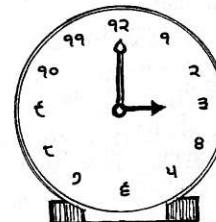
As you can see, from fifth onwards ordinal numbers are formed with the ending -ਵਾਂ vaan. Since ordinals are adjectives, they follow the same rules of agreement as other adjectives. The endings of ordinals will therefore agree with the nouns that they are describing.

ਪਹਿਲੀ ਵਾਰੀ	pahilee vaaree	first time
ਦੂਜਾ ਦਿਨ	doojaa din	second day

What time is it?

In English, time is expressed by the use of o'clock which refers specifically to the position of the hands on the clock when telling the time. Similarly in Panjabi, time is most commonly expressed through the use of the verb ਵੱਜਣਾ vajjhnaa which means to chime, to strike. When asking someone the time, the same rules apply as when transforming statements into interrogative sentences as shown in Unit 5. The word ਕੀ kee is simply

placed at the beginning of the sentence. However, other words for time are also appropriate when asking someone the time in Panjabi. Here are a few commonly used phrases:



ਕੀ ਵਕਤ ਹੈ? kee vakat hai?
ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ? kinne vaje han?

What time is it?

What time is it?

(literally: how many times
has the clock struck?)

ਕੀ ਟਾਈਮ ਹੈ? kee taaim hai?

What is the time?

Therefore, when someone says that it is one o'clock, the expression in Panjabi would be:

ਇੱਕ ਵਜਿਆ ਹੈ ikk vajiaa hai It is one o'clock

The verb ਵੱਜਣਾ vajjhnaa is formed in the present perfect tense here, literally meaning that the clock has struck one. Note that ਵਜਿਆ vajiaa is the singular form as it agrees with the number one. All other times which relate to the number one (such as quarter to one, quarter past one, half past one) also take on the singular form.

ਡੇਢ ਵਜਿਆ ਹੈ dedh vajiaa hai It is half past one.

ਪੌਣਾ ਇੱਕ ਵਜਿਆ ਹੈ paunhaa ikk vajiaa hai It is a quarter to one.

ਸਵਾ ਇੱਕ ਵਜਿਆ ਹੈ savaa ikk vajiaa hai It is a quarter past one.

As you will have noticed in the earlier examples there are terms in Panjabi for each 15-minute sequence of time on the clock. One thirty and two thirty, however, have specific names while all other times use ਸਵਾ savaa, ਸਾਚੇ saadhe and ਪੌਣੇ paunhe.

half past one = ਡੇਢ dedh

half past two = ਦਾਢੀ dhaaee

quarter past the hour = ਸਵਾ savaa

thirty minutes past the hour = ਸਾਚੇ saadhe

quarter to the hour = ਪੌਣਾ paunhaa, ਪੌਣੇ paunhe

All times relating to numbers greater than one use the plural form of ਵਜਣਾ. Here are some examples:

ਦੋ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>do</u> vaje han	<i>It is two o'clock.</i>
ਪੌਣੇ ਦੋ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	paunhe <u>do</u> vaje han	<i>It is a quarter to two.</i>
ਤਿੰਨ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>tinn</u> vaje han	<i>It is three o'clock.</i>
ਸਾਚੇ ਤਿੰਨ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	saadhe <u>tinn</u> vaje han	<i>It is three thirty.</i>
ਚਾਰ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	chaar vaje han	<i>It is four o'clock.</i>
ਸਵਾਰ ਚਾਰ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	savaa chaar vaje han	<i>It is a quarter past four.</i>
ਪੰਜ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	panj vaje han	<i>It is five o'clock.</i>
ਛੇ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>che</u> vaje han	<i>It is six o'clock.</i>
ਪੈਣੇ ਛੇ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	paunhe <u>che</u> vaje han	<i>It is a quarter to six.</i>
ਸੱਤ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>satt</u> vaje han	<i>It is seven o'clock.</i>
ਅੱਠ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	athth vaje han	<i>It is eight o'clock.</i>
ਨੌ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>naun</u> vaje han	<i>It is nine o'clock.</i>
ਦਸ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	<u>das</u> vaje han	<i>It is ten o'clock.</i>
ਸਾਚੇ ਗਿਆਰਾਂ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	saadhe <u>giaaraan</u> vaje han	<i>It is eleven thirty.</i>
ਬਾਰ੍ਹ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ	baar-h-aan vaje han	<i>It is twelve o'clock.</i>

When the exact nature of the time is being expressed, it is also possible to use other forms of expression. Here are a few examples:

ਕਲਾਸ ਇੱਕ ਵਜੇ ਤੋਂ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ	kalaas ikk vaje <u>ton</u>	The class starts at one o'clock
ਹੁੰਦੀ ਹੈ	shuroo <u>hundee</u> hai	
ਤਿੰਨ ਵਜੇ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ	<u>tinn</u> vaj rahe han	It is just three o'clock
ਨੌ ਵਜਣ ਵਾਲੇ ਹਨ	<u>naun</u> vajanh vaale han	It is nearly nine o'clock

When the time of day needs to be specified, morning (**ਸਵੇਰ** saver), afternoon (**ਦੁਪਹਿਰ** dupahir), day (**ਦਿਨ** din), evening (**ਸ਼ਾਮ** shaam) and night (**ਰਾਤ** raat) can also be used:

ਛੇ ਵਜੇ ਸ਼ਾਮ ਨੂੰ	<u>che</u> vaje shaam noon	at six o'clock in the evening
ਸਵੇਰ ਦੇ ਅੱਠ ਵਜੇ	saver de athth vaje	at eight o'clock in the morning
ਦੁਪਹਿਰ ਦੇ ਡੇਚ ਵਜੇ	dupahir de dedh vaje	at one thirty in the afternoon
ਦਿਨ ਦੇ ਵਜੇ	din de do vaje	at two o'clock in the afternoon (day)
ਬਾਰ੍ਹ ਵਜੇ ਰਾਤ ਨੂੰ	baar-h-aan vaje raat noon	at twelve o'clock at night

Further usages and expressions of time will be explained in subsequent units.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. Repetitive and echo/rhyming words

The habitual use of repetitive and echo words is one of the many special characteristics of Panjabi which make it such an expressive language. Many words in Panjabi are repeated in the written and spoken forms to add emphasis. Repetition occurs when the same word is repeated while the echoing and rhyming of words occur through the use of two words which sound similar. Here are some examples:

ਹੌਲੀ ਹੌਲੀ ਚਲੋ	haulee haulee chalo	<i>walk slowly (emphasising slowly)</i>
ਹਟ ਹਟ	hat hat	<i>get away (showing intensity)</i>
ਦੇਸ ਦੇਸ ਤੋਂ ਲੋਕ	<u>des</u> <u>des</u> ton lok aae	<i>people came from different countries (emphasis on countries to signify the many different countries)</i>
ਆਏ		
ਚਾਹ ਚੂ	chaah choo	<i>tea [here the echo word ਚੂ has no specific meaning other than for emphasis]</i>
ਦੁੱਖ ਸੁੱਖ	<u>dukhkh</u> sukhkh	<i>miseries and comforts</i>
ਦਿਨ ਰਾਤ	<u>din</u> <u>raat</u>	<i>day and night (all the time) [these words technically neither rhyme nor are echo words. However, their opposite meanings uttered together gives the idea of continuity.]</i>
ਸੱਚ ਸੱਚ	sachch sachch	<i>the whole truth</i>
ਚੁੱਪ ਚਾਪ	chupp chaap	<i>(absolutely) quiet</i>

2. Days of the week

There are two words for day in Panjabi which are used to designate the days of the week: **ਦਿਨ** din and **ਵਾਰ** vaar. If you want to ask someone what the day of the week is today, there are two ways to ask:

ਅੱਜ ਕੀ ਦਿਨ ਹੈ ? ajj kee din hai?
 ਅੱਜ ਕੀ ਵਾਰ ਹੈ ? ajj kee vaar hai?

What day is it today?
What day is it today?

The names of the days of the week are all masculine nouns. Some of the days of the week are different in West Panjab due to the influence of the Islamic calendar in Pakistan. The days of the week in Panjabi are as follows (*shows the Islamic calendar days):

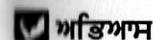
Monday	ਸੋਮਵਾਰ	somvaar
Tuesday	ਪੀਰ *	peer
Wednesday	ਮੰਗਲਵਾਰ	mangalvaar
Thursday	ਬੁੱਧਵਾਰ	budhdhvaar
	ਵੀਰਵਾਰ	veeravaar
Friday	ਜੁਮੇਰਾਤ *	jumeraat
	ਸ਼ੁਕਰਵਾਰ	shukkarvaar
	ਜੁਮਾ *	jumaa
Saturday	ਸਨਿਚਰਵਾਰ	sanicharvaar
	ਹਫਤਾ *	haftaa
Sunday	ਐਤਵਾਰ	aitvaar

Other useful calendar terms are:

ਹਫਤਾ	haftaa	week (m.)
ਸਪਤਾਹ	saptaah	week (m.)
ਮਹੀਨਾ	maheenaa	month (m.)
ਦਿਨ	din	day (m.)
ਸਾਲ	saal	year (m.)

3. Expressions of friendship

You will have noticed in Dialogue 2 that Mr Ali greets Mr Malik as **ਭਾਈ bhaaee saahib** (*brother*) and Mrs Malik as **ਭਾਈ ਜੀ bhaabee jee** (*sister-in-law*). It is not uncommon to address people with whom you wish to express closeness or affection with such terms ordinarily associated with kinship. In this example, it is quite clear that Mr Ali and Mr Malik are not brothers, but their friendship is the basis for Mr Ali referring to Mr Malik as *brother*. Since the relationship is primarily based upon the two men, Mrs Malik is referred to as **ਭਾਈ ਜੀ bhaabee jee** (as Mr Malik's wife) and not *sister*.



abhiāas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. The imperative

You are trying to convey to someone that he or she should listen to you. How would you form the imperative of **ਸੁਣਨਾ sunhnaa, to listen** in the following circumstances?

- to someone who is younger than you (informal)
- to someone who is older than you (formal)
- to someone to whom you wish to show respect (formal, polite)
- to someone with whom you wish to use a mild tone of request

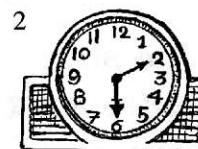
2. What time is it?

Write the answers in Panjabi.

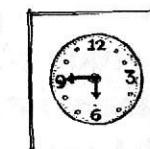
1



2



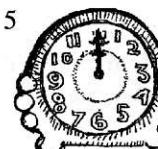
3



4



5



6



3. The future tense

After reviewing the future tense section in the unit, express the fact that you will have tea in the following gender and number situations:

- You are a singular male.
- You are a singular female.
- You are a plural male.
- You are a plural female.

4. Conversation

Suppose you have been asked to go to someone's house. Express the following conversational phrases in Panjabi.

- Yes, thank you.
- No, I'm in a hurry.
- Yes, I'll come tomorrow.
- Fine then. I'll wait.

8 | ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ ਹੈ

mainoon sitaar vajaaunh daa shauk hai

I enjoy playing the sitar

In this unit you will learn:

- how to express your likes and dislikes
- how to express need, want, should, ought
- how to discuss visas
- how to negotiate a taxi ride

1 I enjoy playing the sitar

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ ੧ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ ਹੈ।

gall baat 1 mainoon sitaar vajaaunh daa shauk hai

Jaspreet and Simran are two sisters living in Yuba City, California. They are planning a trip to India and are having a conversation with their father, Mr Sandhu.

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸੰਘੁ
Mr Sandhu

ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਭਾਰਤ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਚਾਹੀਦੇ ਹਨ ?
tuhaanoon bhaarat jaanh laee kinne paise
chaaheede han?

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ
Jaspreet and Simran

ਸਾਨੂੰ ਘੱਟੋ ਘੱਟ (੨੦੦੦) ਦੋ ਹਜ਼ਾਰ ਡਾਲਰ ਚਾਹੀਦੇ ਹਨ।
saanoo ghatto ghatt (2000) do hazaar daalar
chaaheede han.

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸੰਘੁ
Mr Sandhu

ਐਨੇ ਸਾਰੇ ਪੈਸੇ ? ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਖਰਚਾ ਇੰਨਾ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਹੋਵੇ ਗਾ ?
ainੇ saare paise? tuhaadaa kharchaa innaa kiven
hove gaa?

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ

ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ! ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਪਤਾ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ
ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਉੱਥੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਲਿਆਵਾਂ ਗੀ।
piṭaa jee! tuhaanoon paṭaa hai ki mainoon sitaar

ਸਿਮਰਨ Simran	... ਤੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਘੁੰਮਣਾ ਫਿਰਨ ਪਸੰਦ ਹੈ। ... te mainoon <u>ghunmnhaa</u> phirnaa pasand hai.
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸੰਘੁ Mr Sandhu	ਮੇਰੀਓ ਧੀਏ, ਮੈਨੂੰ ਅਫਸੋਸ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਦੇਣ ਲਈ ਮੇਰੇ ਕੋਲ ਯੈਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਨ। mereeo <u>dheeo</u> , mainoon afsos hai ki <u>tuhaanoon</u> <u>denh</u> laee mere kol aine paise naheen han.
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ Jaspreet and Simran	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਫਿਕਰ ਨਾ ਕਰੋ, ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ। ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਕੋਲ ਪੈਸੇ ਬਹੁਤ ਹਨ ! tuseen <u>fikar</u> naa karo, piṭaa jee. maataa jee kol paise bahut han!
Mr Sandhu Jaspreet and Simran Mr Sandhu	<i>How much money do you need for going to India?</i> <i>We need at least \$2000.</i> <i>So much money? Why will your expenses be so high?</i> <i>Father, you know that I am fond of playing the sitar. I'm going to bring a good quality sitar from there.</i>
Jaspreet Simran Mr Sandhu	<i>... and I like travelling around.</i> <i>My daughters, I am sorry that I don't have that much money to give you.</i> <i>Jaspreet and Simran Don't worry, Father. Mother has plenty of money!</i>



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਲਈ laee	for, in order to
ਕਿੰਨੇ kinne	how much, how many
ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa	to need, to want
ਖਰਚਾ kharchaa	expense, expenses (m.)
ਘੱਟੋ ਘੱਟ ghatto ghatt	at least
ਡਾਲਰ daalar	dollar (m.)
ਐਨੇ ਸਾਰੇ aine saare	so much
ਪਿਤਾ piṭaa	to know
ਸਿਤਾਰ sitaar	sitar (f.) (a stringed classical musical instrument)
ਵਜਾਉਣਾ vajaaunhaa	to play (music)
ਸੌਕ shauk	fondness, enjoyment

ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ	vajaaunh <u>daa shauk</u>	fond of playing, enjoy playing from there
ਊਥੋਂ	u th thon	
ਵਪੀਆ	vadheeaā	good quality
ਲਿਆਉਣਾ	liaaunhaa	to bring
ਘੁੰਮਣਾ	ghu ⁿ mnhaa	to go around
ਫਿਰਨਾ	phirnaa	to travel
ਘੁੰਮਣਾ ਫਿਰਨਾ	ghu ⁿ mnhaa phirnaa	to travel around like
ਪਸੰਦ	pasand	regret, sorry
ਅਫਸੋਸ	afsos	
ਕੋਲ	kol	with, next to, in possession
ਮੇਰੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਹੀਂ	mere kol naheen	not with me, not in my possession
ਫਿਕਰ	fikar	worry (m.)
ਧੀਓ	dheeo	daughters (f.) (vocative case: see language points)

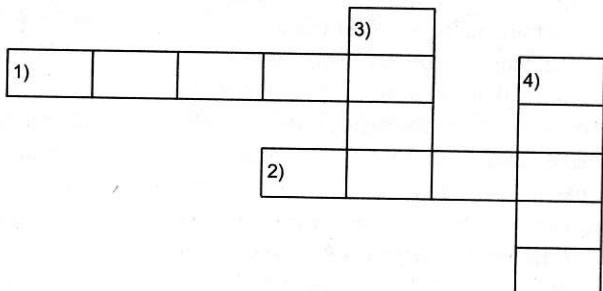
ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1 Crossword

Complete the crossword in Gurmukhi script using the clues given.

- 1) a stringed classical instrument 2) US currency
 3) expense 4) to travel



2. Match the statements

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a. ਫਿਕਰ ਨਾ ਕਰੋ | i) I will bring a good quality sitar. |
| b. ਐਨੇ ਸਾਰੇ ਪੈਸੇ ? | ii) Don't worry. |
| c. ਮੈਂ ਵਪੀਆ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਲਿਆਵਾਂ ਗੀ | iii) So much money? |

2 We want to go to Connaught Place

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਅਸੀਂ ਕਨਾਟ ਪਲੇਸ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ

gall baat 2 aseen kanaat pales jaanhaa chaahundeeaan haan

Simran and Jaspreet have just arrived at the airport in Delhi. They have approached the immigration counter where they show their passports to the officer with whom they are having a conversation.

- ਇਮੀਗ੍ਰੇਸ਼ਨ ਅਫਸਰ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ ਕਿੰਨਾ ਚਿਰ ਤੋਂ ਰਹਿ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਹੋ ?
Immigration Officer tuseen amreekaa kinnaa chir ton rahi raheeaaan ho?
 ਸਿਮਰਨ ਅਸੀਂ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ ਵਿਚ ਜੰਮੀਆਂ ਸੀ।
Simran aseen amreekaa vich janmeeaan see.
 ਇਮੀਗ੍ਰੇਸ਼ਨ ਅਫਸਰ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਐਨੀ ਚੰਗੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਹੈ ?
Immigration Officer tuhaanoon ainee changee panjaabee kiven aaundee hai?
 ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਸਿਰਫ ਬੋੜੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਹੈ।
Jaspreet saanoon siraf thorhee bahutee aaundee hai.
 ਸਿਮਰਨ ਇੱਕ ਬੇਨਤੀ ਹੈ, ਅਫਸਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ...
Simran ikk bentee hai, afsar saahib...
 ਇਮੀਗ੍ਰੇਸ਼ਨ ਅਫਸਰ ਉਹ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
Immigration Officer uh kee hai?
 ਸਿਮਰਨ ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਕੇਵਲ ਇੱਕ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਦਾ ਵੀਜ਼ਾ ਹੈ। ਜੀ ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਦੇ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਰਹਿਣ ਦੀ ਆਗਿਆ ਦੇਵੇ ਗੇ ?
Simran saade kol keval ikk maheene daa veezaa hai. jee kee tuseen saanoon do maheene rahinh dee aagiaa devo ge?
 ਇਮੀਗ੍ਰੇਸ਼ਨ ਅਫਸਰ ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਵੱਸ ਵਿਚ ਨਹੀਂ ਹੈ। ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਵੀਜ਼ਾ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ ਤੋਂ ਲੈਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਸੀ।
Immigration Officer ih mere vass vich naheen hai. tuhaanoon veezaa amreekaa ton lainhaa chaaheedaa see.

ਸਿਮਰਨ ਤੇ ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਫਿਰ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਇੱਕ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਵਿਚ ਸਾਰਾ ਕੁਝ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਪੈਣਾ।
Simran and Jaspreet phir saanoon ikk maheene vich saara kujh dekhnn haa painhaa.
 ਇਮੀਗ੍ਰੇਸ਼ਨ ਅਫਸਰ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਦੇ ਆਸ ਪਾਸ ਕਾਫੀ ਕੁਝ ਦੇਖਣ ਵਲਾ ਹੈ। ਅਨੰਦ ਮਾਣੋ!
Immigration Officer dillee de aas paas kaafee kujh dekhhanh vaalaa hai. anand maanho !

Immigration Officer How long have you been living in America?

Simran We were born in America.

Immigration Officer How do you know Panjabi so well?

Jaspreet We only know a little.

Simran Officer, one request...

Immigration Officer What is it?

Simran We only have a one-month visa. Could you please give us permission to stay for two months?

Immigration Officer This is not within my authority. You should have obtained the visa from America.

Simran and Jaspreet In that case, we'll have to see everything in a month.

Immigration Officer There are plenty of things to see around Delhi. Enjoy yourselves!

Jaspreet and Simran have cleared customs with their luggage and exit from the airport. They approach a taxi driver about travelling into the centre of Delhi.

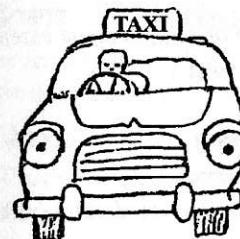
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਅਸੀਂ ਕਨਾਟ ਪਲੇਸ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ ਤੁੰਕਿਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਲਵੇਂ ਗਾ ?
Jaspreet aseen kanaat pales jaanhaa chaahundeeaan haan. toon kinne paise laven gaa?

ਟੈਕਸੀਡਾਲਾ ਸਿਰਫ ਸੌ ਰੂਪਾਈ।
Taxi driver siraf sau rupaiaa.

ਸਿਮਰਨ ਕਨਾਟ ਪਲੇਸ ਹਵਾਈ ਅੱਡੇ ਤੋਂ ਕਿੰਨੀ ਢੂਰ ਹੈ ?
Simran kanaat pales havaaee adde ton kinnee door hai?

ਟੈਕਸੀਡਾਲਾ ਤਕਰੀਬਨ ਵੀਹ ਮੀਲ ਢੂਰ ਹੈ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਠੀਕ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਜਗ ਜਾਣਾ ਹੈ ?
Taxi driver takreeban veeh meel door hai. tuseen theek kihrhee jag-h-aa jaanhaa hai?

ਸਿਮਰਨ ਅਸੀਂ ਅੰਡਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ ਯੂਵਕ ਹੋਸਟਲ ਜਾਣਾ ਹੈ ਪਰ ਤੁੰ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਪੈਸੇ ਮੰਗ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੋਏ।
Simran aseen antar raashtaree yuvak hostal jaanhaa hai par toon ziaadaa paise mang rihaa hain.



ਟੈਕਸੀਡਾਲਾ

ਨਹੀਂ ਨਹੀਂ। ਮੈਂ ਕਿਰਾਇਆ ਵਜ਼ਬੀ ਚੱਸਿਆ ਹੈ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਦੋ ਸਵਾਰੀਆਂ ਹੋ ਤੇ ਸਮਾਨ ਵੀ ਬਹੁਤ ਹੈ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾਣ ਏ ਕਿ ਨਹੀਂ ?

Taxi driver

naheen naheen. main kiraaiaa vaajbee dassiaa hai. tuseen do savaareeaan ho te samaan vee bahut hai. tuseen jaanhaa e ki naheen?

ਅੱਛਾ, ਕਾਹਲਾ ਨ ਪਈ ! ਸਮਾਨ ਰੱਖ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ। achchaa, kaahalaan na pao. samaan rakhkh gaddee vich.

Jaspreet

We want to go to Connaught Place. How much will you charge?*

Only one hundred rupees.

How far is Connaught Place from the airport?

It's about 20 miles away. Exactly where are you going? Take us [we want to go] to the International Youth Hostel, but you're asking for too much money.

No, no. I've told you the reasonable fare. There are two of you travelling and there is a lot of luggage. Are you going or not?

OK. Don't be impatient. Put the luggage in the car.

Jaspreet

* The language used in this dialogue with the taxi driver may seem a little informal (or even rude) in the English translation. This is because informal speech is generally used when haggling over the fare with taxi drivers in India and Pakistan (see Unit 2: Language points: Subject pronouns).

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਅਮਰੀਕਾ

amreekaa

America (m.)

ਚਿਰ

chir

length of time

ਕਿੰਨ ਚਿਰ ਤੋਂ

kinnaa chir ton

since when, for how long

ਜੰਮਣਾ

janmnhaa

to be born

ਥੋੜੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ	<u>thorhee bahutee</u>	<i>more or less, to some extent</i>
ਬੇਨਤੀ	bentee	<i>request (f.)</i>
ਕੇਵਲ	keval	<i>only</i>
ਵੀਜਾ	veezaa	<i>visa (m.)</i>
ਆਗਿਆ	aagiaa	<i>permission (f.)</i>
ਵੱਸ	vass	<i>authority, jurisdiction (m.)</i>
ਪਾਸਪੋਰਟ	paasport	<i>passport (m.)</i>
ਅਫਸਰ	afstar	<i>officer (m./f.)</i>
ਸਾਹਿਬ	saahib	<i>sir (m.)</i>
ਆਸ ਪਾਸ	aas paas	<i>around, around and about</i>
ਕਾਫੀ ਕੁਝ	kaafee kujh	<i>quite a lot, plenty</i>
ਅਨੰਦ ਮਾਣੋ	anand maanho	<i>enjoy yourselves</i>
ਚਾਹੁਣਾ	chaahunhaa	<i>to want, to need</i>
ਸੌ (੧੦੦)	sau	<i>one hundred</i>
ਰੂਪਟਿਆ	rupaiaa	<i>rupees (m.)</i>
ਹਵਾਈ ਅੱਡਾ	havaaee addaa	<i>airport (m.)</i>
ਕਿੰਨੀ ਢੂਰ	kinnee <u>door</u>	<i>how far</i>
ਢੂਰ	door	<i>far, distant</i>
ਵੀਹ (੨੦)	veeh	<i>twenty</i>
ਮੀਲ	meel	<i>mile, miles (m.)</i>
ਜਗ੍ਹਾ	jag-h-aa	<i>place, location (f.)</i>
ਅੰਤਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ	<u>antar raashatree</u>	<i>international</i>
ਯੁਵਕ	yuvak	<i>youth (m.)</i>
ਹੋਸਟਲ	hostal	<i>hostel (m.)</i>
ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ	ziaadaa	<i>too much</i>
ਮੰਗਣਾ	mangnhaa	<i>to request, to ask, to charge</i>
ਕਿਰਾਇਆ	kiraaiaa	<i>rate, fare, rent (m.)</i>
ਵਾਜਬੀ	vaajbee	<i>reasonable, fair, right</i>
ਸਵਰੀਆਂ	savaareeaan	<i>passengers, travellers (f.)</i>
ਸਮਾਨ	samaan	<i>luggage, things (m.)</i>
ਕਾਹਲਾ	kaahalaa	<i>impatient, hasty (v.)</i>
ਪੈਣ	painhaa	<i>to act (to fall)</i>
ਰੱਖਣਾ	rakhkhnhaa	<i>to put</i>
ਗੱਡੀ	gaddee	<i>car, vehicle (f.)</i>

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Write in the correct word order

- a. ਹੈ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਥੋੜੀ ਸਾਨੂੰ
hai-panjaabee-bahutee-aundee-thorhee-saanoon
We only know a little Panjabi.
- b. ਪਲੇਸ ਅਸੀਂ ਹਾਂ ਜਾਣ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਕਨਾਟ
pales-aseen-haan-jaanhaa-chaahundeeaan-kanaat
We want to go to Connaught Place.
- c. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜੀ ਦੋ ਦੀ ਚੇਵੇ ਕੇ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਰਹਿਣ ਕੀ ਆਗਿਆ
tuseen-jee-do-dee-devo-ge-maheene-rahinh-kee-aagiaa
Could you please give us permission to stay for two months?

2. Translate into Panjabi

- a. There are two of you travelling and there is a lot of luggage.
- b. We only have a one-month visa.
- c. Enjoy yourselves!

ੴ ਬੋਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points Pronouns in the oblique

In Unit 2 personal pronouns were introduced representing the English equivalents of *I, we, you, he, she and they*. As with nouns, personal pronouns also take on the oblique form when followed by postpositions. The most commonly used postposition with pronouns is ਨੂੰ **noon** *to* as is illustrated. Note that interrogative pronouns such as ਕੌਣ **kaunh**, *who* and ਕੀ **kee** *what* are also affected by postpositions.

Singular

Direct	Oblique
<i>I</i>	ਮੈਂ
<i>you (inf.)</i>	ਤੁਸੀਂ
<i>you (form.)</i>	ਤੁਸੀਂ
<i>he/she/it (near)</i>	ਇਹ
<i>he/she/it (far)</i>	ਉਹ
	<i>to me</i>
	ਮੈਨੂੰ
	<i>to you (inf.)</i>
	ਤੈਨੂੰ
	<i>to you (form.)</i>
	ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ
	<i>to he/she/it</i>
	ਇਹ ਨੂੰ, ਇਹ ਨੂੰ
	<i>to he/she/it</i>
	ਉਹ ਨੂੰ, ਉਹ ਨੂੰ
	<i>is noon</i>
	ਉਸ ਨੂੰ
	<i>us noon</i>

Interrogative pronouns			
who	ਕੋਣ	kaunh	to whom
what	ਕੀ	kee	to what

kis	ਨੂੰ	kis noon
ਕਿਹਾਨੂੰ		kihnoon

Plural

Direct		Oblique	
we	ਅਸੀਂ	aseen	to us
you	ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen	to you
they (near)	ਇਹ	ih	to them
they (far)	ਊਹ	uh	to them

Interrogative pronouns			
who	ਕੋਣ	kaunh	to whom
what	ਕੀ	kee	to what

ਕਿਹਾਨੂੰ ਨੂੰ		kihnaan noon
ਕਿਹਾਨੂੰ ਨੂੰ		kihnaan noon

The postposition **ਨੂੰ noon** is used in a number of ways. Generally, it directs an action, state or object towards the pronoun or noun after which it follows. Here are a few examples of how **ਨੂੰ noon** can be used with pronouns.

ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਥੋੜੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਹੈ	panjaabee mainoona	I know Panjabi to some extent.
ਸਾਨੂੰ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਪਸੰਦ ਹੈ	saanoona mithiaaee pasand hai	We like sweets. (literally: sweets are liked by us)
ਤੂੰ ਕਿਹਾਨੂੰ ਦੱਸਿਆ ਸੀ ?	toon kihnaan noon dassiaa see?	Whom did you tell?

There are many other postpositions which are also used with pronouns. **ਤੋਂ ton**, **ਨਾਲ naal**, **ਵਾਸਤੇ vaaste**, **ਕੋਲ kol** and **ਲਾਈ laee** are some commonly used ones which were introduced in Unit 4. The manner in which the oblique is formed with these postpositions is noticeably different from

pronouns followed by **ਨੂੰ noon**. The first and second person pronouns are changed to the appropriate possessive adjectives while the third person pronouns follow the same pattern of **ਨੂੰ noon** as already shown. Here are some examples using the postposition **ਤੋਂ ton** (*from*).

1st person

Direct	Oblique
I	ਮੈਂ main
we	ਅਸੀਂ aseen

from me	ਮੇਰੇ ਤੋਂ mere ton
from us	ਸਾਡੇ ਤੋਂ saade ton

2nd person

Direct	Oblique
you (inf.)	ਤੁੰਹੂ ਤੋਂ toon
you (form.)	ਤੁਸੀਂ tuseen

from you (inf.)	ਤੇਰੇ ਤੋਂ tere ton
from you (form.)	ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਤੋਂ tuhaade ton

3rd person

Direct	Oblique
he/she/it (singular, near)	ਇਹ ih
he/she/it (singular, far)	ਊਹ uh
they (plural, near)	ਇਹਾਂ ih
they (plural, far)	ਊਹਾਂ uh

from him/her/it	ਇਸ ਤੋਂ is ton
from him/her/it	ਊਸ ਤੋਂ us ton
from them	ਇਹਾਨਾਂ ਤੋਂ ihnaan ton
from them	ਊਹਾਨਾਂ ਤੋਂ uhnaan ton

ਮੇਰੇ ਕੋਲ ਐਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਨ	mere kol aine paise	I don't have that much money.
ਊਹਾਨਾਂ ਵਾਸਤੇ ਵੀ ਚਾਹ ਬਣਾਓ	uhnaan vaaste vee	Make tea for them too.
ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਾਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਆਵੇ ਗੇ ?	keee tuseen saade	Will you come with us?
ਅਸੀਂ ਕਪੜੇ ਇਹਾਨਾਂ ਤੋਂ ਖਰੀਦਾਂ ਗੇ	aseen kaprhe ihnaan ton khareedaan ge	We will buy the clothes from them.

Must, have to

In Panjabi, expressions of compulsion come in three forms: an intention to do something, a certainty about doing something and a strong sense of compulsion about doing something. In each of these cases, it is usually the infinitive of the verb which directs the action related to the situation. Often ਹੋਵਾ honhaa is used to give a sense of the present or past condition, depending on which tense of *to be* is used. The direct form of the pronoun is used in these cases.

ਮੈਂ ਜਾਣਾ ਹੈ main jaanhaa hai I am to go/ I intend to go

ਮੈਂ ਜਾਣਾ ਸੀ main jaanhaa see I should have gone/ I was to go/ I had to go

Strong compulsion is indicated by the use of the verb ਪੈਣਾ painhaa (*to fall*). This gives a sense of habitual compulsion and is positioned after the infinitive. Note that the infinitive behaves as the subject in many of these expressions, and therefore the form of ਪੈਣਾ painhaa generally takes the singular masculine form (in agreement with the infinitive). For example:

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਹਰ ਰੋਜ਼ ਜਾਣਾ ਪੈਂਦਾ ਹੈ mainoon har roz jaanhaa I have to go
paindaa hai every day.

Use of the verb ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa

In Panjabi, expressions such as *should/ought* and *need/want* are generally formed with the verb ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa (*to want, to need*). These expressions use the infinitive followed by ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda, which is the passive form of the verb ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa. (The passive voice will be explained in a later unit.) ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda in the sentence ਮੈਨੂੰ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ mainoon chaaheeda hai literally means *it is wanted by me*. However, the use of ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda can have two different meanings:

- should/ought
- need/want

Should, ought ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda as with all other verb formations, changes according to the subject. In the case of expressions of *should* and *ought*, pronouns followed by postpositions behave like objects (*to me, for me, with them*). Therefore, in the case of someone who has to go somewhere, the form of ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda must be in the singular masculine form in agreement with the infinitive. Similarly, if the object is feminine and/or plural, then the form of ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa, as well as the infinitive would reflect this:

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ mainoon jaanhaa chaaheeda hai I should go
ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਸੀ mainoon jaanhaa chaaheeda see I should have gone

Care must be taken to identify the object in expressions of *ought* and *should*. In our earlier example, the pronoun served as the object, however in the following examples the infinitive and the form of ਚਾਹੀਦਾ chaaheeda follow the gender and numerical nature of the *subject of obligation* which now becomes the object, in the first case tea and in the second books.

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਚਾਹ ਨਹੀਂ
ਪੀਣੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ mainoon chaah naheen I should not drink tea.
peenhee chaaheede

ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਹੋਰ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ
ਪੜ੍ਹਨੀਆਂ ਚਾਹੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ tuhaanoon hor kitaabaan You should read
parhhneeaaan more books.
chaaheedeaaan han

To want, to need Expressions of desire or necessity are also formed with ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa. However, the verb is formed according to the subject of the sentence. For example, in Dialogue 2 Jaspreet and Simran say to the taxi driver, *We want to go to Connaught Place*. This is expressed as:

ਅਸੀਂ ਕਨਾਟ ਪਲੇਸ ਜਾਣਾ aseen kanaat pales We want to go to
ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ jaanhaa chaahundeeaan Connaught Place.
haan

Notice in this example that ਅਸੀਂ aseen and ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ chaahundeeaan haan are in agreement with each other. Therefore, the subject we dictates the form of *to want*. Here are some more examples of expressions of desire and necessity:

ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ
ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੇ ਹੋ ? kee tuseen amreekaa Do you want to go
jaanhaa chaahunde ho? to America?

ਮੇਰਾ ਭਰਾ ਪੜ੍ਹਨਾ
ਚਾਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ meraa bharaa parhhnaa My brother wants
chaahundaa hai to study.

As with constructions of *should* and *ought* the oblique form of pronouns with the postposition ਨੂੰ noon are also used in expressing *need* and *want* with the passive of ਚਾਹੁਣਾ chaahunhaa. This may seem confusing but you will be able to tell from the context of the sentence whether the speaker means that they need or want something, or that they should or ought to do something.

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਇੱਕ ਕਮੀਜ਼ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ	<u>mainoon</u> ikk kameez	I need a shirt.
ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ	chaahedee hai	
ਮੈਨੂੰ ਦੋ ਕਮੀਜ਼ਾਂ ਚਾਹੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ	<u>mainoon</u> do kameezaan	I need two shirts.
ਚਾਹੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ	chaahedeeaan han	
ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਪੈਸੇ ਚਾਹੀਦੇ ਹਨ	<u>uhnaan</u> noon paise	They need money.
	chaahede han	

Infinitives in the oblique

The presence of postpositions after nouns, adjectives and pronouns has been discussed in previous units. You know by now that the forms of direct nouns, adjectives and pronouns are changed to the oblique when they are followed by a postposition. The same is true for infinitives. In the first dialogue, Mr Sandhu asks his daughters, 'How much money do you need to go to India?' In this sentence 'to go to India' is a phrase which contains an infinitive followed by a postposition:

ਭਾਰਤ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ bhaarat jaanh laee to go to India

The infinitive of the verb *to go* ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa preceeds the postposition ਲਈ laee requiring the infinitive to be in the oblique. The oblique of the infinitive is a shortened form which merely omits the vowel ending ਅਾ aa. Therefore, ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa in the oblique becomes ਜਾਨ �jaanh. The example given of ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa is that of an infinitive with a vowel-ending stem. Other verbs such as ਖਰੀਦਣਾ khareednhaa, ਲਿਖਣਾ likhnhaa and ਬੋਲਣਾ bolnhaa all have stems which end in consonants. These types of infinitives also have shortened forms which omit the ਅਾ aa ending making them ਖਰੀਦਣ ਖਹੀਦਨਾ khareedan, ਲਿਖਣ ਲਿਖਨਾ and ਬੋਲਣ ਬੋਲਨਾ bolan. Here are some examples of infinitives in the oblique and how they are formed:

ਉਹ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਪੈਸੇ ਦੇਣ ਨੂੰ	<u>uh saanoon</u> paise denh	He isn't ready [willing]
ਤਿਆਰ ਨਹੀਂ	noon <u>tiaar naheen</u>	to give us money.
ਖੁੰਮਟ ਲਈ ਸਮਾਂ	<u>ghunmanh</u> laee samaan	Time is needed for
ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ	chaahedaa hai	travelling.
ਮੈਂ ਦੋਸਤ ਨੂੰ ਮਿਲਣ	<u>main</u> dost noon milanh	I have come to meet
ਲਈ ਆਈ ਹਾਂ	laee aaee haan	a friend.

Vocative case

The vocative case is used when addressing somebody directly or as an exclamation to someone. It can be used in both formal and informal

situations. For example, in Dialogue 1, Mr Sandhu says ਧੀਓ! dheeo! which means *daughters!* Another more formal setting might be in a meeting in which you wish to address the audience: ਭੈਣਾਂ ਤੇ ਭਰਾਵੇ bhainho te bharaavo (*brothers and sisters*). The manner in which the vocative case is formed is quite similar to the plural oblique forms of nouns as shown in Unit 4, though the vocative case ends with ਏ o and not ਅਾ aa. When the vocative case is used in reference to singular people, the noun takes on the ending ਏ e for feminine people and the ending ਅਾ aa for masculine people:

ਮੁੰਡਾ!	mundia!	boy!
ਮੁੰਡਾਂ!	mundio!	boys!
ਬੱਚਿਓ!	bachchio!	children!
ਕੁੜੀਏ!	kurhee-e!	girl!
ਕੁੜੀਏ!	kurheeo!	girls!
ਦੋਸਤਾਂ!	dosto!	friends!

The ending -ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa

-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa is added to nouns and verbs to give two main senses: *the one or ones* or *about to*. The use of -ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa with nouns expresses a relationship between the noun and the object or person being referred to. You will recall in the commentary in Unit 3 that the vegetable seller was called ਸਬਜ਼ੀਵਾਲਾ sabzeervaalaa and that earlier in this unit the taxi driver was referred to as ਟੈਕਸੀਵਾਲਾ taikseevaalaa. The ending -ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa in these examples has changed the role of the noun through the following pattern:

ਸਬਜ਼ੀ	+	-ਵਾਲਾ	=	ਸਬਜ਼ੀਵਾਲਾ
sabzee		-vaalaa		sabzeevaalaa
vegetable		the one		vegetable seller
ਟੈਕਸੀ	+	-ਵਾਲਾ	=	ਟੈਕਸੀਵਾਲਾ
taiksee		-vaalaa		taikseevaalaa
taxi		the one		taxi driver

Here are some more examples of this type of use of the ending -ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa with nouns:

ਲਾਹੌਰਵਾਲੀ ਔਰਤ	laahaurvaalee aurat	the woman from Lahore
ਪਿੰਡਵਾਲਾ	pindvaalaa	villager
ਪੈਸੇਵਾਲੇ	paisevaale	wealthy people
ਸਾੜੀਵਾਲੀ	saarhheevaalee	the one wearing the sari
ਘਰਵਾਲਾ	gharvaalaa	husband

Note that like other endings or adjectives, the ending **-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa** changes according to the gender and number of the persons or objects being referred to.

The second meaning produced by the ending **-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa** is *about to* or *on the point of doing*. This is created when **-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa** is used with the oblique of the infinitive. The form resembles that of the oblique infinitive (or shortened form) used with postpositions presented earlier in this unit. Here are some examples of how this meaning is constructed:

ਉਹ ਭਾਰਤ ਜਾਣ ਵਾਲੇ ਹਨ	uh bhaarat jaanh vaale han	<i>They are about to go to India.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਚਿੱਠੀ ਲਿਖਣ ਵਾਲੀ ਸੀ	main tuhaanoon chiththee likhhanh vaalee see	<i>I was about to write you a letter.</i>
ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਆਉਣ ਵਾਲੀਆਂ ਸਨ	kurheeaan aaunh vaaleeaan san	<i>The girls were about to come.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਕਿਤਾਬ ਪੜ੍ਹਨ ਵਾਲਾ ਹਾਂ	main kitaab parhhanh vaalaa haan	<i>I am about to read the book.</i>

The ending **-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa** used with oblique infinitives can also have the same meaning as that when used with nouns such as **ਇਥੋਂ ਰਹਿਣ ਵਾਲਾ iththe rahinh vaalaa** *the one who lives here* or **ਕੰਮ ਕਰਨ ਵਾਲੇ kanm karan vaale** *the ones who work or working people*. Once you understand how to use the ending **-ਵਾਲਾ vaalaa**, you will find it a very useful tool when referring to people and objects as well as to actions that are about to happen.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. I like it!

Fondness is shown in Panjabi in a number of ways. Depending upon the degree of liking and context, fondness can be expressed through:

ਪਸੰਦ pasand means *pleasing* or *like*

ਸ਼ੌਕ shauk means *fondness* or *enjoyment*

ਲੱਗਣਾ laggnhaa means *seems* (e.g. *it seems nice/bad*)

Therefore, expressions of fondness generally require the use of **ਨੂੰ noon** in order to direct the feelings or emotions towards the person. A sentence such as *I like bananas* would translate directly into Panjabi as *Bananas are liked by me*. **ਮੈਨੂੰ ਕੇਲੇ ਪਸੰਦ ਹਨ mainoon kele pasand han**, thereby

making *bananas* the subject and *me* the object. Another way of using **ਪਸੰਦ pasand** is in combination with **ਕਰਨਾ karnaa**. The use of **ਕਰਨਾ karnaa** gives an added sense of habituality, such as *I generally like bananas* or *I always like bananas* in **ਮੈਂ ਕੇਲਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਪਸੰਦ ਕਰਦਾ ਹਾਂ main keliaan noon pasand kardaa haan**. **ਲੱਗਣਾ laggnhaa** (*to seem*) is a less specific word which requires the use of a qualifying adjective such as good, bad, tasty or ugly, in order to express how something seems. If you were to say *this food is good* one way in Panjabi to express this would be **ਇਹ ਖਾਣਾ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਚੰਗਾ ਲੱਗਦਾ ਹੈ ih khaanhaa mainoon changaa laggdaa hai** (literally, *this food seems good to me*). Here are a few more examples:

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵਜਾਉਣ ਦਾ ਸੌਕ ਹੈ	mainoon sitaar vajaauṇh daa shauk hai	<i>I enjoy playing the sitar.</i>
ਅਸੀਂ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ (ਨੂੰ) ਪਸੰਦ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਾਂ	aseen mithiaee noon pasand karde haan	<i>We like sweets.</i>
ਤਸਵੀਰਾਂ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਚੰਗੀਆਂ ਲੱਗਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ	tasveeraan uhnaan noon changeeaan laggdeeaan han	<i>They like the pictures.</i>

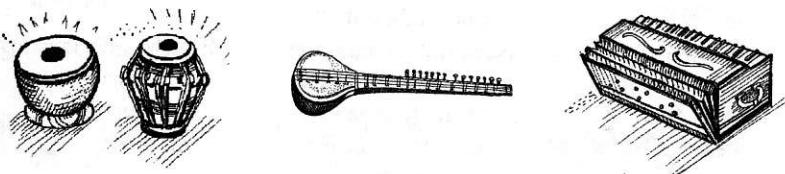
2. Usefulness of Panjabi in South Asia

Despite the fact that Hindi and Urdu are the national languages of India and Pakistan respectively, in practice once you leave the urban centres regional languages come to the fore. Panjabi has a unique position in the languages of North India and Pakistan, in that it has a large usage in the urban centres. In Lahore and throughout much of Pakistan, Panjabi is the language of the people and is spoken widely and understood almost universally. Furthermore, in Delhi many taxi drivers, rickshaw **vaalaas** and bus drivers tend to speak Panjabi (sometimes a few words may save the passenger from being overcharged!).

Taxi drivers are notorious in the sub-continent for overcharging and haggling with customers. Even though many main tourist resorts and public transport centres such as railway stations and airports now operate a prepayment system, there are still many occasions where unsuspecting travellers will be caught unaware. This has to be accepted as one of the many facets of travel to the sub-continent and should not cause frustration or anguish. On a more positive front, the fun of haggling, as you will see in the next unit, is a must when shopping.

3. Music in Panjab

Panjab is well known for folk music (as we shall see in Unit 16), however, there is a long tradition of classical music in Panjab. The world-renowned tabla player, Zakheer Hussain comes from the tradition of the Panjabi gharana, which reflects a particular type of musical style and a particular rhythmic form known as ਕੈਰਵਾ kairvaa, which is an eight-beat cycle. One other musical form which crosses over the classical and popular is the Qawaali, made popular internationally by the late Nusrat Fateh Ali Khan. The Panjabi Qawaals sung by Khan are some of the most popular tunes throughout Panjab, and the elegant, poetic language is quite easy to understand.



ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following excercises.

1. Fill in the blanks

- ਮੈਨੂੰ ਕਿਤਾਬ _____ ਹੈ। mainoon kitaab _____ hai. *I want a book.*
- ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜਾਣ _____ ਹੈ। mainoon jaanhaa _____ hai. *I should go.*
- ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸਿਤਾਰ _____ ਦਾ ਸੋਕ ਹੈ। mainoon sitaar _____ daa shauk hai.

I like playing the sitar.

2. Translation

Say the following English sentences in Panjabi.

- What does he want?
- Daughters! What do you want?
- Whom did you tell?
- Should we go?

3. Use of vaalaa

From the following equations work out what the words using the ending -ਵਾਲਾ are.

a) + ਵਾਲਾ = [husband]

b) + ਵਾਲਾ = [taxi driver]

c) + ਵਾਲਾ = [vegetable vendor]

4. Listening comprehension

You are having a conversation with a taxi driver. Listen to the recording on the audio tape and then answer the following questions.

How many passengers?

Where are you travelling to?

How much is the fare?

How far is the hotel?

How much luggage?

Do you accept the taxi ride?

9 | ਸਾਡਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ ਹੈ ! **saadaa kaprhaa sabh ton vadheea hai!** *Our cloth is the best!*

In this unit you will learn:

- how to compare things
- how to talk about your health
- how to express actions which you can and cannot do
- how to express actions which have already occurred

1 Our cloth is the best!

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਸਾਡਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ ਹੈ !

gall baat 1 saadaa kaprhaa sabh ton vadheea hai!

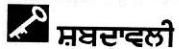
Jaspreet and Simran have arrived in Delhi and are shopping in Karol Bagh, a popular place in Delhi to buy ready-made clothing as well as unstitched cloth. They are just entering a material shop where the shopkeeper greets them.

ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਅੰਦਰ ਆਓ, ਭੈਣ ਜੀ। ਸਾਰੀ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਵਿਚ ਸਾਡਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ ਹੈ। andar aao, bhaih jee. saaree dillee vich saadaa kaprhaa sabh ton vadheea hai!
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ Jaspreet	ਸਾਨੂੰ ਛਪਾਈਵਲਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ ਜਿਸ ਦਾ ਅੱਜ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਰਵਾਜ਼ ਹੈ। saanoon chapaaeevaalaa kaprhaa chaheedaa hai jis daa ajj kallh ravaaj hai.
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਫਿਕਰ ਨਾ ਕਰੋ ! ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਉਹ ਕਪੜਾ ਦਿਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ ਜਿਹੜਾ ਵਧੇਰੇ ਹੰਦਣਸਾਰ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵੱਧ ਵਿਕਦਾ ਹੈ। fikar naa karo! main tuhaanoon uh kaprhaa dikhaa rihaa haan jihraa vadhdh vikdaa hai.

(The shopkeeper shows the girls some cloth pieces)

ਸਿਮਰਨ Simran	ਮੈਨੂੰ ਇਸ ਕਪੜੇ ਦਾ ਰੰਗ ਪਸੰਦ ਹੈ ਪਰ ਕਪੜਾ ਇਸ ਤੋਂ ਮੋਟਾ ਹੋਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ। mainoon is kaprhe daa rang pasand hai par kaprhaa is ton motaa honhaa chaaheedaa hai.
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਇਸ ਤੋਂ ਪਤਲਾ ਵੀ ਹੈ ਤੇ ਮੋਟਾ ਵੀ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਛਾਪੇ ਦੀ ਚੋਣ ਕਰੋ। saade kol is ton patlaa vee hai te motaa vee. tuseen chaape dee chonh karo.
ਸਿਮਰਨ Simran	ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ, ਤੈਨੂੰ ਕਿਹੜਾ ਵਧੇਰੇ ਚੰਗਾ ਲੱਗਦਾ ਹੈ, ਲਾਲ ਜਾਂ ਨੀਲਾ ? jaspreet, tainoon kihrhaa vadhere changaa laggdaa hai, laal jaan neelaa?
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ Jaspreet	ਨੀਲਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਲਾਲ ਕਪੜੇ ਤੋਂ ਪਤਲਾ ਹੈ, ਪਰ ਫਿਕੇ ਰੰਗ ਵਾਲਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਸੁਹਲਾ ਹੈ। neelaa kaprhaa laal kaprhe ton patlaa hai, par phikke rang vaala sabh ton suhnhaa hai.
ਸਿਮਰਨ Simran	ਇਹ ਕਪੜਾ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਦਾ ਮੀਟਰ ਹੈ ? ih kaprhaa kinne daa meetar hai?
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਇੱਕ ਸੌ ਵੀਹ ਰੂਪਏ ਦਾ ਮੀਟਰ। ikk sau veeh rupae daa meetar.
ਸਿਮਰਨ Simran	ਇਹ ਕੀਮਤ ਬਹੁਤ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਹੈ। ਆਸੀਂ ਹੋਰ ਵੀ ਕਈ ਦੁਕਾਨਾਂ ਤੇ ਜਾ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ ਅਤੇ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਮੁਕਾਬਲੇ ਵਿਚ ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਕੀਮਤਾਂ ਬਹੁਤ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਹਨ। ih keemat bahut ziaadaa hai. aseen hor vee kaee dukaanaan te jaa chukeean haan ate uhnaan de mukaable vich tuhaadeeaan keemaataan bahut ziaadaa han.
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ Shopkeeper	ਮੈਨੂੰ ਆਫਸੋਸ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਮੈਂ ਕੀਮਤ ਹੋਰ ਘੱਟ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰ ਸਕਦਾ। mainoon afsos hai ki main keemat hor ghatt naheen kar sakdaa.
Shopkeeper Jaspreet Shopkeeper	Come in, sisters! Our cloth is the best in all of Delhi! We want printed cloth that's in fashion these days. Don't worry. What I'm showing you is cloth that is durable and sells a lot.
Simran	I like the colour, but the material should be thicker than this.
Shopkeeper	We have thinner and also thicker than this. Choose whatever print you like.
Simran Jaspreet	Jaspreet, which do you like better, red or blue? The blue is thinner than the red, but the light-coloured one is the nicest.

Simran How much is this cloth per metre?
Shopkeeper One hundred and twenty rupees per metre.
Simran The price is too high. We've been to several other shops and in comparison with them, your prices are very high.
Shopkeeper I'm sorry but (that) I can't lower the price any more.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ	dukaandaar	shopkeeper (m.)
ਕਪੜਾ	kaprhaa	cloth (m.)
ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ	sabh ton vadheea	the best
ਛਪਾਈਵਾਲਾ	chapaaeevaala	the printed one (m.)
ਜਿਸ	jis	which (oblique)
ਰਵਾਜ਼	ravaaj	fashion (m.)
ਅੱਜ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ	ajj kallh	these days
ਦਿਖਉਣਾ	dikhaaunhaa	to show
ਜਿਹੜਾ	jihraa	that, which
ਹੰਦਹਸਾਰ	handhanhsaar	durable, hardwearing
ਚਲਣਾ	chalnhaa	to go
ਵਿਕਣਾ	viknhaa	to be sold
ਰੰਗ	rang	colour (m.)
ਮੌਟਾ	motaa	fat, thick (v.)
ਪਤਲਾ	patlaa	thin (v.)
ਛਪੇ	chaape	print (m.)
ਚੋਣ	chonh	choice, selection (f.)
ਕਿਹੜਾ	kihrhaa	which
ਵਧੇਰੇ	vadhere	more
ਲਾਲ	laal	red
ਨੀਲਾ	neelaa	blue (v.)
ਜਾਂ	jaan	or
ਫਿਕਾ	phikkaa	light, pale (v.)
ਸੁਹਣਾ	suhnhaa	nice, pretty (v.)
ਕਿੰਨੇ ਦਾ ਮੀਟਰ ?	kinne daa meetar?	how much per metre?
ਇੱਕ ਸੌ ਵੀਹ	ikk sau veeh	one hundred and twenty
ਕੀਮਤ	keemat	price (f.)
ਬਹੁਤ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ	bahut ziaadaa	far too much
ਕਈ	kae	several
ਚੁਕਣਾ	chuknhaa	to be settled, finished

ਜਾ ਚੁਕਣਾ	jaa chuknhaa	have (already) been
ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ	mukaablaa	competition
ਵੱਧ	vadhdh	high
ਘੱਟ	ghatt	less, lower
ਸਕਣਾ	saknhaa	can, to be able to

ਅਡਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. In the cloth shop

You are in a cloth shop telling the sales person exactly what you are looking for. Express the following in Panjabi:

- I want light-coloured cloth.
- I want material that is thick and also durable.
- The print should be in fashion.
- The price should not be too high.

2. Complete the table

ਵਧੀਆ		
		better
	keemat	
ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ		
	sabh ton vadheea	

2 What's the problem?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਕੀ ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ ਹੈ ?

gall baat 2 kee takleef hai?

On their way back from the market place in Delhi, Simran and Jaspreet had some snacks at a roadside restaurant, commonly known as a 'dhaba'. On their way back to their hotel Simran begins to feel ill and has gone to visit the doctor.

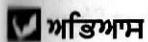
ਡਾਕਟਰ	ਬੇਟੀ, ਕੀ ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ ਹੈ ?
daaktar	beteet, kee <u>takleef</u> hai?
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਮੇਰੀ ਤਬੀਅਤ ਖਰਾਬ ਹੈ।
simran	meree <u>tabbeeat</u> <u>kharab</u> hai.
ਡਾਕਟਰ	ਕੀ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਬੁਖਾਰ ਹੈ ?
daaktar	kee <u>tainoon</u> <u>bukhaar</u> hai?
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਹਾਂ ਜੀ। ਮੈਨੂੰ ਠੰਡ ਲੱਗ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ, ਪੇਟ ਵਿਚ ਦਰਦ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰੀ ਵੀ ਹੈ।
simran	haan jee. mainoon <u>thand</u> lagg rahee hai, pet vich <u>dard</u> hai ate mainoon kamzoree vee hai.
ਡਾਕਟਰ	ਬਿਮਾਰ ਹੋਣ ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਤੂੰ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਖਾਧਾ ਸੀ ?
daaktar	bimaar honh <u>ton</u> pahile <u>toon</u> kee kujh khaadhaa see?
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਮੈਨੂੰ ਯਾਦ ਨਹੀਂ ਪਰ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਇੱਥੋਂ ਦੀਆਂ ਛੱਲੀਆਂ ਬਹੁਤ ਪਸੰਦ ਹਨ।
simran	mainoon <u>yaad</u> naheen par mainoon <u>iththon</u> <u>deeaan</u> <u>challeeaan</u> bahut pasand han.
ਡਾਕਟਰ	ਹੁਣ ਮੈਂ ਸਮਝਿਆ। ਜਿਹੜੇ ਲੋਕ ਬਾਹਰੋਂ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ, ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਦੇਸੀ ਖਾਣਾ ਹਜ਼ਮ ਨਹੀਂ ਹੁੰਦਾ। ਇਹ ਲਵੇ ਦਵਾਈ, ਅਰਾਮ ਕਰੋ ਤੇ ਛੱਲੀਆਂ ਤੋਂ ਢੂਰ ਰਵੇ !
daaktar	hunh main samajhiaa. jahrhe lok baahron aaunde han, uhnaan <u>noon</u> desee khaanhaa hazam naheen <u>hundaa</u> . ih lavo <u>davaaee</u> , araam karo, te <u>challeeaan</u> <u>ton</u> <u>door</u> ravo!
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਧੰਨਵਾਦ।
simran	<u>dhanvnaa</u> .
Doctor	Dear (daughter), what's the problem?
Simran	I'm not feeling well (literally: my health is bad).
Doctor	Do you have a fever?
Simran	Yes. I feel cold, I have a stomach ache and I'm also weak.
Doctor	Before falling ill, what did you eat?
Simran	I don't remember, but I like the corn on the cob here a lot.
Doctor	Now I understand. People who come from abroad can't digest the food here. Take this medicine, rest, and stay away from corn on the cob!
Simran	Thank you.

**ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ****shabdaavalee****Vocabulary**

ਤਕਲੀਫ਼	<u>takleef</u>	trouble, irritation, bother (f.)
ਤਬੀਅਤ	<u>tabbeeat</u>	state of health, condition (f.)
ਬੁਖਾਰ	<u>bukhaar</u>	fever/temperature (m.)

OUR CLOTH IS THE BEST!

ਥੰਡ	<u>thand</u>	cold (f.)
ਲੱਗਣਾ	<u>laggnhaa</u>	to feel
ਪੇਟ	<u>pet</u>	stomach, belly (m.)
ਦਰਦ	<u>dard</u>	pain, hurt (f.)
ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰੀ	<u>kamzoree</u>	weakness (f.)
ਬਿਮਾਰ	<u>bimaar</u>	ill, sick
ਬਿਮਾਰ ਹੋਣ	<u>bimaar honh</u>	before falling ill
ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ	<u>ton</u> pahile	
ਯਾਦ	<u>yaad</u>	memory, remember (f.)
ਛੱਲੀ	<u>challee</u>	corn on the cob (f.)
ਸਮਝਣਾ	<u>samajhnhaa</u>	to understand/ comprehend
ਬਾਹਰੋਂ	<u>baahron</u>	from outside/ from abroad
ਦੇਸੀ	<u>desi</u>	Indian, Panjabi, home
ਹਜ਼ਮ	<u>hazam</u>	digest
ਢੂਰ	<u>door</u>	far/away
ਅਰਾਮ	<u>araam</u>	rest (m.)
ਦਵਾਈ	<u>davaaee</u>	medicine (f.)

**ਅਭਿਆਸ****abhiaas****Exercises**

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Write in the correct word order

- a. ਕੀ ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ ਕੀ ? hai takleef kee?
- b. ਕੀ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਕੀ ਬੁਖਾਰ ? hai tainoon kee bukhaar?
- c. ਸਮਝਿਆ ਹੁਣ ਮੈਂ samajhiaa hunh main

2. Fill in the blanks

Fill in the blanks with the correct terms from the dialogue. The English has been given in brackets, although not necessarily in the correct order.

You: ਮੇਰੀ _____ ਖਰਾਬ ਹੈ। (health)

Dr: ਮੈਰੀ _____ kharab hai.

Dr: ਕੀ _____ ਹੈ ? (problem)

keee _____ hai ?

You: ਮੇਰੇ ____ ਵਿਚ ____ ਹੈ ਤੇ ਮੌਨੂੰ ____ ਵੀ ਹੈ।
(pain, fever, stomach)

Dr: mere ____ vich ____ hai ate mainoon ____ vee hai.
ਤੈਨੂੰ ____ ਹੈ ਤੇ ____ ਲੱਗ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ ? (fever, cold)
tainoon ____ hai te ____ lagg rahee hai ?

You: ਹਾਂ ਜੀ haan jee

Dr: ਇਹ ____ ਲਵੋ ਤੇ ____ ਕਰੋ। (rest, medicine)
ih ____ lavo te ____ karo.

ਭੋਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points

Comparison of adjectives

When people or things are compared in Panjabi in terms of quality, size, number and price, there are no direct translations of the English expressions ‘good better best’ or ‘big bigger biggest’. Instead the postpositions **ਨਾਲੋਂ naalon** (than) and **ਤੋਂ ton** (from) are commonly used to express comparison such as ‘more ____’ or ‘____ than’. For example:

ਇਸ ਤੋਂ/ ਨਾਲੋਂ ਮੇਟਾ is **ton/ naalon motaa** thicker than this

ਉਸ ਤੋਂ/ ਨਾਲੋਂ ਪਤਲਾ us **ton/ naalon patlaa** thinner than that

ਰਾਮ ਸ਼ਾਮ ਤੋਂ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ **raam shaam ton lanbaa hai** Ram is taller than Sham.

ਵਧੇਰੇ **vadhere** and **ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ziaadaa**, which mean *much* or *more* are also used when making comparisons, especially when the object or objects being referred to are absent. The literal translations in Panjabi of *better* **ਚੰਗੇਰਾ changeraa** and *taller/longer* **ਲੰਬੇਰਾ lanberaa** are also occasionally used in a similar manner. Note in the following examples how adjectives such as *tall* are changed to comparisons such as *taller*:

ਰਾਮ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ	raam lanbaa hai	<i>Ram is tall.</i>
ਰਾਮ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ	raam ziaadaa lanbaa hai	<i>Ram is taller.</i>
ਰਾਮ ਵਧੇਰੇ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ	raam vadhere lanbaa hai	<i>Ram is taller.</i>
ਇਹ ਕਪੜਾ ਚੰਗਾ ਹੈ	ih kaprhaa changaa hai	<i>this cloth is good</i>
ਇਹ ਕਪੜਾ ਚੰਗੇਰਾ ਹੈ	ih kaprhaa changeraa hai	<i>this cloth is better</i>
ਉਹ ਕਮਰਾ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ	uh kamraa lanbaa hai	<i>that room is long</i>
ਉਹ ਕਮਰਾ ਲੰਬੇਰਾ ਹੈ	uh kamraa lanberaa hai	<i>that room is longer</i>

In English the superlative degree is generally expressed with the ending *-est*, such as *tallest, biggest* and *nicest*. In Panjabi the superlative degree uses the words **ਸਭ sabh**, **ਸਭਨਾਂ sabhnaan**, and **ਸਾਰੇ saare** which mean *all*

or *whole* with the postpositions **ਨਾਲੋਂ naalon** and **ਤੋਂ ton**, to give the overall sense *out of all* or *of all*.

The superlative ‘*the best*’ in Panjabi would literally translate as *out of all the best* in English:

ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗਾ ਕਪੜਾ sabh ton changaa kaprhaa the best cloth

To say that something is even better or even taller, **ਹੋਰ ਵੀ hor vee**, meaning *more* and *also*, is used. Here are some examples of a variety of different uses of comparison and superlative degrees:

ਉਹ ਕੁੜੀ ਸਭ ਨਾਲੋਂ

ਛੋਟੀ ਹੈ

ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਸਾਰੇ ਭਰਾਵਾਂ

ਨਾਲੋਂ ਲੰਬਾ ਹੈ

ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦਾ ਖਾਣਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ

ਸੁਆਦ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ

ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦਾ ਖਾਣਾ ਹੋਰ

ਵੀ ਸੁਆਦ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ

uh kurhee sabh

naalon chotee hai

ramesh saare bharaavaan

naalon lanbaa hai

uhnaan daa khaanhaa sabh

ton suaad hundaa hai

uhnaan daa khaanhaa hor

vee suaad hundaa hai

This girl is the smallest.

Ramesh is the tallest of the brothers.

Their food is the tastiest.

Their food is even tastier.

ਸਕਣ saknhaa, ‘can and can’t’

You will recall in the first dialogue that during the bargaining over the price of the cloth, the shopkeeper said to Simran and Jaspreet:

ਮੈਂ ਕੀਮਤ ਹੋਰ ਘੱਟ ਨਹੀਂ main keemat hor ghatt
ਕਰ ਸਕਦਾ naheen kar sakda

I can't lower the price any further.

He expressed his inability (or unwillingness!) to lower the price by saying *I can't*. In Panjabi **ਸਕਣ saknhaa** is used in combination with the stem of the verb portraying the action which can or cannot be done. In this example, the shopkeeper is saying that he can't (i.e. is not able to) lower the price. Therefore, the stem of **ਘੱਟਣਾ ghatnhaa** (to decrease, to lower) is used with the negative **ਨਹੀਂ naheen** to give the expression *can't lower*. Alternatively, if he had wanted to say *I can lower the price*, the negative **ਨਹੀਂ naheen** would simply have been omitted. The form of **ਸਕਣ saknhaa** is always in agreement with the subject. Here are some more examples to illustrate how this construction is formed:

ਆਸੋਂ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲ
ਸਕਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ

aseen panjaabee bol
sakdeeaan haan

We can speak Panjabi.

ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਨੂੰ	kee tuseen kallh	Will you be able to
ਆ ਸਕੋ ਗੇ ?	noon aa sako ge?	come tomorrow?
ਮੈਂ ਗਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਸਕਦੀ	main gaa naheen	I cannot sing.

You should remember that **ਸਕਣਾ saknhaa** never stands on its own and therefore always requires the stem, even when giving a reply to a question:

Question -	ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਨੂੰ	kee tuseen kallh	Can you come
	ਆ ਸਕਦੇ ਹੋ ?	noon aa sakde ho?	tomorrow?
Reply -	ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਮੈਂ ਆ	haan jee, main aa	Yes, I can (come).

ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa, 'already completed'

The stem of a verb followed by **ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa** means *to have already done* or *to have finished doing*. This type of construction with **ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa** is formed in a fashion similar to that of **ਸਕਣਾ saknhaa** as just described. **ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa** also cannot stand alone and requires a preceding stem to indicate the action that has already occurred.

ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ ਹਾਂ	main khaa chukaa haan	I have (already) eaten.
ਜਸਬੀਰ ਜਾ ਚੁਕਾ ਸੀ	jasbeer jaa chukaa see	Jasbir had (already) gone.
ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਸਾਰੀਆਂ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ	kurheeaan saareeaan	The girls have (already)
ਪੜ੍ਹ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਹਨ	kitaabaan parhh	read all of the books.
	chukeeaan han	
ਅਸੀਂ ਉਥੋਂ ਜਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹਾਂ	aseen uththe jaa chuke haan	We have (already) been there.

The relative pronouns ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa and ਜੋ jo

The English relative pronouns *that* and *which* are used to form relative clauses following a pattern which relates the relative pronouns back to the subject, such as *The woman who came today teaches Urdu*. In Panjabi this sentence would be constructed in a rather different manner: **That woman who came today, she teaches Urdu**. In this example, **that** is the relative pronoun and **she** is the correlative pronoun. Another example of an English relative clause translated into Panjabi would be: *Go to the shop which (that) is closest*. In Panjabi this sentence would be expressed as: **Which shop is closest, go to that one**. In this example, **which** is the relative pronoun and **that one** is the correlative pronoun.

In Panjabi, the relative pronoun and adjective **ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa** is used to represent words such as *that*, *which*, *those*, *he*, *she* and *who* and changes according to the gender and number of the objects being referred to. The relative pronoun **ਜੋ jo** means whatever or whoever and is used when referring to more abstract people and things. Often, the presence of the relative pronoun in the English translation is simply understood. Here are some examples of the ways in which relative clauses are formed with **ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa** and **ਜੋ jo**:

ਜੋ ਕੁਝ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀਤਾ ਹੈ	jo kujh tuseen keetaa hai,	Whatever you've done
ਮੈਨੂੰ ਠੀਕ ਲੱਗਦਾ ਹੈ	mainoon theek laggdaa hai	looks fine to me.
ਜਿਹੜੇ ਲੋਕ ਬਾਹਰੋਂ	jihre lok baahron aaunde	[Those] people who
ਅਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ, ਉਹਨਾਂ	han, uhnaan noon	come from abroad
ਨਹੀਂ ਹੁੰਦਾ	khaanhaa hazam naheen	can't digest the food.
ਜਿਹੜਾ ਆਦਮੀ ਅੱਜ	jihraa aadmee ajj aaiaa	That man who came
ਆਇਆ ਸੀ, ਉਹ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ	see, uh kallh naheen	today will not be able
ਨਹੀਂ ਆ ਸਕੇਗਾ	aa sakegaa	to come tomorrow.

Like other adjectives and pronouns in Panjabi, relative pronouns change their form in the oblique. In the singular **ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa** takes the oblique form **ਜਿਸ jis** and in the plural it becomes **ਜਿਹਨਾਂ jihnaan** followed by the appropriate postposition. Here are some examples of the oblique forms of the relative pronoun **ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa**:

ਅਸੀਂ ਜਿਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਘਰ	aseen jinnaan de ghar	(The people) whose house we went to
ਗਏ ਸੀ, ਉਹ ਰਾਵਲਪਿੰਡੀ	ge see, uh raavalpindie	are from Rawalpindi.
ਦੇ ਹਨ	de han	
ਜਿਸ ਜਨਾਨੀ ਨੂੰ	jis janaanee noon	Ask the lady who
ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਹੈ,	panjaabee aaundee hai,	knows Panjabi.
ਉਹ ਨੂੰ ਪੁੱਛੋ	uh noon puchcho	
ਜਿਸ ਨੂੰ ਪਤਾ ਸੀ	jis noon pataa see	He [who knew] was
ਉਹ ਦਾ ਕਸੂਰ ਹੈ	uh daa kasoor hai	aware; it's his fault.

More uses of ਨੂੰ noon

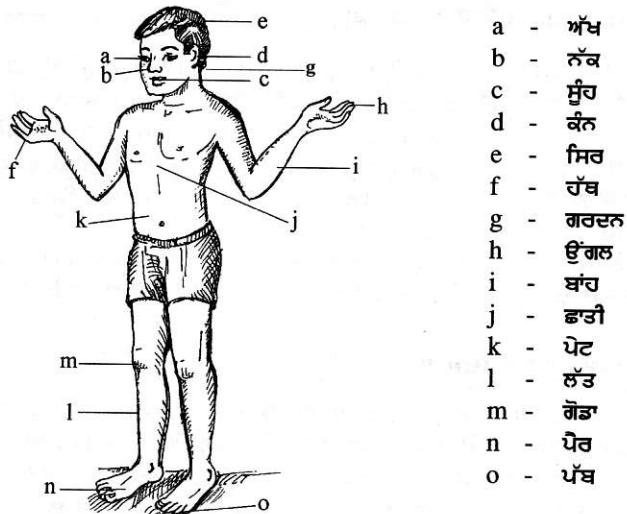
By now you should be beginning to feel acquainted with the significance of postpositions in Panjabi. In Unit 4 simple postpositions were introduced as they affect nouns and adjectives in the oblique. In Unit 8 the two sisters Simran and Jaspreet illustrated in the dialogues some further

uses of the postposition **ਨੂੰ noon** in expressing likes and dislikes, want, need, should and ought. In this unit more uses of **ਨੂੰ noon** have already been exemplified in the second dialogue, in which Simran and the doctor discuss health conditions. **ਨੂੰ noon** literally means *to* and directs the condition or state towards the person or pronoun it governs. It is used in a number of different senses ranging from awareness and health to feelings. Therefore, when the doctor asks Simran ਕੀ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਬੁਖਾਰ ਹੈ ? **kee tainoon bukhaar hai?** he is literally asking *Is there a fever to you?* Here are some more examples of how **ਨੂੰ noon** can be used in this sense:

ਮੈਨੂੰ ਬੁਖਾਰ ਹੈ	mainoon bukhaar hai	<i>I have a fever.</i>
ਸਾਨੂੰ ਠੰਡੇ ਲੱਗ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ	saanoon thand lagg rahee hai	<i>We are feeling cold.</i>
ਮੈਨੂੰ ਅਫਸੋਸ ਹੈ	mainoon afsos hai	<i>I am sorry.</i>
ਉਹ ਨੂੰ ਉਮੀਦ ਹੈ	uh noon umeed hai	<i>He/she hopes.</i>
ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਪਤਾ ਨਹੀਂ	uhnaan noon pataa naheen	<i>They do not know.</i>
ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜ਼ਿਕਰ ਹੈ	mainoon zukaam hai	<i>I have a cold.</i>
ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਕੋਈ ਪਤਾ ਹੈ ਕਿ	tuaanooon koe pataa hai	<i>Do you have any idea where Iqbal is?</i>
ਇਕਬਾਲ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਹੈ ?	ki ikbaal kiththe hai?	
ਸਾਨੂੰ ਬਹੁਤ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਹੈ	sanoon bahut khushee hai	<i>We are very happy.</i>

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. Parts of the body



9 OUR CLOTH IS THE BEST!

2. Clothes people wear

There are various forms of dress worn by Panjabis. Perhaps the most popular form is the **salwaar kameez** (**shalwaar kameez** in West Panjab). This form of dress is now ubiquitous in almost all of South Asia, but it is most popular in Pakistan Panjab, where both men and women wear it. Traditionally, women in rural Panjab would wear a flowing skirt – **ghagra** – and a blouse, although this is a rare sight in contemporary Panjab. Women may wear a sari for special occasions and Christian women often wear dresses as a way of distinguishing themselves. Male dress was traditionally a turban with a flowing top shirt and a wrap called a **lungi** or **dhoti** around the legs. However, western dress is increasingly popular. The following pictures illustrate the various forms of dress.



✓ ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Word search

The following words are hidden in the 'word search' boxes below. In the first box they are hidden horizontally and in the second they are hidden vertically.

ਬੁਖਾਰ, ਡੈਣਜ਼ੀ, ਕਪੜਾ, ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ, ਬਿਮਾਰ, ਡਾਪੇ, ਦਰਦ, ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰੀ, ਕੀਮਤ, ਹੰਚਲਸਰ

ਭੈ	ਣ	ਜੀ	ਜਾ	ਭ
ਜੋ	ਕ	ਪ	ੜਾ	ਕੀ
ਦੂ	ਕਾ	ਨ	ਦਾ	ਰ
ਉ	ਉ	ਛਾ	ਪੇ	ਸ
ਤਾ	ਕੀ	ਮ	ਤ	ਤ

ਨ	ਮੇ	ਰ	ਕ	ਹੰ
ਮਾ	ਬਿ	ਬੁ	ਮ	ਦ
ਦ	ਮਾ	.ਖਾ	ਜੋ	ਣ
ਰ	ਰ	ਰ	ਰੀ	ਸਾ
ਦ	ਦ	ਰੀ	ਗੋ	ਰ

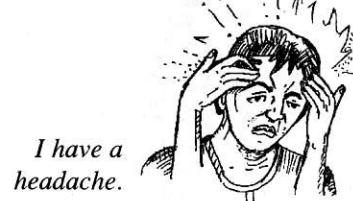
2. Talking to the doctor

Look at the pictures and tell how each person would respond in Panjabi to the doctor's question: ਕੀ ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ ਹੈ ? What's the problem?

a. *I feel cold.*



b.



I have a headache.

c. *I have a stomach ache.*



d.



I have a fever.

9 OUR CLOTH IS THE BEST!

3. Write sentences in Panjabi

Express the following sentences in Panjabi using either ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa or ਸਕਣਾ saknhaa:

- a) I can't come tomorrow.
- b) Can you speak Panjabi?
- c) We've already been there.
- d) They have already eaten.

4. Relative pronouns

Insert the correct forms of the relative pronouns ਜੋ jo, ਜਿਹੜਾ jihraa and ਜਿਸ jis:

- a) _____ ਆਦਮੀ ਅੱਜ ਪਾਕਿਸਤਾਨ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ, ਉਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਚਾਚਾ ਹੈ।

aadmee ajj paakistaan giao hai, uh meraa chaachaa hai.
The man who went to Pakistan today is my uncle.
- b) _____ ਨੂੰ ਪਤਾ ਹੈ, ਉਹ ਨੂੰ ਪੁੱਛੋ।

noon pataa hai, uh noon puchcho.
Ask the person who knows.
- c) _____ ਲੋਕ ਪਿੰਡ ਵਿਚ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਪਸੰਦ ਨਹੀਂ।

lok pind vich rahinde han uhnaan noon
shahir pasand naheen.
People who live in the village don't like the city.
- d) _____ ਕੁਝ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੇ ਹੋ ਉਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਲਈ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ।

kujh tuseen chaahunde ho uh mere laee theek hai.
Whatever you want is fine with me.

10 | ਇੱਕ ਦਿਨ ਪਿੰਡ ਵਿਚ ikk din pind vich

A day in the village

In this unit you will learn:

- about Panjabi village life
- how to talk about things you've done and seen

• What else did you buy?

 ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ ਤੂੰ ਹੋਰ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਖਰੀਦਿਆ ?

gall baat toon hor kee kujh khareediaa?

Jaspreet and Simran have arrived at their relatives' house in Jalandhar after their tour of Delhi. Their aunt is asking them about their stay in Delhi.

ਚਾਚੀ ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਦੀ ਸੈਰ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਹੀ ?
Aunt (chaachee) tuhaadee dillee dee sair kiven rahee?

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਹਣੀ ਰਹੀ। ਇੱਕ ਦਿਨ ਮੈਂ ਪੁਰਾਣੀ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਵਿਚ ਘੁੰਮੀ। ਲਾਲ ਕਿਲਾ ਅਤੇ ਸੀਸ ਗੰਜ ਗੁਰਦਵਾਰਾ ਦੇਖਿਆ। ਉਹ ਦਿਨ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗਾ ਗੁਜ਼ਰਿਆ। ਮੈਂ ਚਾਂਦਨੀ ਚੌਕ ਬਜ਼ਾਰ ਤੋਂ ਸਿਤਾਰ ਵੀ ਖਰੀਦੀ।
Jaspreet bahut suhnhee rahee. ikk din main puraanhee dillee vich ghunmee. laal kilhaa ate sees ganj gurdavaaraa dekhiaa. uh din sabh ton changaa guzriaa. main chaandnee chaunek bazaar ton sitaar vee khareedee.

ਚਾਚੀ ਤੂੰ ਹੋਰ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਖਰੀਦਿਆ ?
Aunt toon hor kee kujh khareediaa?
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਚਾਚੀ ਜੀ, ਮੈਂ ਕਪੜੇ ਖਰੀਦੇ ਤੇ ਜੁੱਤੀ ਵੀ ਖਰੀਦੀ।
Jaspreet chaachee jee, main kaprhe khareede te juttee vee khareedee.
ਚਾਚੀ ਸਿਮਰਨ, ਤੂੰ ਕੀ ਕੀਤਾ ?
Aunt simran, toon kee keetaa?

ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਮੈਂ ਹਰ ਕਿਸਮ ਦੇ ਖਾਣੇ ਖਾਏ, ਪਰ ਮੈਂ ਬਿਮਾਰ ਹੋ ਗਈ ਸੀ। ਫਿਰ ਮੈਂ ਡਕਟਰ ਕੋਲ ਗਈ ਅਤੇ ਉਸ ਨੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਦਵਾਈ ਦਿੱਤੀ।
Simran	main har kisam de khaanhe khaadhe par main bimaar ho gaee see. phir main daaktar kol gaeet ate us ne mainoon davaaee dittee.
ਚਾਚੀ	ਉਮੀਦ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਹੁਣ ਤੂੰ ਠੀਕ ਹੋਂ ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ ਆਸੀਂ ਅੱਜ ਸਕੋਂ ਦਾ ਸਾਗ ਤੇ ਮੱਕੀ ਦੀ ਰੋਟੀ ਬਣਾਈ ਹੈ। ਇਹ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦੀ ਖਾਸ ਸੁਗਤ ਹੈ !
Aunt	umeed hai ki hunh toon theek hain kion ki aseen ajj sar-h-on daa saag te makkee dee rotee banhaaee hai. ih panjaab dee khaas sugaat hai!
Aunt	<i>How was your tour of Delhi?</i>
Jaspreet	<i>It was very nice. One day I went around Old Delhi. I saw the Red Fort and Sees Ganj Gurdwara. That was the best day I had. I also bought a sitar from Chandni Chowk market.</i>
Aunt	<i>What else did you buy?</i>
Jaspreet	<i>Aunty Ji, I bought clothes and shoes too!</i>
Aunt	<i>Simran, what did you do?</i>
Simran	<i>I ate every type of food, but I fell ill. Then I went to the doctor and he gave me some medicine.</i>
Aunt	<i>I hope you're fine now since today we've made sarhon daa saag and makkee dee rotee. This is a speciality of Panjab!</i>



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਸੈਰ	sair	<i>tour, trip (f.)</i>
ਸੁਹਣੀ	suhnhee	<i>nice, pretty (v.)</i>
ਪੁਰਾਣੀ	puraanhee	<i>old (v.)</i>
ਪੁਰਾਣੀ ਦਿੱਲੀ	puraanhee dillee	<i>Old Delhi (f.)</i>
ਕਿਲਾ	kilhaa	<i>fort (m.)</i>
ਚੰਗਾ	changaa	<i>good (v.)</i>
ਗੁਜ਼ਰਣਾ	guzarnhaa	<i>to be spent, to go by moonlight</i>
ਚਾਂਦਨੀ	chaandanee	<i>roundabout, circle, centre (m.)</i>
ਚੌਕ	chaunek	<i>bazaar (m.)</i>
ਬਜ਼ਾਰ	bazaar	<i>khareednhaa</i>
ਖਰੀਦਣ	khareednhaa	<i>to buy</i>
ਕੀ ਕੁਝ	kee kujh	<i>what else</i>
ਕਪੜੇ	kaprhe	<i>clothes (m.)</i>
ਜੁੱਤੀ	juttee	<i>shoes (f.)</i>
ਹਰ	har	<i>each, every</i>

ਕਿਸਮ	kisam	type
ਹਰ ਕਿਸਮ ਦੇ ਖਾਣੇ	har kisam de khaanhe	every type of food
ਪਰ	par	but
ਉਮੀਦ	umeed	hope, wish (f.)
ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ	kion ki	because, since
ਸਰੋਂ ਦਾ ਸਾਗ	sarhon daa saag	mustard leaves (m.)
ਮੱਕੀ ਦੀ ਰੋਟੀ	makkee dee rotee	unleavened corn bread (f.)
ਬਣਾਉਣਾ	banhaaunhah	to make
ਖਾਸ	khaas	special
ਸੁਗਾਤ	sugaat	gift (f.)
ਖਾਸ ਸੁਗਾਤ	khaas sugaat	speciality (f.)



ਅਡਿਆਸ abhiyas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

- a. ਚਚੀ ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੂੰ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਦੀ ਸੈਰ ਬਾਰੇ ਪੁੱਛ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। True / False
chaachee jaspreet te simran noon dillee dee sair baare puchch rahee see.
- b. ਚਚੀ ਨੇ ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਜਿਆਦਾ ਪੈਸਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਖਰਚਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ। True / False
chaachee ne kurheean noon kihaa ki ziaadaa paisaa naheen kharchnhaa chaheedaa.
- c. ਸਿਮਰਨ ਮੌਸਮ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਬਿਮਾਰ ਹੋ ਗਈ ਸੀ। True / False
simran mausam kar ke bimaar ho gae see.

2. Match the responses appropriate to the questions

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| a) ਤੂੰ ਹੋਰ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਖਰੀਦਿਆ ? | i) ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਹਣੀ ਰਹੀ |
| toon hor kee kujh khareediaa? | bahtu suhnhee rahee |
| b) ਤੂੰ ਬਿਮਾਰ ਕਿਉਂ ਹੋ ਗਈ ਸੀ ? | ii) ਮੈਂ ਹਰ ਕਿਸਮ ਦੇ ਖਾਣੇ ਖਾਏ |
| toon bimaar kiuun ho gae see? | maiñ har kisam de khaanhe khadhe |
| c) ਦਿੱਲੀ ਦੀ ਸੈਰ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਹੀ ? | iii) ਮੈਂ ਕਪੜੇ ਖਰੀਦੇ ਤੇ ਜੁੜੀ ਵੀ ਖਰੀਦੀ |
| diliee dee sair kiven rahee? | main kaprhe khareede te juttee vee khareedee |
| d) ਦਿੱਲੀ ਵਿਚ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਦੇਖਿਆ ? | iv) ਮੈਂ ਲਾਲ ਕਿਲਾ ਅਤੇ ਸੀਸ ਗੰਜ ਗੁਰਦਵਾਰਾ ਦੇਖਿਆ |
| diliee vich tuseen kee kujh dekhiaa? | main laal kilhaa ate sees ganj gurdavaaraa dekhiaa |

Passage: A day in the village

ਪੇਰਾ: ਇੱਕ ਦਿਨ ਪਿੰਡ ਵਿਚ

pairaa: ikk din pind vich

Jaspreet and Simran have gone to their mother's family's village after having seen their father's relatives in Jalandhar. The following passage is a page from Jaspreet's diary. She has written about the day that she and her sister spent in the village.

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

28 June

ਲਾਜ਼ਮੀ ਛਾਂਗ ਚਕਿਤਸ਼ ਨੂੰ ਕੇ ਸਾਨੇ ਪੈਂਡ ਗਈਆ। ਮਾਡੇ ਮਾਮਾ ਜੀ ਨਾਨਾ ਜੀ ਤੇ ਨਾਨੀ ਜੀ ਦੇ ਪੈਰ ਗੱਠੀਏ ਰਨ। ਉਨ੍ਹਾਂ ਨੇ ਮਾਡੂ ਮਾਡਾ ਪੈਂਡ ਦਿਖਾਇਆ। ਲਾਜ਼ਮੀ ਟੈਂਕਟਰ ਤੇ ਚੜ੍ਹੀਆਂ ਲੱਤੇ ਭੇਤਾਂ ਵਿਚ ਪ੍ਰੰਮੰਨੀਆਂ। ਲਾਜ਼ਮੀ ਥੂੰਹ ਤੇ ਰੁਕੇ। ਕੈਂ ਥੂੰਹ ਪਾਹੜੀ ਵਾਰੀ ਵੈਖਿਆ। ਸਿਮਰਨ ਮੱਛੂ ਨੂੰ ਦੇਖ ਕੇ ਫੁਰ ਗਈ ਤੇ ਇੱਕ ਦਮ ਵੈਕੂ ਗਈ। ਥੂੰਹ ਦੇ ਲਾਲ ਰੱਦੱਕ ਵੀਚਾ ਗੱਨੇ ਦੇ ਰਸ ਨੂੰ ਗੁਝ ਲਈ ਰਿਹਾ ਗੀ। ਮਾਮ ਨੂੰ ਜੋਂਧ ਲਈ ਵਾਪਸ ਲਾਏ ਤੁੰ ਮਾਮੀ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਮਾਨੂੰ ਪ੍ਰੋਟੀ ਖੁਲਾਈ। ਉਮ੍ਮੇਂ ਵਾਲਾ ਵਿਹੜੇ ਵਿਚ ਲਾਜ਼ਮੀ ਨਾਫੀ ਜੀ ਪ੍ਰੇਤ ਪੁਗਣੀਆਂ ਕਗਈਆਂ ਝੜੀਆਂ। ਰਾਤ ਨੂੰ ਮਾਮੀਆਂ ਨੇ ਗਰਮ ਦੁੱਧ ਪੀਤਾ ਲੱਤੇ ਫੁਰ ਮੈਂ ਗਰੇ। ਪੈਂਡ ਦਾ ਮਾਹੌਲ ਮੈਂਹੀਂ ਘਰੂਤ ਪੜ੍ਹੀਦ ਹੈ।

28 Joon

aseen ajj jalandhar ho ke naanke pind gaeaan. saare saanoon piaar naal mile. saade maamaa jee naanaa jee te naanee jee de kol rahinde han. uhnaan ne saanoon saaraa pind dikhaaiaa. aseen taraiktar te charhneeaan ate khetaan vich ghumeeaan. aseen khooh te ruke. main khooh pahilee vaaree vekhiaa. simran majjh noon dekh ke dar gae te ikk dam daurh gaee. khooh de naal ikk bandaa ganne de ras ton gurh banhaa rihaa see. shaam noon jadon aseen vaapas aae taan maamee jee ne saanoon rotee khuaaee. us ton baa-a-d vihrhe vich aseen naanee jee kolon puraanheeaan kahaanheeaan sunheeaan. raat noon saariaa ne garam dudhdh peetaa ate phir saun gae. pind daa maahaul mainon bahut pasand hai.

28 June

Today, after having been to Jalandhar, we went to our mother's family's village. Everyone met us with affection. Our mother's brother lives with grandfather and grandmother. He showed us the entire village. We rode on a tractor and went around the fields. We stopped at the well. It was the first time that I had seen a well. Simran saw buffalo, got scared and immediately ran away. Next to the well there was a man who was making Gurk (a sweet delicacy) from the juice of the sugarcane. In the evening when we arrived, mami ji fed us. After that we all sat in the courtyard and heard old stories from grandmother. At night everyone drank hot milk and then went to sleep. I like the atmosphere of the village a lot.



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

ਨਾਨਕੇ ਪਿੰਡ	naanke pind	mother's family's village
ਪਿਆਰ	piaar	love, affection (m.)
ਮਿਲਣਾ	milnhaa	to meet
ਟਰੈਕਟਰ	taraiktar	tractor (m.)
ਚੜ੍ਹਣਾ	charhhnhaa	to climb, to ride

10 A DAY IN THE VILLAGE

ਖੇਤ	khet	land, field (m.)
ਖੂਹ	khooh	water well (m.)
ਪਹਿਲੀ ਵਾਰੀ	pahilee vaaree	first time
ਮੱਡ	majjh	buffalo (f.)
ਡਰਨਾ	darnaa	to be scared
ਇੱਕ ਦਮ	ikk dam	immediately, at once
ਦੌਰ	daurh	to run
ਬੰਦਾ	bandaa	man (m.)
ਗੰਨਾ	gannaa	sugarcane (m.)
ਗੁਰ	gurh	brown sugar cake (m.)
ਵਾਪਸ	vaapas	return, back to
ਤਾਂ	taan	then
ਰੋਟੀ	rotee	food (literally: unleavened bread which is part of the staple diet of Panjab) (f.)
ਖੁਆਈ	khuaaee	to feed
ਊਸ ਤੋਂ ਬਾਅਦ	us ton baa-a-d	after that
ਵਿਹੜਾ	vihrhaa	courtyard (m.)
ਕਹਾਣੀ	kahaanhee	story (f.)
ਗਰਮ	garam	warm, hot
ਦੁੱਧ	dudhdh	milk (m.)
ਸੌਣਾ	saunhaa	to sleep
ਮਾਹੌਲ	maahaul	atmosphere, environment (m.)



After reading the passage and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Answer the following questions about the passage

- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਦੇ ਮਾਮਾ ਜੀ ਕਿਹਨਾਂ ਕੋਲ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ?
jaspreet te simran de maamaa jee kihnaan kol rahinde han?
- ਜਿਹੜਾ ਬੰਦਾ ਖੂਹ ਦੇ ਕੋਲ ਸੀ, ਉਹ ਕੀ ਬਣਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ ?
jihraa bandaa khooh de kol see, uh kee banhaa rihaa see?
- ਰੋਟੀ ਖਾਣ ਤੋਂ ਬਾਅਦ ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਨੇ ਕੀ ਕੀਤਾ ?
rootee khaanh ton baa-a-d kurheeaan ne kee keetaa?
- ਸੌਣ ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਸਾਰਿਆਂ ਨੇ ਕੀ ਪੀਤਾ ?
saunh ton pahile saariaan ne kee peetaa?

2. Complete the table

ਪਿੰਡ		
	khooh	
ਵਿਹੜ		
	fields	
	gannaa	

bolee baare Language points

The past tense

You have already been introduced to the simple past tense in Unit 6. Verbs in the simple past tense were shown to agree with the number and gender of the subject. To help you remember, here are examples of the verbs ਆਉਣਾ *aaunhaa* (*to come*), ਰੋਣਾ *ronhaa* (*to cry*), ਬੋਲਣਾ *bolhaa* (*to speak*), ਹੋਣਾ *honhaa* (*to be*) and ਦੱਸਣਾ *dasshhaa* (*to tell*) in their past perfect forms:

Masculine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine singular	Feminine plural	
ਆਇਆ aaiaa	ਆਏ aae	ਆਈ aaee	ਆਈਆਂ aaeeeaan	<i>came</i>
ਰੋਇਆ roiaa	ਰੋਏ roe	ਰੋਈ roee	ਰੋਈਆਂ roeeaan	<i>cried</i>
ਬੋਲਿਆ boliaa	ਬੋਲੇ bole	ਬੋਲੀ bolee	ਬੋਲੀਆਂ boleeaan	<i>spoke</i>
ਦੱਸਿਆ dassiaa	ਦੱਸੇ dasse	ਦੱਸੀ dassee	ਦੱਸੀਆਂ dasseeaan	<i>told</i>
ਹੋਇਆ hoiaa	ਹੋਏ hoe	ਹੋਈ hoe	ਹੋਈਆਂ hooeaan	<i>happened</i>

In the past perfect tenses in Panjabi, all verbs can be categorised into two groups: intransitive and transitive. Intransitive verbs do not rely upon an object to dictate the form of the verb. This literally means that the form of the verb is unchanging except, of course, in relation to the subject of the sentence. Intransitive verbs generally do not take a direct object. Transitive verbs, are those verbs which do take a direct object, and are more flexible. In such cases where an object is present, the ending of the verb will agree with the object. In the examples given above, *cried* and *spoke* are both intransitive verbs, meaning that the act of crying and speaking can stand alone without the requirement of an object. *Told*, on the other hand, can require the presence of an object such as *he told me a story* with *story* being the direct object. The following examples illustrate how the transitive verb is affected by the presence of a direct object:

ਮੈਂ ਕੇਲਾ ਖਾਧਾ	main kelaa khaadhaa	I ate a banana.
ਮੈਂ ਕੇਲੇ ਖਾਧੇ	main kele khaadhe	I ate bananas.
ਮੈਂ ਨਾਸ਼ਪਾਤੀ ਖਾਧੀ	main naashpaatee khaadhee	I ate a pear.
ਮੈਂ ਨਾਸ਼ਪਾਤੀਆਂ ਖਾਧੀਆਂ	main naashpaateeaaan khaadheeaaan	I ate pears.

You will notice that the first two examples both have the same object, except that the first is singular and the second is plural. Therefore, ਖਾਧਾ *khaadhaa* in the first example reflects the singular masculine nature of *banana* and ਖਾਧੇ *khaadhe* refers to the plural masculine nature of *bananas*. The third and fourth examples show a similar pattern for the feminine object *pear* with ਖਾਧੀ *khaadhee* and ਖਾਧੀਆਂ *khaadheeaaan* corresponding to the respective singular and plural forms.

The main point to remember when using verbs in the past tense is that some verbs are subject inflected (meaning that they change according to the subject), while others are object inflected (i.e. change according to the object of the sentence). However, some verbs can be in either category. There are transitive verbs which behave like intransitive verbs when there is no direct object present, such as ਸਮਝਣਾ *samajhnhaa* (*to understand*) and ਪੜਨਾ *parhhnaa* (*to read*). There are also intransitive verbs which can behave as transitive verbs, such as ਕਹਿਣਾ *kahinhaa* (*to say*), ਪੁੱਛਣਾ *puchchanhaa* (*to ask*), and ਥੁੱਕਣਾ *thuknhaa* (*to spit*). However, there is no convention for knowing when a verb is intransitive or transitive apart from the nature of the verb and the presence of an object.

The 'agentive' postposition ਨੇ ne

Nearly all transitive verbs in the past tenses are affected by the postposition *ne* ਨੇ which directs the action of the verb towards the subject. In usual circumstances ਨੇ follows the subject of the sentence. However, in the example ਮੈਂ ਨਾਸ਼ਪਾਤੀ ਖਾਧੀ *main naashpaatee khaadhee*, ਨੇ *ne* is implicit and does not appear. The use of ਨੇ *ne* is illustrated in the table. Note that for some pronouns in the third person, the use of ਨੇ *ne* is optional as is indicated in parentheses:

Pronouns in the ਨੇ construction

Direct pronouns		In the ਨੇ (ne) construction	
1st person ਅਸੀਂ	main aseen	ਮੈਂ ਅਸੀਂ	no change no change
2nd person ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen toon	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਤੂ	no change no change

3rd person	ਇਹ (sing)	ih	ਇਹ ਨੇ	ਨੇ ne required
	ਇਹ (sing)	is	ਇਸ (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional
	ਊਹ (sing)	uh	ਊਹ ਨੇ	ਨੇ ne required
	ਊਹ (sing)	us	ਊਸ (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional
	ਇਹ (formal, plural)	ih	ਇਹਨਾਂ ihnaan (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional
	ਊਹ (formal, plural)	uh	ਊਹਨਾਂ uhnaan (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional
	ਕੌਣ (sing)	kaunh	ਕਿਸ kis (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional
	ਕੌਣ (formal, plural)	kaunh	ਕਿਹਨਾਂ kihnaan (ਨੇ)	ਨੇ ne optional

In cases where no direct object is present or the direct object is already followed by a postposition, the verb is made 'neutral'. The neutral verb is always in the singular masculine form. Most commonly, the postposition **ਨੂੰ noon** follows the object of the sentence, thus making the verb neutral. Here are some examples of transitive verbs in the **ਨੇ ne** construction as well as with the postposition **ਨੂੰ noon**.

ਮੈਂ ਦਰਖਤ*	ਨੂੰ ਕਟਿਆ	main <u>darakhāt</u> noon katiaa	I cut the tree.
ਮੈਂ ਟਾਹਣੀ*	ਨੂੰ ਕਟਿਆ	main <u>taahanhee</u> noon katiaa	I cut the branch.
ਮੈਂ ਦਰਖਤਾਂ	ਨੂੰ ਕਟਿਆ	main <u>darakhataan</u> noon katiaa	I cut the trees.
ਮੈਂ ਟਾਹਣੀਆਂ	ਨੂੰ ਕਟਿਆ	main <u>taahanheeaan</u> noon katiaa	I cut the branches.

- * ਦਰਖਤ is grammatically masculine
- * ਟਾਹਣੀ is grammatically feminine

Here are more examples of the use of transitive verbs:

ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਕਹਾਣੀ ਸੁਣੀ	amar ne kahaanhee sunhee	Amar heard the story.
ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਤਿੰਨ ਕਹਾਣੀਆਂ ਸੁਣੀਆਂ	amar ne <u>tinn</u> kahaanheeaan sunheeaan	Amar heard three stories.
ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਸੁਣੀਆਂ	amar ne sunhiaa	Amar heard.
ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਇਸ ਕਹਾਣੀ ਨੂੰ ਸੁਣੀਆਂ	amar ne is kahaanhee noon sunhiaa	Amar heard this story.
ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਇਹਨਾਂ ਕਹਾਣੀਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਸੁਣੀਆਂ	amar ne <u>ihnaan</u> kahaanheeaan noon sunhiaa	Amar heard these stories.

You will recall from Unit 8 that pronouns and nouns change to their oblique forms when followed by postpositions. Taking the same examples:

ਇਹ ਕਹਾਣੀ ih kahaanhee this story

changes to ਇਸ ਕਹਾਣੀ is kahaanhee in the sentence

ਅਮਰ ਨੇ ਇਸ ਕਹਾਣੀ ਨੂੰ amar ne is kahaanhee noon Amar heard this story.
ਸੁਣੀਆਂ sunhiaa

This story in the English is identical in both examples. In Panjabi, however, this story in the first example is in the direct form while this story in the second example is in the oblique form.

Many verbs can fall within either category of transitive or intransitive making the past tense in Panjabi less straightforward than, say, the present or future tenses which are not reliant upon the object's relationship with the verb. For instance, the verb **ਕਰਨਾ karnaa** to do and **ਸਮਝਣਾ samjhnaa** to understand can act as intransitive verbs when not followed by an object or can behave as transitive verbs when an object is present. The same is true for **ਪڑਨਾ parhhnaa** which can take the **ਨੇ ne** construction when used in the sense to read or can stand alone when meaning to study. Often, **ਨੇ ne** can be invisible, meaning that the sentence may be dictated by the **ਨੇ ne** construction but that it is simply understood. This, however, occurs with only a few verbs, so you should be cautious when applying these rules. The best way of illustrating transitive verbs with **ਨੇ ne** is through examples:

ਅਸੀਂ ਕਿਰਨ ਨੂੰ ਅਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ	aseen kirn noon amritsar	We met Kiran in Amritsar.
ਵੇਖਿਆ	vekhiaa	
ਅਸੀਂ ਤਾਰਿਕ ਨੂੰ ਲੰਡਨ	aseen taarik noon landan	We saw Tariq in London.
ਵੇਖਿਆ	vekhiaa	

Note that the verb did not change in these examples even though the gender of the object does because of the presence of **ਨੂੰ noon**. In the following examples you will see how the ending of the verb in the past tense corresponds with the gender and number of the objects:

ਊਹਨਾਂ (ਨੇ) ਬਹੁਤ ਕੇਲੇ ਖਾਏ uhnaan ne bahut kele They ate many bananas.
khaadhe

ਤੁਸੀਂ ਇਹ ਕਮੀਜ਼ਾਂ ਕਿਉਂ tuseen ih kameezaan Why did you buy these
ਖਰੀਦੀਆਂ ? kiun khareedeeaan? shirts?

ਕਿਸ ਨੇ ਗੱਡੀ ਨੂੰ ਸਾਫ਼ ਕੀਤਾ	kis ne gaddee noon	<i>Who cleaned the car?</i>
ਸੀ ?	saaf keetaa see?	
ਰਾਮ ਨੇ ਮੇਰੀ ਗੱਲ ਸਮਝੀ	raam ne meree gall samajhee	<i>Ram understood what I said.</i>

Compound verbs

Compound verbs are formed when the stem of a main verb is followed by an auxiliary verb. These constructions are very common in Panjabi and are the equivalent of two verbs coming together in English such as in the expression *to go to sleep*. In Unit 9 you learned how to express *can* and *already* through the uses of ਸਕਣਾ saknhaa and ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa which, when combined with other verb stems, form compound verb constructions. In a similar way, other verbs are used as auxiliary verbs to emphasise or give an added meaning to the verb stem. Whereas ਸਕਣਾ saknhaa and ਚੁਕਣਾ chuknhaa have very specific meanings, this is not the case for most other compound constructions which are less simple to define. A helpful hint regarding compound verbs, however, is that the auxiliary verb loses its own meaning when it accompanies the stem of another verb. Often it is the context of the sentence and the meaning of the main verb that will tell you about the emphasis that the auxiliary verb has added.

The most common auxiliary verbs are ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa (*to go*), ਦੇਣਾ denhaa (*to give*) and ਲੈਣਾ lainhaa (*to take*). When an intransitive verb is the main verb, ਜਾਣਾ janhaa (*to go*) is generally used to give the sense of completeness or change. To show how the meaning of the main verb is affected by the auxiliary ending, here are a few examples:

ਆਉਣਾ	aaunhaa	<i>to come</i>	ਆ ਜਾਣਾ	aa jaanhaa	<i>to arrive</i>
ਸੌਣਾ	saunhaa	<i>to sleep</i>	ਸੋਣ ਜਾਣਾ	saunh jaanhaa	<i>to go to sleep</i>
ਖਾਣਾ	khaanhaa	<i>to eat</i>	ਖਾ ਜਾਣਾ	khaa jaanhaa	<i>to eat up</i>
ਪੀਣਾ	peenhaa	<i>to drink</i>	ਪੀ ਜਾਣਾ	pee jaanhaa	<i>to drink up</i>

The following sentences illustrate how these compound verbs with ਜਾਣਾ jaanhaa (*to go*) can be used in sentences:

ਚਾਚੀ ਪਿੰਡ ਤੋਂ ਆ ਗਈ	chaachee pind ton aa gaee	<i>Aunt had come from see the village.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਬਾਰ੍ਹ ਵਜੇ ਸੋਣ ਜਾਵਾਂ ਗੀ	main baar-h-aan vaje saunh jaavaan gee	<i>I will go to sleep at 12 o'clock.</i>

ਊਹ ਐਨਾ ਭੁੱਖਾ ਸੀ ਕਿ	uh ainaa bhukhkhaa see	<i>He was so hungry that he ate everything up!</i>
ਊਹ ਸਭ ਕੁਝ ਖਾ ਗਿਆ !	ki uh sabh kujh khaa giao!	
ਬਿਲੀ ਸਾਰਾ ਢੁੱਧ ਪੀ ਗਈ	billee saaraa dudh dh pee gaee	<i>The cat drank (up) all the milk.</i>

Of the transitive verbs, the auxiliaries of ਲੈਣਾ lainhaa (*to take*) and ਦੇਣਾ denhaa (*to give*) are the most common. The effects of each upon the main verb can be best described in terms of the direction of the action. ਲੈਣਾ lainhaa tends to give the sense that the action is being done towards or for the benefit of the performer while ਦੇਣਾ denhaa indicates that the action is being directed away from the performer. The difference between the two can often be quite subtle:

ਇਹ ਕਿਤਾਬ ਰੱਖ ਲੈ	ih kitaab rakhkh lai	<i>Keep this book (with you).</i>
ਇਹ ਕਿਤਾਬ ਮੇਜ਼ ਤੇ ਰੱਖ ਦੇ	ih kitaab mez te rakhkh de	<i>Put this book on the table.</i>
ਊਹ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਪੜ੍ਹ ਲੈਂਦੀ ਹੈ	uh panjaabee parhh laindee hai	<i>She reads Panjabi.</i>
ਊਹ ਚਿੱਠੀ ਪੜ੍ਹ ਦੇਂਦੀ ਹੈ	uh chiththee parhh dendee hai	<i>She reads out the letter.</i>

ਲੈਣਾ lainhaa and ਦੇਣਾ denhaa, in addition to directing the action, also add a feeling of completeness.

ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਜਲਦੀ ਕਰ ਲਿਆ	main kanm jaldee kar liaa	<i>I [had] finished the job quickly.</i>
ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੇ ਜੁੱਡੀ ਖਰੀਦ	simran ne juttee khareed	<i>Simran bought shoes.</i>
ਲਾਈ	laee	
ਡਾਕਟਰ ਨੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੂੰ ਦਾਕਤਾਰ ਨੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੂੰ	daaktar ne simran noon	<i>The doctor gave Simran medicine.</i>
ਦਵਾਈ ਦੇ ਦਿੱਤੀ	davaaee de dittee	
ਟੈਕਸੀ ਵਾਲੇ ਨੇ ਸਮਾਨ	taiksee vaale ne samaan	<i>The taxi driver put the luggage in the car.</i>
ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ ਰੱਖ ਦਿੱਤਾ	gadde vich rakhkh ditta	

The particle -ਕੇ ke

The particle -ਕੇ ke resembles the conjunction *and* in English. In English two verbs can be joined by *and* such as in the case *he came (home) and*

ate. In Panjabi the first verb is followed by **-ਕੇ ke** to denote that the first action occurred first. In this example, the literal meaning would be *having come (home), he ate*. Therefore, the literal meaning of **-ਕੇ ke** is *having*. In the passage from Jaspreet's diary, you will recall that she says *Simran saw a buffalo and ran away*. In Panjabi this would be translated as: *Having seen a buffalo, Simran ran away*. Here are a few more examples of how **-ਕੇ ke** is used:

ਰਾਜਿੰਦਰ ਨੂੰ ਬੁਲਾ ਕੇ ਉਹ	raajindar noon bulaa ke uh	<i>Call Rajinder and tell him.</i>
ਨੂੰ ਦੱਸੋ	noon dasso	
ਕੰਮ ਖਤਮ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਤੂੰ ਘਰ	kanm khatam kar ke toon	<i>After finishing work, go home.</i>
ਨੂੰ ਚਲੋ ਜਾ	ghar noon chale jaa	
ਦੁਕਾਨ ਤੇ ਜਾ ਕੇ ਮੱਖਣ	dukaan te jaa ke	<i>Go to the shop</i>
ਮਿਆਦੂ	makhkhanh liaao	<i>and bring some butter.</i>

-ਕੇ ke can be used with more idiomatic expressions as well, which are often not easily translated into English but which are useful ways of expressing what might otherwise be lengthy sentences. Here are some examples of the usage of **-ਕੇ ke** in idiomatic phrases as well as in adverbial expressions (i.e. expressions which describe actions) which will help you to understand its functions better.

Adverbial phrases

ਅੱਗੇ ਚਲ ਕੇ	agge chal ke	<i>from now on, in the future</i>
ਸੋਚ ਕੇ	soch ke	<i>after thinking</i>
ਹੱਸ ਕੇ	hass ke	<i>laughingly</i>
ਡਰ ਕੇ	dar ke	<i>being scared</i>

Idiomatic uses of **-ਕੇ**

ਚੰਡੀਗੜ੍ਹ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ਕੇ ਜਾਣਾ	chandeegarh ton hoke jaanhaa	<i>Go via Chandigarh.</i>
ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜਾਣ ਕੇ	pitaa jee ne mainoon jaanh	<i>Father purposely</i>
ਨਹੀਂ ਦੱਸਿਆ	ke naheen dassiaa	<i>didn't tell me.</i>
ਇੱਕ ਘਰ ਛੱਡ ਕੇ ਸਾਡਾ	ikk ghar chadd ke saadaa	<i>The house after the next one is ours.</i>
ਹੈ	hai	

The particle **-ਕੇ ke** is also used when expressing the time of the day. You will recall from Unit 7 that the verb **ਵੱਜਣਾ vajjhaa** (*to strike, to chime*) is used to tell the time. The times of quarter past, half past, quarter to, and times on the hour which are regularly used were illustrated to you in this unit. When you wish to show that the time is a few minutes before or after the hour, then the particle **-ਕੇ ke** is combined with **ਵੱਜਣਾ vajjhaa**. Therefore, **ਵਜ਼ ਕੇ vaj ke** means *having struck*. **ਵਜ਼ ਵਿਚ vajjh vich** means *before the hour*. The following examples illustrate how **-ਕੇ ke** and **ਵਿਚ vich** are used to express such times:

ਪੰਜ ਵਜ਼ ਵਿਚ ਦੋ ਮਿੰਟ	panj vajjh vich do mint	<i>It is two minutes to five.</i>
ਹਨ	han	
ਪੰਜ ਵਜ਼ ਕੇ ਦੋ ਮਿੰਟ	panj vaj ke do mint	<i>It is two minutes past five.</i>
ਹਨ	han	
ਬਾਰ੍ਹੇਂ ਵਜ਼ ਵਿਚ ਅਠਾਰ੍ਹਾਂ	baar-haan vajjh vich	<i>It is eighteen minutes to twelve.</i>
ਮਿੰਟ	athaar-haan mint	
ਹਨ	han	
ਬਾਰ੍ਹੇਂ ਵਜ਼ ਕੇ ਅਠਾਰ੍ਹਾਂ	baar-haan vaj ke	<i>It is eighteen minutes past twelve.</i>
ਮਿੰਟ	athaar-haan mint	
ਹਨ	han	

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

Rural Panjab

Panjab's predominantly rural society has had a profound impact on the development of the Panjabi language. On the one hand there is a great deal of local diversity, such that dialects and pronunciations can change over small distances. On the other, there is a richness in the language which comes from rural idioms. Conversations in Panjabi are often peppered with these sayings and it is difficult to relate them without some knowledge of village life. As with all rural settings, day-to-day life in a village is dominated by the agricultural economy which is in turn related to the changing seasons.

Panjab is renowned in the whole of India as the 'bread basket' of the country. In the 1970s the region benefited enormously from the introduction of genetically engineered wheat seeds which resulted in much larger crop returns. This phenomenon has been called the 'Green Revolution' and resulted in Panjab having the greatest per capita income of all the states in the Indian Union.

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Use the particle **-ਕੇ ke** to express the sentences in Panjabi

- Having eaten, we all went to sleep.*
- Go to the shop and bring some milk.*
- After completing the task, go home.*
- Go to Amritsar via Jalandhar.*

2. Insert the appropriate past tense forms

Write the appropriate past form of the verbs given to you in parentheses. Remember the rules about transitive and intransitive verbs!

- ਮੈਂ ਦੇ ਕੇਲੇ** _____ (ਖਾਣਾ)
main do kele _____ (khaanhaa)
- ਬੱਚੀ** _____ (ਰੋਣਾ)
bachchee _____ (ronhaa)
- ਨਾਨੀ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਕਹਾਣੀ** _____ (ਸੁਣਾਉਣਾ)
naanee jee ne saanoon kahaanhee _____ (sunhaaunhaa)
- ਮੈਂ ਦਰਖਤ ਨੂੰ** _____ (ਕਟਾਵਾ)
main darakhat noon _____ (katnhaa)

3. Responses in Panjabi

The following is a conversation between you and your aunt. You are visiting her in London and she is asking you about your trip to central London today. Respond to her questions in Panjabi with the answers given to you in English.

Aunt **ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਲੰਡਨ ਦੀ ਸੈਰ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਹੀ ?**

tuaadee landan dee sair kiven rahee?

You *It was very nice. I went to Trafalgar Square and saw Nelson's Column. I also went to Buckingham Palace.*

Aunt **ਤੁਸੀਂ ਹੋਰ ਕੀ ਕੀਤਾ ?**

tuseen hor kee keetaa?

You *I went to Oxford Circus and bought some clothes.*

Aunt **ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕੁਝ ਖਾਧਾ ?**

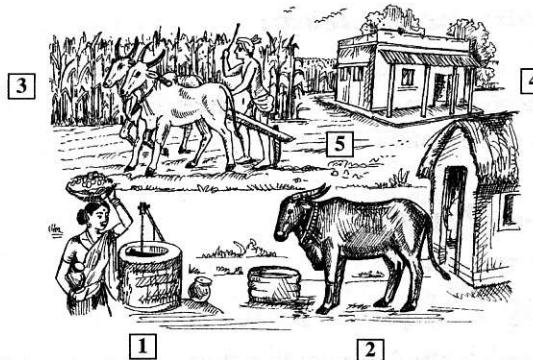
tuseen kee kujh khaadhaa?

You *I only ate some pizza.*

Aunt *ਉਮੀਦ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਡੱਖ ਲੱਗੀ ਹੈ ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ ਅੱਜ ਆਸੀਂ ਮੱਛੀ ਤੇ ਚਿਪਸ ਬਣਾਏ ਚਾਨ। ਇਹ ਹੈ ਇੰਗਲੈਂਡ ਦੀ ਖਾਸ ਸੁਗਾਤ !
umeed hai ki tuhaanoon bhukhh laggee hai kiun ki ajj aseen machchee te chips banhaae han. ih hai inglaint dee khaas sugaat!*

4. Name the numbered objects in Panjabi

- Water well
- Buffalo
- Sugarcane
- House
- Fields



11 | हरिंदर साहिब harmandar saahib

The Golden Temple

In this unit you will learn:

- how to make enquiries and collect information
- how to buy train tickets
- about the Golden Temple

1 Shan-e-Panjab

गॅल बात १ स्नाने पੰਜਾਬ

gall baat 1 shaane panjaab

Both sisters are at Jalandhar railway station early in the morning. After visiting their relatives, they are now on their way to pay homage to Harmandar Sahib, the Golden Temple in Amritsar.

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ	ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਹੈ ?
ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੁ	ਸ਼ਾਨੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ ਸੈਲਾਨੀ ਇਸ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ ਸਫਰ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ।
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ	ਅਸੀਂ ਦੋਨੋਂ ਅੱਜ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ। ਕੀ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਫਰਸਟ ਕਲਾਸ ਵਿਚ ਸੀਟ ਮਿਲ ਜਾਏ ਗੀ ?
ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੁ	ਕੀ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਵਾਪਸੀ ਟਿਕਟ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ ਜਾਂ ਇੱਕ ਪਾਸੇ ਦੀ ?
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਇੱਕ ਪਾਸੇ ਦੀ। ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਚਲਦੀ ਹੈ ?
ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੁ	ਗੱਡੀ ਗਿਆਰਾਂ ਵਜੇ ਸਵੇਰੇ ਚਲਦੀ ਹੈ, ਅਤੇ ਦਾਣੀ ਵਜੇ ਬਾਅਦ ਦੁਪਹਿਰ ਨੂੰ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਪਹੁੰਚਾ ਦੇਂਦੀ ਹੈ।
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਅੱਛਾ, ਸਾਨੂੰ ਦੋ ਟਿਕਟਾਂ ਦੇ ਦੇਵੇ।
ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੁ	ਨਵੀਆਂ ਥਾਂਵਾਂ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ। ਇਹ ਚਾਨੂੰ ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਦੋ ਟਿਕਟਾਂ।
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ	ਧੰਨਵਾਦ।
ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੁ	ਸੁਰੱਖਿਅਤ ਸਫਰ ਲਈ ਸ਼ੁਭ ਇਡਾਵਾਂ।

- Jaspreet Which is the best train to Amritsar?
 Booking clerk The Shan-e-Panjab [the pride of Panjab]. A lot of tourists travel on this train.

Jaspreet	<i>The two of us want to go today. Will we be able to get a seat in first class?</i>
Booking clerk	<i>Do you want return or single?</i>
Simran	<i>Single. What time does the train leave?</i>
Booking clerk	<i>The train leaves at eleven in the morning and gets you to Amritsar at two thirty in the afternoon.</i>
Simran	<i>Okay, can we have [lit. give us] two tickets.</i>
Booking clerk	<i>It is good to see new places. Here are your two tickets.</i>
Jaspreet	<i>Thanks.</i>
Booking clerk	<i>Best wishes for a safe journey.</i>



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਗੱਡੀ	gaddee	automobile, train (f.)
ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ	bahut saare	a lot, many
ਸੈਲਾਨੀ	sailaanee	tourists (m./f.)
ਸਫਰ ਕਰਨਾ	safar karna	to travel
ਮਿਲ ਜਾਣਾ	mil jaanhaa	to get, to receive
ਬਾਅਦ ਦੁਪਹਿਰ	baa-a-d dupahir	afternoon
ਪਹੁੰਚਾ ਦੇਣਾ	pahuchaa denhaa	to deliver, to cause to arrive
ਸੁਰੱਖਿਅਤ ਸਫਰ	surakhkhiat safar	safe journey
ਸ਼ੁਭ ਇਡਾਵਾਂ	shubh ichaavaan	best wishes



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Identify the speaker

The following phrases have been taken from the dialogue. Identify who said each of the phrases.

- ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ ਸੈਲਾਨੀ ਇਸ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ ਸਫਰ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ।
- ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਹੈ ?
- ਨਵੀਆਂ ਥਾਂਵਾਂ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ।
- ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਚਲਦੀ ਹੈ ?
- ਸਾਨੂੰ ਫਰਸਟ ਕਲਾਸ ਵਿਚ ਸੀਟ ਮਿਲ ਜਾਏ ਗੀ ?

2. Rewrite in the correct word order

- a) ਅਸੀਂ ਹਾਂ ਜਾਣਾ ਅੱਜ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ
- b) ਹੈ ਗੱਲ ਚੰਗੀ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਬਾਂਵਾਂ ਨਵੀਆਂ
- c) ਇਹ ਟਿਕਟਾਂ ਦੋ ਹਨ ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ

2 The Golden Temple

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ

gall baat 2 harmandar saahib

Simran and Jaspreet are visiting the Golden Temple in Amritsar. They are accompanied by a guide provided by the temple management committee.

ਗਾਇਡ	ਸਿੱਖਾਂ ਦੇ ਚੌਥੇ ਗੁਰੂ, ਰਾਮਦਾਸ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਵਸਾਇਆ ਸੀ ਅਤੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਵਿੱਚ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਬਣਾਉਣਾ ਆਪਣਾ ਅਤੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਅਰਥ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਇਸ ਦਾ ਲਫਜ਼ੀ ਅਰਥ ਹੈ: ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤ ਦਾ ਸਰੋਵਰ।
ਗਾਇਡ	ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਨੂੰ ਸੁਨਹਿਰੀ ਮੰਦਰ ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿਹਾ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ ?
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ	ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ ਗੁੰਬਦਾਂ ਤੇ ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰਾ ਸੇਨਾ ਲੱਗਾ ਹੋਇਆ ਹੈ। ਇਹ ਮਹਾਰਾਜਾ ਰਣਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਨੇ ਲੱਗਵਾਇਆ ਸੀ।
ਸਿਮਰਨ	ਲਗਾਤਾਰ ਹੋ ਰਿਹਾ ਕੀਰਤਨ ਮਨ ਨੂੰ ਸ਼ਾਂਤੀ ਦੇਂਦਾ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਸਾਰਾ ਮਹੌਲ ਸਵਰਗ ਵਰਗਾ ਹੈ।
ਗਾਇਡ	ਇਸ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਦਰਸ਼ਕ ਨਾ ਕੇਵਲ ਭਾਚਦ ਤੋਂ ਟਿੱਖੇ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ ਬਲਕਿ ਸਾਰੀ ਦੁਨੀਆਂ ਤੋਂ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ।

Guide *The town of Amritsar was founded by the fourth Guru of the Sikhs, Ram Das, and the fifth Guru Arjun Dev had Harmandar Sahib built.*

Simran *What does the word Amritsar mean?*

The literal meaning is 'a pool of nectar'.

Guide *Why is the Harmandar Sahib called the Golden Temple?*

Because the domes are covered in a lot of gold. This gold was put on by Maharaja Ranjit Singh.

Simran *The continuous recitation of religious hymns gives peace of mind and the entire atmosphere is heavenly.*

Guide *That is why visitors come here not only from India but from all over the world.*



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਸਿੱਖਾਂ ਦੇ	sikhhaan <u>de</u>	of the Sikhs
ਚੌਥੇ ਗੁਰੂ	chauthे guroo	fourth Guru (m.)
ਸ਼ਹਿਰ	shahir	city (m.)
ਵਸਾਉਣਾ	vasaaunhaa	to establish, to found
ਪੰਜਾਬ	panjvaan	fifth
ਬਣਵਾਉਣਾ	banhvaanhaa	to get built
ਅਰਥ	arth	meaning
ਲਫਜ਼ੀ	lafzee	literal
ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤ	anmrit	nectar, holy water (m.)
ਸਰੋਵਰ	sarovar	pool (m.)
ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ	harmandar saahib	Golden Temple (m.)
ਸੁਨਹਿਰੀ	sunahiree	golden
ਕਿਉਂ	kiun	why
ਕਿਹਾ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ	kihaa jaandaa hai	is said, is called
ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ	kiun <u>ki</u>	because
ਗੁੰਬਦ	gunbad	dome (m.)
ਸੋਨਾ	sonaa	gold (m.)
ਲੱਗਣਾ	laggnhaa	to be covered, laden
ਲੱਗਵਾਉਣਾ	laggvaunhaa	to get covered
ਲਗਾਤਾਰ	lagaataar	continuously
ਕੀਰਤਨ	keertan	singing of hymns (m.)
ਮਨ	man	mind (m.)
ਸ਼ਾਂਤੀ	shaantee	peace (f.)
ਦੇਣਾ	denhaa	to give
ਸਾਰਾ ਮਹੌਲ	saaraa maahaul	whole atmosphere (m.)
ਸਵਰਗ	savarag	heaven (m.)
ਵਰਗ	vargaa	like (v.)
ਇਸ ਕਰ ਕੇ	is kar ke	that's why
ਦਰਸ਼ਕ	darshak	visitors (m./f.)
ਨਾ ਕੇਵਲ	naa keval	not only
ਬਲਕਿ	balki	but also
ਦੁਨੀਆਂ	duneeaan	world (f.)



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Matching

Match the questions with the appropriate answers.

ਸਵਾਲ savaal Question

a) ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਦਾ ਅਰਥ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?

b) ਹਿਰਾਂਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਕਿਸ ਨੇ ਬਣਵਾਇਆ ਸੀ ?

c) ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਕਿਸ ਨੇ ਵਸਾਇਆ ਸੀ ?

d) ਗੁੰਬਦਾਂ ਤੇ ਕਿਸ ਨੇ ਸੋਨਾ ਲਗਵਾਇਆ ਸੀ ?

ਜਵਾਬ javaab Answer

i) ਚੌਥੇ ਗੁਰੂ ਜੀ ਨੇ

ii) ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਦਾ ਸਰੋਵਰ।

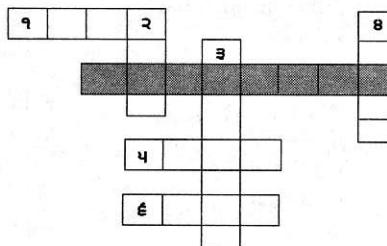
iii) ਮਹਾਰਾਜਾ ਰਣਜੀਤ ਸਿੰਘ ਨੇ।

iv) ਪੰਜਾਵੇਂ ਗੁਰੂ ਜੀ ਨੇ।

2. Crossword

Complete the crossword in English using the clues given in Panjabi. Can you figure out what the ‘mystery word’ is in the shaded boxes?

1. ਸੋਨਾ



2. ਗੁੰਬਦ

3. ਦਰਸ਼ਕ

4. ਦੁਨੀਆਂ

5. ਸ਼ਹਿਰ

6. ਗੁਰੂ

bolee baare Language points

Conjunct verbs

Conjunct verbs have meanings which are specified by the nouns or adjectives that they include. Conjunct verbs are formed by combining a noun or adjective with an infinitive (either in its simple form or as a verb tense). For example, *to clean* in English merely requires the infinitive. In Panjabi *to clean* would require two words: **ਸਾਫ਼** (*clean*, adjective) and **ਕਰਨਾ** (*to do*, infinitive). The adjective specifies the type or nature of the action while the infinitive directs the action. The most common infinitives used in conjunct constructions are **ਕਰਨਾ** (*to do*) and **ਹੋਣਾ** (*to be*). Here are some examples of common conjunct verbs using both adjectives and nouns.

With nouns

ਪਿਆਰ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to love</i>
ਪਸੰਦ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to like, to prefer</i>
ਕੰਮ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to work</i>
ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to begin, to commence</i>
ਮੱਦਦ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to help</i>
ਕੋਸ਼ਿਸ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to try</i>

With adjectives

ਸਾਫ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to clean</i>
ਖਤਮ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to finish, to complete</i>
ਠੀਕ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to fix, to correct</i>
ਬੰਦ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to close</i>
ਘੱਟ ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to reduce, to lessen</i>

Here are a few examples to illustrate how conjunct verbs are used:

1 ਕੰਮ ਸਵੇਰੇ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ। *Work begins in the morning.*

[**ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੋਣਾ** to begin is an intransitive verb formed with the noun **ਕੰਮ**.]

2 ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਉਡੀਕ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀ। *I will wait for you.*

[Here **ਉਡੀਕ ਕਰਨਾ** to wait is a transitive verb with **ਉਡੀਕ** as a noun. This is an example of a verbal expression which is formed exactly as a conjunct verb. However, the noun retains its own meaning and sense.]

3. ਮੇਰਾ ਵਿਆਹ ੧੯੬੪ ਵਿੱਚ ਹੋਇਆ ਸੀ *I got married in 1964.*

There are some conjunct verbs in which neither **ਕਰਨਾ** nor **ਹੋਣਾ** are involved.

ਵਿਖਾਣੀ ਦੇਣਾ	<i>to be visible</i>
ਜਾਣ ਆਉਣਾ	<i>to come to mind</i>
ਜਾਣ ਰੱਖਣਾ	<i>to bear in mind, to remember</i>

Causative verbs

Causative verbs are groups of related verbs which share a similar meaning, but which differ in terms of who is carrying out the action. You have already come across such related verbs in Unit 10, in the first dialogue when Simran says to Chaachee:

ਮੈਂ ਹਰ ਕਿਸਮ ਦੇ ਖਾਣੇ ਖਾਏ I ate every type of food.

In the diary passage in Unit 10, Jaspreet writes:

ਮਾਮੀ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਸਨ੍ਹੁ ਰੋਟੀ ਖੁਆਈ Aunt fed us.

As you can see from these examples, ਖੁਆਈ *to feed* and ਖਾਣਾ *to eat* are clearly related to one another. However, the difference lies in who the agent or ‘doer’ of the action is. Not all verbs are grouped into causative pairs. However, there are a large number of verbs which can be placed into such groups. Causative pairs and groupings are formed by a pattern of adding a suffix (or ending) to the stem of the verb as the action moves further away from the subject.

ਕਰਨਾ	<i>to do</i>
ਕਰਾਉਣਾ	<i>to cause to be done</i>
ਕਰਵਾਉਣਾ	<i>to cause to be done by someone else</i>
ਦੇਖਣਾ	<i>to see</i>
ਦਿਖਾਣਾ	<i>to be shown, to appear</i>
ਦਿਖਾਉਣਾ	<i>to show</i>
ਬਣਨਾ	<i>to make, to build</i>
ਬਣਾਉਣਾ	<i>to be made, to be built</i>
ਬਣਵਾਉਣਾ	<i>to have made or built (from/by someone else)</i>
ਪਕਾਉਣਾ	<i>to cook</i>
ਪਕਣਾ	<i>to be cooked</i>
ਪਕਵਾਉਣਾ	<i>to have cooked (by someone else), to cause to be cooked</i>
ਜਾਗਣਾ	<i>to wake</i>
ਜਾਗਾਉਣਾ	<i>to awaken</i>
ਜਾਗਵਾਉਣਾ	<i>to cause to wake</i>

The infinitive as a verbal noun

The simple verb, or infinitive, was explained in Unit 3 as the base of all Panjabi verbs. To refresh your memory, the infinitive of Panjabi verbs is formed by the root of the verb plus the ending -ਾ or -ਨ. By now you should be familiar with the various tenses of the Panjabi verb. In addition to being the base of all verb tenses, the infinitive can also be used as a noun. You will recall in the first dialogue that the booking clerk says to Jaspreet and Simran:

ਨਵੀਆਂ ਥਾਂਵਾਂ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ It's good seeing [to see] new places.

Notice that the infinitive ਦੇਖਣਾ is not the verb of the sentence (ਹੋਣਾ is the verb) but that it is a verbal noun indicating an action (which behaves as a noun) within the sentence. Here are a few more examples of the infinitive as a verbal noun:

ਜਲਦੀ ਉਠਣਾ ਜ਼ਰੂਰੀ ਹੈ	<i>Waking up [to wake up] early is necessary.</i>
ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਬੋਲਣਾ ਚੰਗਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਲੱਗਦਾ	<i>Talking [to talk] too much doesn't look good.</i>
ਪੜ੍ਹਨਾ ਸੌਖਾ ਹੈ, ਲਿਖਣਾ ਮੁਸ਼ਕਲ	<i>Reading [to read] is easy, writing [to write] is difficult.</i>

When the infinitive has an object, it will correspond to the gender and number of that noun. Since the infinitive already has a masculine/singular appearance with the -ਾ ending, it does not change when the object is masculine and singular. However, when the object is masculine/plural it will take the ending -ਏ and when the object is feminine, then the ending changes to -ਈ, -ਈਆਂ if plural. Note the following examples:

ਨੈਕਰੀ ਕਰਨੀ	<i>working (to work, to have a job)</i>
ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ ਪੜ੍ਹਨੀਆਂ	<i>reading (to read) books</i>
ਖਾਣਾ ਬਣਾਉਣਾ	<i>cooking (to cook, to make food)</i>
ਦਰਵਾਜ਼ੇ ਖੋਲ੍ਹੇ	<i>opening (to open) the doors</i>

Like other nouns, the infinitive is also affected by postpositions. The ending of the infinitive in the oblique, therefore, changes to the shortened form as discussed in Unit 8. Here are some examples of verbal nouns in the oblique:

ਮੈਂ ਹਾਲੇ ਬਾਹਰ ਜਾਣ ਨੂੰ ਤਿਆਰ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਾਂ	<i>I am not ready to go out yet.</i>
ਊਹਾਂ ਦੇ ਇੱਥੋਂ ਆਉਣ ਨਾਲ ਮੇਰਾ ਸਮਾਂ	<i>Their coming here wasted my time.</i>
ਜਾਇਆ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ	
ਚਾਹ ਪੀਣ ਦਾ ਮੌਕਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਮਿਲਿਆ	<i>There wasn't an opportunity to drink tea.</i>

The passive voice

In English ‘I said’ is in the active voice (i.e. the subject of the verb is directly carrying out the action) and ‘it was said’ is in the passive voice (i.e. the subject is on the receiving end of the action). The same distinction is also true in Panjabi. The passive voice can be formed in two ways. In the first form the passive verb (the participle [see Unit 12] and the form of ਜਾਣਾ) agrees with the subject:

ਲੁਧਿਆਣੇ ਵਿਚ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲੀ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ Panjabi is spoken in Ludhiana.
 ਕਿਹਾ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ It is said that Amritsar is the city of the
 ਸਿੱਖਾਂ ਦਾ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਹੈ Sikhs.

ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਤਕ ਸਾਰਾ ਕੰਮ ਕਰ ਲਿਆ ਜਾਏਗਾ By tomorrow all of the work will be done.

The passive voice can also be expressed by using the postpositions ਤੋਂ and ਕੋਲੋਂ to indicate by whom the action was done. In this form the verb of the sentence agrees with the object. Note the following examples:

ਕਪ ਮੇਰੇ ਤੋਂ ਟੁੱਟ ਗਿਆ	<i>The cup was broken by me.</i>
ਕੁਰਸੀ ਮੇਰੇ ਤੋਂ ਟੁੱਟ ਗਈ	<i>The chair was broken by me.</i>
ਗਲਤੀ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਕੋਲੋਂ ਹੋਈ	<i>The mistake was made by father.</i>

You will recall from earlier in this unit that causative verbs are groups of related verbs. Active intransitive verbs and passive transitive verbs (see Unit 10) can both be used to express the passive voice. For example, the verb ਬਣਨਾ to be made and ਬਣਾਉਣਾ to make can both be used to give the sense is/are made.

ਜੁੱਡੀਆਂ ਇੱਥੇ ਬਣਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ	<i>Shoes are made here.</i>
ਜੁੱਡੀਆਂ ਇੱਥੇ ਬਣਾਈਆਂ ਜਾਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ	<i>Shoes are made here.</i>

ਵਰਗ 'like'

The postposition ਵਰਗਾ is used when comparing objects or people with one another in terms of quality, size, colour, etc. You will recall in Dialogue 2 that the guide described the atmosphere of the Golden Temple: ਮਹੌਲ ਸੁਵਰਗ ਵਰਗਾ ਹੈ (the atmosphere is heavenly (lit. like heaven)). ਵਰਗਾ is affected by the gender and number of the person or object being likened to, so that the ending of ਵਰਗਾ is masculine, in this example, since *heaven* is a masculine noun. Note in the following examples how the ending of ਵਰਗਾ changes accordingly:

ਇਹ ਕੁੜੀ ਪਰੀ ਵਰਗੀ ਹੈ	<i>This girl is like a fairy.</i>
ਇਹ ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਪਰੀਆਂ ਵਰਗੀਆਂ ਹਨ	<i>The girls are like fairies.</i>
ਉਸ ਦਾ ਮਕਾਨ ਮੱਹਲ ਵਰਗਾ ਵੱਡਾ ਹੈ	<i>His house is big like a palace.</i>
ਉਹ ਮੁੰਡੇ ਦੋਤਾਂ ਵਰਗੇ ਹਨ	<i>Those boys are like giants.</i>
ਉਹ ਦਵਾਈ ਖੰਡ ਵਰਗੀ ਮਿੱਠੀ ਹੈ	<i>That medicine is sweet like sugar.</i>

There are also other words for describing likeness in Panjabi: ਜਿਹਾ (jihaa), ਵਾਂਗੂਨੀ (vaangoon) and ਤਰਾਂ (tar-h-aan). These words all appear in this book.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. Railways

India has one of the largest railway networks in the world. Trains may be both the most luxurious and most uncomfortable way to travel in India, but they are always entertaining. The fastest trains to Panjab from Delhi are the Shan-e-Panjab and the Shatabdi. However, almost all trains heading north from Delhi will pass through Panjab. There is also a train called the Samjota Express which crosses the India–Pakistan border from East to West Panjab at Attari.



2. The city of Amritsar

The city of Amritsar is one of the central towns in the corridor to India for those travelling by land to and from Central Asia. Amritsar is a cultural and religious centre not only in the state of Panjab but also in South Asia. Founded over 400 years ago, Amritsar has become the political and cultural centre of the region and is the religious centre for the Sikh faith. At the time of the annexation of Panjab by the British in 1849, Amritsar was the largest city in Panjab. However, other larger cities such as Lahore and Ludhiana have now surpassed Amritsar in terms of size and economic dynamism since the partition in 1947. Today Amritsar is still the most significant religious centre for the Sikhs, being the home of the Golden Temple, and continues to be regarded as one of the main tourist attractions of Panjab.

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Fill in the blanks

- ਜਿਹੜੀ ਗੱਡੀ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਤੋਂ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ ਉਸ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ _____ ਹੈ।
- ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ _____ ਉਸ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ _____ ਹਨ।
- ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਦਾ _____ ਅਰਥ ਹੈ: '_____।'
- ਲਗਤਾਰ _____ ਮਨ ਨੂੰ _____ ਦੇਂਦਾ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਸਾਰਾ ਮਹੌਲ _____ ਵਰਗ ਹੈ।

2. Answer the following questions in Panjabi

- Who was the founder of the city of Amritsar?
- What is the meaning of Amritsar?
- Why is Harmandar Sahib known as the Golden Temple?

3. Listening

You are standing at the ticket counter at Amritsar railway station speaking with the booking clerk about your planned journey to Delhi. Listen to the tape and converse with the ticket master by translating the English sentences given to you.



- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| You | I want to go to Delhi today. Which is the best train to Delhi? |
| Ticket master | ਸੇਤਾਬਦੀ ਐਕਸਪ੍ਰੈਸ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗੀ ਹੈ। ਬਹੁਤ ਲੋਕ ਉਸ ਵਿਚ ਸਫਰ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ। |
| You | Will I be able to get a seat in 2nd class? |
| Ticket master | ਹਾਂ ਜੀ ਕੀ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਸਿਰਫ ਟਿੱਕ ਪਾਸੇ ਦੀ ਟਿਕਟ ਚਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ ? |
| You | No, I want a return ticket. What time does the train leave from Amritsar? |
| Ticket master | ਗੱਡੀ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਤੋਂ ਢਾਣੀ ਵਜੇ ਚਲਦੀ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਅੱਠ ਵਜੇ ਰਾਤ ਨੂੰ ਪਹੁੰਚਦੀ ਹੈ। |
| You | OK, give me one 2nd-class ticket. |
| Ticket master | ਸੁਰੱਖਿਅਤ ਸਫਰ ਲਈ ਸ਼ੁਭ ਇਛਾਵਾਂ। |

12 ਘਰ ਨੂੰ ਚਿੱਠੀ ghar noon chiththee

A letter home

In this unit you will learn:

- how to write a letter
- how to express *how did it go?*
- how to talk about where you've visited
- how to construct sentences beginning with *if*

1 Changing money

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਪੈਸੇ ਬਦਲਣਾ

gall baat 1 paise badalnhaa

Simran and Jaspreet are in the Air India office in Chandigarh waiting to get their tickets confirmed. While they are there a German tourist, Paul, strikes up a conversation with them.

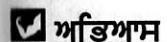
- | | |
|------------------|--|
| ਪੈਲ | ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਪੈਲ ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਜਰਮਨ ਹਾਂ। ਮੈਨੂੰ ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ੀ ਨਹੀਂ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਪਰ ਮੈਂ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲ ਸਕਦਾ ਹਾਂ। |
| ਸਿਮਰਨ | ਆਸੀਂ ਅਮਰੀਕਨ ਹਾਂ। ਆਸੀਂ ਵੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲ ਸਕਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ। ਆਸੀਂ ਤਿੰਨ ਹਫ਼ਤਿਆਂ ਲਈ ਭਾਰਤ ਆਇਆਂ ਹਾਂ। ਸਾਨੂੰ ਬਹੁਤ ਹੀ ਚੰਗਾ ਲੱਗ ਹੈ। |
| ਪੈਲ | ਮੈਂ ਅੱਜ ਹੀ ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਤੋਂ ਵਾਪਸ ਆਇਆ ਹਾਂ। ਜੇ ਆਸੀਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਮਿਲਦੇ ਤਾਂ ਆਸੀਂ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਥੁੰਮੇਂਦੇ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਗਈਆਂ ? |
| ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ | ਆਸੀਂ ਬਹੁਤ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਦੇਖੀਆਂ ਹਨ। ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗੀ ਲੱਗੀ ? |
| ਪੈਲ | ਤਾਜ ਮੱਹਲ ਮੈਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਦੇਖ ਚੁਕਾ ਸੀ। ਹੁਣ ਮੈਂ ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਦੇਖਿਆ ਹੈ। ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਦਾ ਕੋਈ ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ ਨਹੀਂ। |
| ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ | ਆਸੀਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਸਹਿਮਤ ਹਾਂ। |
| ਪੈਲ | ਮੈਂ ਪੈਸੇ ਬਦਲਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ। ਮੇਰੇ ਕੋਲ ਯੂ.ਐਸ. ਡਾਲਰ ਹਨ। ਮੈਨੂੰ ਕੀ ਕਰਨਾ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ ? |

- ਸਿਮਰਨ** ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿਸੇ ਬੈਂਕ ਜਾਓ। ਡਾਲਰ ਦੇ ਕੇ ਰੁਪਏ ਲੇ ਲਵੇ। ਇਹ ਕੰਮ ਸੌਖਾ ਹੈ।
ਪੋਲ ਜੇ ਮੈਂ ਬੈਂਕ ਦੇ ਰੋਟ ਤੋਂ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਲੈਣਾ ਚਾਹਵਾਂ ?
ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ... ਤਾਂ ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਕਿਸੇ ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ ਨੂੰ ਪੁੱਛਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ।
ਪੋਲ ਧੰਨਵਾਦ। ਮੇਰੀ ਵਾਰੀ ਆ ਗਈ ਹੈ। ਉਮੀਦ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਫਿਰ ਮਿਲਾਂ ਗੇ।
- Paul** My name is Paul. I'm German. I don't know any English but I can speak Panjabi.
- Simran** We are American. We can also speak Panjabi. We've come to India for three weeks. We like it very much.
- Paul** I have just come from Amritsar today. Had we met before, we could have travelled together. Where have you been?
- Jaspreet** We have seen many places. Which one did you like the most?
- Paul** I had already seen the Taj Mahal. Now I have seen Harmandar Sahib. There is no comparison with Harmandar Sahib.
- Jaspreet and Simran** We agree with you.
- Paul** I want to change some money. I have US dollars. What should I do?
- Simran** Go to any bank. Get rupees by giving dollars. This is not difficult to do [lit. an easy task].
- Paul** And if I want a higher rate than the bank?
- Jaspreet** ... then you should ask any shopkeeper.
- Paul** Thanks. My turn has come now. Hope we'll meet again.

**ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ****shabdaavalee****Vocabulary**

ਵਾਪਸ	vaapas	return, back
ਜੇ	je	if
ਮਿਲਣਾ	milnhaa	to meet
ਪਹਿਲੇ	pahile	before
ਇਕੱਠੇ	ikaththe	together (v.)
ਤਾਂ	taan	then
ਜਗਾ	jag-h-aa	place (f.)
ਦੇਖਣਾ	dekhnhaa	to see
ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ	mukaablaa	comparison, competition (m.)

ਸਹਿਮਤ	sahimat	agree
ਬਦਲਣਾ	badalnhaa	to change, exchange
ਕੰਮ	kaam	job, work, task (m.)
ਸੌਖਾ	saukhaa	easy, simple (v.)
ਉਮੀਦ	umeed	hope (f.)
ਫਿਰ	phir	again

**ਅਭਿਆਸ****abhiaas****Exercises**

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਅਮਰੀਕਨ ਹਨ ਪਰ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਨਹੀਂ ਆਉਂਦੀ। True / False
- ਪੋਲ ਨੇ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਜੇ ਉਹ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਮਿਲਦੇ ਤਾਂ ਉਹ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਖੁੰਮਦੇ। True / False
- ਜਦੋਂ ਪੋਲ ਨੇ ਦੋਨਾਂ ਭੈਣਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਪੈਸੇ ਬਦਲਣ ਬਾਰੇ ਪੁੱਛਿਆ ਤਾਂ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਜਵਾਬ ਦਿੱਤਾ ਕਿ ਇਹ ਕੰਮ ਬਹੁਤ ਮੁਸ਼ਕਲ ਹੈ। True / False
- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੇ ਪੋਲ ਨੂੰ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਜੇ ਉਹ ਬੈਂਕ ਦੇ ਰੋਟ ਤੋਂ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਲੈਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ ਤਾਂ ਫਿਰ ਕਿਸੇ ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ ਨੂੰ ਪੁੱਛਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ। True / False

2. Fill in the blanks

- ਪੋਲ _____ ਹੈ ਤੇ ਉਸ ਨੂੰ _____ ਨਹੀਂ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਪਰ ਉਹ _____ ਬੋਲ ਸਕਦਾ ਹੈ।
- ਪੋਲ _____ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਦੇਖ ਚੁਕਾ ਸੀ।
- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ, ਸਿਮਰਨ ਤੇ ਪੋਲ _____ ਹਨ ਕਿ ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਦਾ ਕੋਈ _____ ਨਹੀਂ।
- ਪੋਲ ਅੱਜ ਹੀ _____ ਤੋਂ ਵਾਪਸ ਆਇਆ ਹੈ।

A letter home ਘਰ ਨੂੰ ਚਿੱਠੀ ghar noon chiththee

ਪਿਆਰੇ ਪਿਤਾ ਤੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ,

8 ਜੁਲਾਈ

ਸਤਿ ਸ਼੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ

ਸਾਨੂੰ ਉਮੀਦ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਠੀਕ ਠਾਕ ਹੋ। ਅਸੀਂ ਇੱਥੇ ਖੁਸ਼ ਹਾਂ। ਅਸੀਂ ਪਿੰਡ ਗਈਆਂ ਸੀਂ ਤੇ ਉਹ ਮਕਾਨ ਦੇਖਿਆ ਜਿੱਥੇ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹੋਏ ਸੀ। ਪਿੰਡ ਦੇ ਲੋਕਾਂ ਨੇ ਸਾਨੂੰ

ਬਹੁਤ ਪਿਆਰ ਦਿਖਾਇਆ, ਪਰ ਗਰਮੀ ਬਹੁਤ ਸੀ। ਇੱਕ ਵਾਰੀ ਤਿੰਨ ਦਿਨ ਲਗਤਾਰ ਬਾਰਸ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। ਇੱਥੋਂ ਆ ਕੇ ਸਾਡੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਦੀ ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ ਬਹੁਤ ਵੱਧ ਗਈ ਹੈ। ਅਸੀਂ ਹੈਰਨ ਹੋਈਆਂ ਹਾਂ ਕਿ ਇੱਥੇ ਐਨੀ ਅਬਾਦੀ ਤੇ ਟਰੈਫ਼ਿਕ ਹੈ। ਅਸੀਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਲਈ ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਗਾਤਾਂ ਖਰੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ। ਅਸੀਂ ਚਹੁੰਦੀਆਂ ਸੀ ਕਿ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਾਡੇ ਨਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ।

ਸ਼ੁਭ ਇਛਾਵਾਂ!

ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਪਿਆਰੀਆਂ ਬੇਟੀਆਂ

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ

Dear Dad and Mum,

4 July

Sat sri akal.

We hope that you are fine. We are happy here. We went to the village and saw the house where you used to live. The people of the village have shown us tremendous affection but it was very hot. Once, it rained for three days without stopping. Our Panjabi vocabulary has increased a lot by coming here. We are astonished to see so many people and so much traffic. We have bought many presents for you. We wish you were here with us.

With best wishes,

Your loving daughters,

Jaspreet and Simran



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਪਿਆਰੇ	piaare	dear, beloved (v.)
ਕਿ	ki	that
ਖੁਸ਼	khush	happy
ਮਕਾਨ	makaan	house (m.)
ਜਿੱਥੇ	jiththe	where
ਲੋਕ	lok	people (m.)
ਪਿਆਰ	piaar	love, affection (m.)
ਦਿਖਾਉਣਾ	dikhaaunhaa	to show
ਗਰਮੀ	garmee	heat, warmth (hot, warm) (f.)

ਵਾਰੀ	vaaree	turn, instance (f.)
ਅਬਾਦੀ	abaadee	population (f.)
ਲਗਤਾਰ	lagaataar	continuously, ongoing
ਬਾਰਸ	baarash	rain (f.)



ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Complete the box

ਲਗਤਾਰ		
	piaare	
ਖੁਸ਼		
		warmth
	vaaree	

2. Answer the questions about Jaspreet and Simran's letter home

- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੇ ਪਿੰਡ ਵਿਚ ਕੀ ਦੇਖਿਆ ?
- ਇੱਕ ਵਾਰੀ ਤਿੰਨ ਦਿਨ ਲਗਤਾਰ ਕੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ ?
- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਕਿਉਂ ਹੈਰਨ ਹੋਈਆਂ ਹਨ ?
- ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੇ ਆਪਣੇ ਮਤਾ ਜੀ ਤੇ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਲਈ ਕੀ ਖਰੀਦਿਆ ?



2 Simran at the post office

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਸਿਮਰਨ ਡਾਕਖਾਨੇ ਤੇ

gall baat 2 simran daakkhaane te

ਸਿਮਰਨ
ਡਾਕਖਾਨਾ
ਸਿਮਰਨ

ਮੈਂ ਇਹ ਚਿੱਠੀ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ ਭੇਜਣੀ ਹਾਂ।
ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਮੁੰਦਰੀ ਡਾਕ ਰਾਹੀਂ ਭੇਜਣੀ ਹੈ ਜਾਂ ਹਵਾਈ ਡਾਕ ਰਾਹੀਂ ?
ਹਵਾਈ ਡਾਕ ਰਾਹੀਂ।

- ਡਾਕਬਾੜੀ
ਸਿਮਰਨ ਇਸ ਤੇ ੧੨ ਰੁਪਏ ਦੀਆਂ ਟਿਕਟਾਂ ਲਾਈ।
ਅੱਛਾ ਜੀ। ਧੰਨਵਾਦ।
- Simran I want to send this letter to America.
Postal worker Do you want to send the letter by sea or by air mail?
Simran By air mail.
Postal worker Put 12 rupees worth of stamps on it [the letter].
Simran Okay. Thanks.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਚਿੱਠੀ	chiththee	letter (f.)
ਭੇਜਣਾ	bhejnhaa	to send, to post
ਸਮੁੰਦਰ	samundar	sea (m.)
ਡਾਕ	daak	mail, post (f.)
ਸਮੁੰਦਰੀ ਡਾਕ	samundaree daak	sea mail (f.)
ਰਹੀਂ	raaheen	via, by
ਹਵਾਈ	havaaee	by air
ਹਵਾਈ ਡਾਕ	havaaee daak	air mail (f.)
ਟਿਕਟ	tikat	stamp (f.)

ਥੋੜੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points

The perfect tenses

The perfect tenses describe actions which have been completed.

Present perfect

The present perfect tense in Panjabi refers to those actions which have just occurred, such as *I have eaten*. It is generally used when one is concerned with the present effects of something which happened in the recent past. You will recall from Unit 9 that the verb ਚੁਕਣਾ is used to express *to have already done* or *to have finished doing*. The stem that is used with ਚੁਕਣਾ represents the action in the present perfect tense that has already occurred. The present perfect of ਖਾਣਾ *to eat* is as follows:

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ ਚੁਕਿਆ ਹਾਂ	<i>I have eaten</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਹਾਂ	<i>I have eaten</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹਾਂ	<i>we have eaten</i>
Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ	<i>we have eaten</i>
Masculine informal singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ ਚੁਕਿਆ ਹੋ	<i>you have eaten</i>
Feminine informal singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਹੋ	<i>you have eaten</i>
Formal masculine plural	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹੋ	<i>you have eaten</i>
Masculine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ ਚੁਕਿਆ ਹੈ	<i>he has eaten</i>
Feminine singular	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਹੈ	<i>she has eaten</i>
Formal Masculine plural	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹਨ	<i>he/has/they have eaten</i>
Feminine plural	ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਹਨ	<i>she has/ they have eaten</i>

Past perfect

The past perfect tense is used when the effects of an action in the remote past is being referred to in the more recent past. In English *to eat* in the past perfect would be expressed as *had eaten*. The past perfect tense in Panjabi is formed similarly to the present perfect tense as just shown, except that the present auxiliary verbs are used in the present perfect while the past perfect tense is formed with the past form of the auxiliary verbs. The following examples show *to eat* ਖਾਣਾ in the past perfect tense:

Masculine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ ਚੁਕਿਆ ਸੀ	<i>I had eaten</i>
Feminine singular	ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਸੀ	<i>I had eaten</i>
Masculine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਸੀ	<i>we had eaten</i>

Feminine plural	ਅਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਸੀ	<i>we had eaten</i>
Masculine informal singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ਚੁਕਿਆ ਸੀ	<i>you had eaten</i>
Feminine informal singular	ਤੁੰ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਸੀ	<i>you had eaten</i>
Masculine singular	ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ/ਚੁਕਿਆ ਸੀ	<i>he had eaten</i>
Feminine singular	ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਸੀ	<i>she had eaten</i>
Formal Masculine plural	ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਸਨ	<i>he/they had eaten</i>
Feminine plural	ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀਆਂ ਸਨ	<i>she/they had eaten</i>

Compound constructions with ਲੈਣਾ, ਦੇਣਾ and ਜਾਣਾ can also be used to express the present and past perfect, most commonly when there is an object present. Notice the following examples:

ਮੈਂ ਖਾਣ ਖਾ ਲਿਆ ਹੈ	<i>I have eaten food.</i>
ਉਸ ਨੇ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਸੁਗਾਰ ਦੇ ਦਿੱਤੀ ਹੈ	<i>He has given us a gift.</i>

The present perfect continuous and the past perfect continuous are expressed in the same manner as the present and past continuous tenses except that an indication of time is used to denote whether or not the action is in the perfect tense.

present continuous	ਬਚਸ਼ ਹੋ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ	<i>It is raining.</i>
present perfect continuous	ਬਚਸ਼ ਹੋ ਦਿਨ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ	<i>It has been raining for two days.</i>
past continuous	ਬਚਸ਼ ਹੋ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ	<i>It was raining.</i>
past perfect continuous	ਬਚਸ਼ ਹੋ ਦਿਨ ਤੋਂ ਹੋ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ	<i>It had been raining for two days.</i>

How did it go?

In Panjabi, *how did it go?* is expressed through the use of the continuous form of ਰਹਿਣਾ. You have already been introduced to ਰਹੀ/ਰਿਹਾ as the continuous tense form of ਰਹਿਣਾ *to stay, to live* equivalent to the English -ing. In Unit 5 Geeta asks Sita: ਤੁੰ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈਂ? literally meaning *What are you doing?* The continuous form of ਰਹਿਣਾ can have another quite different sense as *how did it go?*. Although the form of ਰਹਿਣਾ is in the continuous, the sense of the sentence refers to the past:

ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਇੰਡੀਆ ਦੀ ਫੇਰੀ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਹੀ ? *How was your tour of India?*

ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਦਿਨ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਿਹਾ ? *How was your day?*

ਰਹੀ/ਰਿਹਾ in these examples means outcome or conclusion. Therefore, this sentence has the sense *How did your trip to India go?* and *How did your day go?*. Notice that the form of ਰਹਿਣਾ corresponds with the gender/number character of the object being described, in this case ਫੇਰੀ (trip, tour) which is feminine. *How did it go?* is a colloquial phrase which you will find useful when informally asking someone about their day or trip.

The subjunctive

The subjunctive mood (set of verb tenses) is commonly used when there is a sense of possibility, vagueness or indefiniteness. When the exact time or state of an action is uncertain, the subjunctive is used. The present subjunctive is formed in a way similar to the future tense, except that the -ਗਾ/-ਗੀ/-ਗੇ/-ਗੀਆਂ endings are left out. In English we rarely use the subjunctive mood, but learners of other European languages will be aware of this system of verbal constructions.

ਮੈਂ ਕਰਾਂ
ਅਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੀਏ
ਤੁੰ ਕਰੋਂ
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਬੋਲੋ
ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਬੋਲੋ
ਇਹ/ਊਹ ਬੋਲਣ

The range of situations in which the present subjunctive is used can be best compared with the future tense, as in the following examples:

Future

ਊਹ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਜਾਣਗੀ ?	<i>Where will she go?</i>
ਮੈਂ ਕੁਝ ਕਹਾਂਗੀ	<i>I will say something.</i>
ਅਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਾਂਗੇ ?	<i>What will we do?</i>

Present subjunctive

ਊਹ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਜਾਣੇ ?	<i>Where shall he/she go?</i>
ਮੈਂ ਕੁਝ ਕਹਾਂ ?	<i>Shall/may I say something?</i>
ਅਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰੀਏ ?	<i>What might we do?</i>

The examples of the future tense show that an action is to occur sometime in the future while the present subjunctive gives a sense that an action *may*

happen. The past subjunctive expresses that an action might have happened in the past, but that it did not occur. It is formed in exactly the same way as the present imperfect tense which you learned in Unit 4, and, unlike the present subjunctive, is affected by gender:

past subjunctive

ਮੈਂ ਕਰਦਾ/ਕਰਦੀ
ਅਸੀਂ ਕਰਦੇ/ਕਰਦੀਆਂ
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਰਦਾ/ਕਰਦੀ
ਤੁਸੀਂਹੀਂ ਕਰਦੇ
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਕਰਦਾ/ਕਰਦੀ
ਇਹ/ਉਹ ਕਰਦੇ/ਕਰਦੀਆਂ

The past subjunctive will be illustrated in the following section where conditional sentences will be introduced. The subjunctive is also used when there is a feeling of possibility, commonly expressed through perhaps ਸ਼ਾਇਦ or it is possible ਹੋ ਸਕਦਾ ਹੈ।

ਸ਼ਾਇਦ ਉਹ ਆਵੇ, ਸ਼ਾਇਦ ਨਾ ਆਵੇ *Perhaps he'll come, perhaps he won't come.*
ਹੋ ਸਕਦਾ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਬੱਚੇ ਬਾਹਰ ਹੋਣ *It is possible that the children are outside.*

More complex sentences can be constructed by combining the present tense or present continuous tense to express the nature of the action in question such as *perhaps he might be coming* in which *coming* is in the continuous tense while the sense of possibility is expressed through the subjunctive form of *ਹੋਣਾ* which is *ਹੋਣ*.

ਸ਼ਾਇਦ ਮੁੰਡੇ ਗੁਜਰਾਤੀ ਸਿੱਖ ਰਹੇ ਹੋਣ *Perhaps the boys are learning Gujarati.*
ਸ਼ਾਇਦ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹੋਣ *Perhaps father might be coming.*

The subjunctive is also used in a number of other situations in which necessity, command or obligation are being expressed. Notice such instances in the following examples:

ਜ਼ਰੂਰੀ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਅਸੀਂ ਠੀਕ ਸਮੇਂ ਤੋਂ ਨਿਕਲੀਏ *It is necessary that we leave on time.*
ਉਹ ਨੂੰ ਦੱਸ ਕਿ ਚੁੱਪ ਰਵੇ ! *Tell him to be quiet!*

Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences (i.e. where an action is dependent on a *condition*) in Panjabi are formed by using a sequence of ਜੇ if and ਤਾਂ then. In English conditional sentences also follow a similar pattern: *if he comes, then I*

won't go. In Panjabi this sentence would be ਜੇ ਉਹ ਆਏ ਗਾ ਤਾਂ ਮੈਂ ਨਹੀਂ ਜਾਵਾਂ *gaa.* If the conditional action being referred to is in the future, such as in this example, the verb tense of the *if* clause will be in the future. However, when the action in an *if* clause is not definite or certain, it must be expressed in the subjunctive mood. In the following examples both the future tense and the subjunctive mood are used:

Future

ਜੇ ਉਹ ਆਏ ਗਾ ਤਾਂ ਮੈਂ ਸੌਂਵਾਂ ਗਾ *If he comes (will come), then I'll sleep.*

Subjunctive

ਜੇ ਅਸੀਂ ਸੱਤ ਵਜੇ ਨਿਕਲੀਏ ਤਾਂ ਕਿੰਨੇ *If we leave at 7 o'clock, (then) what time*
ਵਜੇ ਘਰ ਪਹੁੰਚਾਂ ਗੇ ? *will we reach home?*

ਜੇ ਟੈਕਸੀ ਨਾ ਮਿਲੇ ਤਾਂ ਬਸ ਫੜੋ *If you don't get a taxi, then catch a bus.*

The present tense can be used in the *if* clause when the action being referred to is in the past. In the first dialogue in this unit, Paul says to Jaspreet and Simran: ਜੇ ਅਸੀਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਮਿਲਾਏ ਤਾਂ ਅਸੀਂ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਪੁੰਜੇ meaning *If we had met before, then we would have travelled together.*

ਜੇ ਉਹ ਆਉਂਦਾ ਤਾਂ ਮੈਂ ਸੌਂਦਾ *If he had come, I would have slept.*

ਜੇ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਤਾਂ ਜਿਆਦਾ *If you had been with us, we would have enjoyed it more.*

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

Letter writing

Letter writing in Panjabi is similar to English. As *Dear* in English is used, in Panjabi ਪਿਆਰੇ (which translates literally as *dear* or *beloved*) is generally used to address people who are relatively familiar to the writer. For more formal letters ਪਿਆਰੇ is often too intimate an address, so ਮਨਯੋਗ (respected) followed by the name of the person or ਸ਼੍ਰੀਮਾਨ ਜੀ (Dear Sir) are often more appropriate when writing to someone not known to you.

Greetings (see Unit 1) such as ਸਾਡਿ ਸ਼੍ਰੀ ਅਕਲ, ਨਮਸਕਾਰ and ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮ are commonly placed after the initial address on the line below, according to the religion of the addressee. The body of the letter follows no specific rules. However, a letter is generally concluded with the equivalent of the appropriate endings such as ਪਿਆਰ ਨਾਲ *with affection*, ਭੁਹਡਾ ਦੇਸਤ *your*

friend, ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਬੋਟੀਆਂ your daughters (as Jaspreet and Simran finish their letter to their parents), or whichever ending is fitting.

Doaba

Jaspreet and Simrans's trip to Jalandhar is no surprise when considering the pattern of migration from Panjab. The doaba region of which Jalandhar is a central town, is the main area in India from which migration has taken place. People from this region can be found in the four corners of the world. In fact the 'doaba' dialect is what you are most likely to encounter if you are learning and using Panjabi in the west. It is often said that there is no family in the doaba without a relative in the USA, UK, Far East or the Gulf.

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Write in Panjabi

Make the following statements in Panjabi according to the directions in parentheses:

- I have eaten (singular/male)
- I have eaten (singular/female)
- They had spoken (plural/male)
- He had been speaking for ten minutes (singular/masculine)

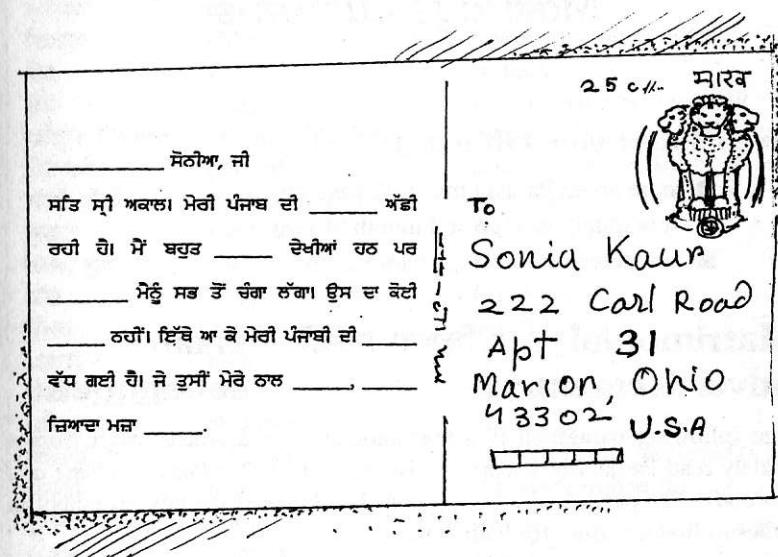
2. Listening

Paul is at the bank changing some money. Listen to the dialogue between Paul and the bank teller on the audio tape. Answer the following questions about the dialogue:

- ਪੈਲ ਕੋਲ ਕਿਹੜੇ ਦੇਸ਼ ਦੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਹਨ ?
 ਪੈਲ ਕਿਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਬਦਲਣਾ ਚਾਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ ?
 ਅੱਜ ਦਾ ਰੇਟ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
 ਕੀ ਰੁਪਏਂਦਾਂ ਦਾ ਰੇਟ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਤੋਂ ਘੱਟ ਹੈ ਜਾਂ ਵੱਧ ?
 ਪੈਲ ਕੋਲ ਕਿਹੜਾ ਪਾਸਪੋਰਟ ਹੈ ?

3. Writing a postcard

You are writing a postcard to your friend Sonia about your stay in Panjab. Some words are missing. Select the appropriate words from the list to complete the postcard.



- ਤਾਂ ■ ਜਗਾ ■ ਪਿਆਰੇ ■ ਚੁਣੇ ■ ਫੇਰੀ ■ ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ
 ■ ਸ਼ਖਦਾਵਲੀ ■ ਆਉਂਦਾ ■ ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ

13 | ਵਿਆਹ ਦੀਆਂ ਰਸਮਾਂ

viaah deeaan rasmaan

Marriage customs

In this unit you will learn:

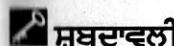
- more about Panjabi marriage customs
- how to tell the date and month of year
- how to express *sort of, rather*

Matrimonial ਵਿਆਹ ਸਬੰਧੀ ਵਿਆਹ advertisement sabandhee

The following paragraph is a matrimonial advertisement taken from a widely read Panjabi newspaper in Britain called *Des Pardes* (*Home and Abroad*). The parents of a young man have placed the advertisement in order to find a partner for their son.

ਲੁਧਿਆਣੇ ਤੋਂ ਪਤਵੰਤੇ ਹਿੰਦੂ ਖਤਰੀ ਮਾਪਿਆਂ ਦੇ ਲੜਕੇ ਲਈ ਯੋਗ ਰਿਸ਼ਤੇ ਦੀ ਲੋੜ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕਾ ਪਾੜਿਆ ਲਿਖਿਆ, ਪੇਸ਼ਾਵਰ, ਸੱਚੀ ਮੁੱਚੀ ਸੁਹਣਾ ਤੇ ਨਰਮ ਸੁਭਾ ਦਾ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕੇ ਦਾ ਕੱਦ 5 ਫੁੱਟ 8 ਇੰਚ ਤੇ ਉਮਰ 25 ਸਾਲ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕੀ ਪਤਲੀ, ਗੋਰੀ, ਸੁਹਣੀ, ਬਿਟਿਸ ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀਅਤ ਵਾਲੀ, ਪੜ੍ਹੀ ਲਖੀ, ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੌਕਰੀ ਤੇ ਲੱਗੀ ਹੋਣੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। ਪੂਰਬ ਤੇ ਪੱਛਮ ਦੀਆਂ ਕਦਰਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਸਮਝਣ ਵਾਲੀ ਹੋਣੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕੀ ਦੀ ਉਮਰ 25 ਸਾਲ ਤੋਂ ਵੱਧ ਨਾ ਹੋਵੇ। ਛੋਟੇ ਵਾਪਸ ਭੇਜ ਦਿੱਤੀ ਜਾਏ ਗੀ। ਤਲਾਕ ਸ਼ੁਦਾ ਕੜੀਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਲਿਖਣ ਦੀ ਲੋੜ ਨਹੀਂ। ਸੰਪਰਕ ਕਰੋ: Box number 2961 c/o Des Pardes.

Respectable Hindu Khatri parents from Ludhiana seek suitable match for their son. The boy is educated, a professional, genuinely handsome and kind natured. The boy is 5 ft 8 inches tall and he is 28 years old. The girl should be slim, fair, beautiful, a British citizen, educated and professionally employed. Should understand Eastern and Western values and be not more than 25 years of age. Photo returnable. Divorcees need not apply. Contact: Box number 2961 c/o Des Pardes.

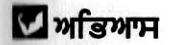


ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਪਤਵੰਤੇ	patvante	respectable (v.)
ਖਤਰੀ	khatree	Khatri (m./f.) (caste)
ਮਾਪਿਆਂ	maapiaan	parents (m.)
ਰਿਸ਼ਤਾ	rishtaa	(marriage) relation (m.)
ਯੋਗ	yog	suitable
ਲੋੜ	lorh	require, necessity, wanted
ਪਾੜਿਆ ਲਿਖਿਆ	parhhiaa likhiaa	educated (v.)
ਪੇਸ਼ਾਵਰ	pesaavar	professional (m./f.)
ਸੱਚੀ ਮੁੱਚੀ	sachchee muchchee	genuinely
ਸੁਹਣਾ	suhnhaa	handsome (v.)
ਨਰਮ ਸੁਭਾ	naram subhaa	kind natured (m.)
ਕੱਦ	kadd	height (m.)
ਉਮਰ	umar	age (f.)
ਪਤਲੀ	patlee	thin, slim (v.)
ਗੋਰੀ	goree	fair, white (v.)
ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀਅਤ	shahireeat	citizen (f.)
ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੌਕਰੀ	vihaaree naukaree	professionally employed (f.)
ਨੌਕਰੀ	naukaree	job, employment (f.)
ਪੂਰਬ	poorab	east (m.)
ਪੱਛਮ	pachcham	west (m.)
ਕਦਰਾਂ	kadraan	values (f.)
ਵਾਪਸ	vaapas	return
ਭੇਜਣਾ	bhejnhaa	to send
ਤਲਾਕ	talaak	divorce (m.)
ਸੰਪਰਕ	sanparak	contact (m.)



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the passage and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Answer the questions about the passage

- a. ਕੀ ਲੜਕੇ ਦੇ ਮਾਪੇ ਹਿੰਦੂ ਹਨ ?
- b. ਕੀ ਲੜਕਾ ਪਾੜਿਆ ਲਿਖਿਆ ਹੈ ?
- c. ਕੀ ਲੜਕੀ 20 ਸਾਲ ਤੋਂ ਘੱਟ ਹੋਵੇ ?

2. Reply to matrimonial advertisement

The following is a reply to the matrimonial advertisement. From the personal information given, decide whether or not the couple are a suitable match (i.e. they have at least five of the qualities that were specified in the advertisement). It's up to you to decide!

Box number 2961 c/o ਦੇਸ਼ ਪਰਦੇਸ਼:

ਦਿੱਲੀ ਤੋਂ ਮਾਪੇ ਆਪਣੀ ਲਈ ਰਿਸ਼ਤਾ ਲੱਭ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ। ਲੜਕੀ ਸੁਹਣੀ ਤੇ ਪਤਲੀ ਹੈ। ਪੜ੍ਹੀ ਲਖਿ ਹੈ ਪਰ ਨੌਕਰੀ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰਦੀ ਹੈ। ਭਾਰਤੀ ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀਅਤ ਵਾਲੀ ਹੈ। ਪੁਰਖ ਤੇ ਪੱਛਮ ਦੀਆਂ ਕਟਰਾਂ ਸਮਝਣ ਵਾਲੀ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਉਸ ਦੀ ਉਮਰ 25 ਸਾਲਾਂ ਦੀ ਹੈ। ਵਿਆਹ ਇੱਕ ਵਰੀ ਹੋ ਚੁਕਾ ਹੈ।

3. Say or write in the correct word order

- ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੋਕਰੀ ਹੈ ਲੜਕੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਤੇ ਹੋਣੀ ਲੱਗੀ
- ਤਲਾਬ ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀ ਲਿਖਣ ਨੂੰ ਲੜਕੀਆਂ ਲੋੜ ਦੀ ਨਹੀਂ
- ਉਮਰ ਦੀ ਲੜਕੀ 24 ਸਾਲ ਹੋਵੇ ਵੱਧ ਨਾ ਤੋਂ
- ਲੜਕਾ ਸੁਹਣਾ ਸੱਚੀ ਮੁੱਚੀ ਹੈ

• A wedding invitation

■ ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ

gall baat saddaa pattar

Debra has received an invitation to attend a Panjabi wedding. Since she has never been to a Panjabi wedding, she has gone to her friend Darshana to ask her what the ceremonies will be like.

- ਡੇਬਰਾ ਮੇਰੀ ਸਹੇਲੀ ਜੀਤੀ ਦੇ ਵਿਆਹ ਦਾ ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ ਆਇਆ ਹੈ। ਵਿਆਹ 25 ਜਨਵਰੀ ਨੂੰ ਹੈ। ਮੈਨੂੰ ਮਹਿੰਦੀ ਬਚੇ ਕੁਝ ਦੱਸਾ।
- ਦਰਸ਼ਨ ਮਹਿੰਦੀ ਪਰਵਾਰਕ ਰਸਮ ਹੈ। ਕੁਜੀਆਂ ਆਪਣੇ ਹੱਥਾਂ ਤੇ ਮਹਿੰਦੀ ਲਗਾਉਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ। ਕਈ ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ ਦੇ ਨਮੂਨੇ ਬਣਾਉਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ ਅਤੇ ਵਿਆਹ ਦੇ ਗੀਤ ਵੀ ਗਾਏ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਹਨ।
- ਡੇਬਰਾ ਕੀ ਆਦਮੀ ਇਸ ਰਸਮ ਵਿਚ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਹਨ ?
- ਦਰਸ਼ਨ ਨਹੀਂ, ਇਹ ਕੇਵਲ ਅੰਰਤਾਂ ਲਈ ਹੈ। ਆਦਮੀ ਬਰਾਤ ਵਿਚ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਹਨ।
- ਡੇਬਰਾ ਬਰਾਤ ਦਾ ਕੀ ਮਤਲਬ ਹੈ ?

- ਦਰਸ਼ਨ ਬਰਾਤ ਵਿਚ ਲਾੜੇ ਦੇ ਰਿਸ਼ਤੇਦਾਰ ਅਤੇ ਦੇਸਤ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਹਨ। ਇਹ ਛੋਟਾ ਜੇਹਾ ਜਲ੍ਹਸ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ। ਮੰਡਾ ਘੋੜੀ ਤੇ ਚੜ੍ਹਿਆ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਅੱਗੇ ਅੱਗੇ ਵਜੇ ਵਾਲੇ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਹਨ। ਜਾਂਵੀ ਭੰਗੜਾ ਪਾਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ।
- ਡੇਬਰਾ ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ ਤੇ ਲਿਖਿਆ ਹੋਇਆ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਡੋਲੀ ਚਾਰ ਵਜੇ ਤੁਰੇਗੀ। ਇਹ ਕੀ ਰਸਮ ਹੈ ?
- ਦਰਸ਼ਨ ਡੋਲੀ ਦਾ ਮਤਲਬ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਕੁਜੀ ਦਾ ਪੇਕੇ ਛੱਡ ਕੇ ਸਹੁਰੇ ਜਾਣਾ। ਇਹ ਮੌਕਾ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਤੇ ਗਮੀ ਦਾ ਮੇਲ ਹੈ।
- ਡੇਬਰਾ ਇਹ ਗੱਲ ਬੜੀ ਦਿਲਚਸਪ ਲੱਗਦੀ ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਵਿਆਹ ਤੇ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ ਉਤਸੁਕ ਹਾਂ।
- Debra My friend Jeeti's wedding invitation has come. The wedding is on the 28th of January. Tell me something about *mehndi*.
- Darshana *Mehndi* is a family custom. Girls put henna on their hands. They draw different designs and wedding songs are sung.
- Debra Are men present during this ritual?
- Darshana No. This is just for the women. Men are present at the *baraat*.
- Debra What is the meaning of *baraat*?
- Darshana At the *baraat* the groom's relatives and friends are present. This is a sort of small procession. The boy is on a mare and in front are some musicians. The wedding party performs *bhangra* (a folk dance of Panjab).
- Debra It's written on the invitation that the *doli* will leave at four o'clock. What is this custom?
- Darshana *Doli* means that the girl leaves her family's home to go to her in-laws. This time is a happy and sad occasion.
- Debra This seems interesting. I look forward to going to the wedding!



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਸਹੇਲੀ	sahelee	friend (f.)
ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ	saddaa pattar	invitation (m.)
ਮਹਿੰਦੀ	mahindee	henna (f.)
ਜਾਣਾ	jaanhnaa	to know
ਅਪਣਾ	aapnhaa	one's own
ਪਰਵਾਰਕ	parvaarak	family (relating to family)
ਰਸਮ	rasam	custom, ritual (f.)
ਕਈ ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ	kaee tar-h-aan	different types
ਨਮੂਨਾ	namoonaa	pattern, design (m.)
ਗੀਤ	geet	song (m.)
ਗਾਣਾ	gaanhaa	to sing

ਸ਼ਾਮਲ	shaamal	<i>to be present, to join or participate in the procession of the groom's relatives and friends (f.)</i>
ਬਰਾਤ	baraat	<i>meaning, definition (m.)</i>
ਮਤਲਬ	matlab	<i>groom (m.)</i>
ਲਾੜਾ	laarhaa	<i>relatives (m./f.)</i>
ਰਿਸਤੇਦਾਰ	rishtedaar	<i>jihaa</i>
ਜਿਹਾ		<i>sort of, rather</i>
ਜਲੂਸ	jaloos	<i>procession, parade (m.)</i>
ਘੋੜੀ	ghorhee	<i>mare (f.)</i>
ਚੜ੍ਹਨਾ	charhhnaa	<i>to be upon, to ride</i>
ਵਜੇ ਵਾਲੇ	vaaje vaale	<i>band of musicians (m.)</i>
ਜਾਨ੍ਹੀ	jaannjee	<i>members of groom's wedding party (m./f.)</i>
ਭੰਗੜਾ	bhangraa	<i>bhangra (m.) (style of Panjabi dance)</i> <i>(see Commentary Unit 16)</i>
ਡੋਲੀ	dolee	<i>ceremony (f.) bidding farewell to the bride (see Commentary)</i>
ਤੁਰਨਾ	turnaa	<i>to walk, to depart, to leave</i>
ਪੇਕੇ	peke	<i>bride's family, bride's parents (m.)</i>
ਛੱਡਨਾ	chaddnaa	<i>to leave</i>
ਸਹੁਰੇ	sahure	<i>in-laws (m.)</i>
ਮੌਕਾ	maukaa	<i>opportunity, occasion (m.)</i>
ਖੁਸ਼ੀ	khushee	<i>happiness (f.)</i>
ਗਾਮੀ	ghamee	<i>sadness (f.)</i>
ਮੇਲ	mel	<i>meeting, combination (m.)</i>
ਦਿਲਚਸਪ	dilchasp	<i>interesting</i>
ਉਤਸੁਕ	utsuk	<i>anxious, awaiting</i>

✓ ਅਭਿਆਸ**abhiaas Exercises**

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Match the questions with the correct answer

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. ਮਹਿੰਦੀ ਦੀ ਰਸਮ ਕੀ ਹੈ ? | a. ਵਿਆਹ 20 ਜਨਵਰੀ ਨੂੰ ਹੈ |
| 2. ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਸ ਤਾਰੀਖ ਨੂੰ ਹੈ ? | b. ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਆਪਣੇ ਹੱਥਾਂ ਤੇ ਮਹਿੰਦੀ ਲਗਾਉਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ |
| 3. ਬਰਾਤ ਵਿਚ ਕੌਣ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੁੰਦਾ ਹੈ ? | c. ਕੁੜੀ ਦਾ ਪੇਕੇ ਛੱਡ ਕੇ ਸਹੁਰੇ ਜਾਣ ਨੂੰ ਡੋਲੀ ਕਿਹਾ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ |
| 4. ਡੋਲੀ ਕੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਹੈ ? | d. ਲੜਕੇ ਦੇ ਦੋਸਤ ਅਤੇ ਰਿਸਤੇਦਾਰ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਹਨ |

Bhupinder Singh and Harjinder Kaur Panesar

cordially request your company at the wedding of their son

Manjit Singh to Kanwaljit Kaur

daughter of Gurbax Singh and Jasvir Kaur Kalsi, Ilford

on May 23 at the Sikh Gurdwara of North London

Baraat: 9:30 a.m. Anand Karaj: 10 a.m. Guru ka langar: 12:00

RSVP

The Panesar Family
23 Old Road, Edinburgh, Scotland

2. Answer the questions about the wedding invitation

- ਮੁੰਡੇ ਦੇ ਮਾਪੇ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ?
- ਕੁੜੀ ਦੇ ਮਾਪੇ ਕਿੱਥੋਂ ਦੇ ਹਨ ?
- ਮੁੰਡ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
- ਕੁੜੀ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹੈ ?
- ਕੁੜੀ ਦੇ ਮਾਪਿਆਂ ਦੇ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹਨ ?
- ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਹੜੇ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਵਿਚ ਹੋ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ ?
- ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਤਾਰੀਖ ਨੂੰ ਹੈ ?
- ਬਰਾਤ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਤੁਰੇਗੀ ?
- ਅੰਨਟ ਕਾਰਜ ਕਦੋਂ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੋਣਾ ਹੈ ?
- ਗੁਰੂ ਕਾ ਲੰਗਰ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ ਵਰਤੇ ਗਾ ?

**bolee baare bolee baare Language points****Participial uses**

A participle is a verb which is used to describe an object or an action. Therefore, participle constructions in Panjabi can either be used adjectively to describe nouns or adverbially to describe actions. You will remember from the matrimonial advertisement that the boy is described as *educated*. In Panjabi this was expressed as *ਪਹੜਾਂ ਲਿਖਿਆ*. Both verbs *ਪਹੜਨ*

and **ਲਿਖਣਾ** are combined in their perfect forms in agreement with **ਲੜਕਾ**. Similarly, the prospective girl was said to be *educated*, expressed as **ਪੜ੍ਹੀ ਲਿਖੀ**, also showing agreement with the object being described. Often, the perfect forms of **ਹੋਣਾ** can also be used to strengthen the participial expression. Here are some more examples of how the participle can be used in Panjabi:

Adjective participles

ਮੈਂ ਉਬਲੇ ਹੋਏ ਅੰਡੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਖਾਂਦਾ
ਉਹ ਬੈਠਾ ਹੋਇਆ ਆਦਮੀ ਕੌਣ ਹੈ ?

I don't eat boiled eggs.
*Who is that man sitting down
(i.e. seated)?*
Mum picked up the scared girl.

ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਡਰੀ ਹੋਈ ਕੁੜੀ ਨੂੰ ਚੁੱਕ ਲਿਆ

Adverbial participles

ਉਹ ਮੁਸਕਰਾਂਦਾ ਹੋਇਆ ਲਤੀਫ਼ਾ ਸੁਣ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ *He was telling a joke smilingly.*

Another use of the participle is in order to emphasise the on-going nature or repetitiveness of the action being described. This can be done in two ways: by repeating the verb in the simple present tense or by using the past participle with a form of **ਜਾਣਾ**, both forms agreeing with the subject.

ਪੜ੍ਹਦੇ ਪੜ੍ਹਦੇ ਅਸੀਂ ਥੱਕ ਗਏ ਹਾਂ *We are tired from constantly studying.*
ਰਸਤੇ ਵਿਚ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਮਿਲਣਾ *As you go (along) the way, come and
see me.*
ਛੋਟੀ ਲੜਕੀ ਬੋਲੀ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ *The little girl keeps on talking.*

The particle **ਜਿਹਾ**

ਜਿਹਾ is a particle which is added after an adjective in order to give it a modest or diluted sense. In English the sense of a description is diluted in a number of different ways, most commonly by using such words as rather, sort of, quite, and the suffix -ish. The form of **ਜਿਹਾ** is affected by the gender and number of the noun being described and can therefore also appear in the following forms: **ਜਿਹੀ**, **ਜਿਹੇ** and **ਜਿਹੀਆਂ**.

ਛੋਟਾ ਜਿਹਾ ਘਰ *rather a small house.*
ਥੋੜਾ ਜਿਹਾ *quite a small (amount).*
ਪੁਰਾਣੀ ਜਿਹੀ ਗੱਡੀ *an old-ish car.*

The opposite of **ਜਿਹਾ**, in this sense, is **ਸਾਰਾ**. This is used to exaggerate rather than dilute a description, such as in Unit 11 when the booking clerk is telling the girls how popular the train to Amritsar, Shan-e-Panjab, is: **ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ ਸੈਲਾਨੀ ਇਸ ਗੱਡੀ ਵਿਚ ਸਫਰ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਨ** *A lot of tourists travel on this train.*

The particle **-ਜਿਹਾ** can also follow a noun in order to give the sense *like*. Therefore, the noun preceding **-ਜਿਹਾ** represents what the description is being likened to. For example:

ਪਟਕਾ -ਜਿਹਾ *like a firecracker.*

When asking the question *what sort of?* or *what is it like?* then **ਕਿਹੋ** is combined with **ਜਿਹਾ**:

ਕਿਹੋ ਜਿਹਾ ਮਕਾਨ ? *what sort of house?*
ਕਿਹੋ ਜਿਹੇ ਕਪੜੇ ? *what sort of clothes?*

Reflexive adjectives and pronouns

In English *myself* and *themselves* are reflexive pronouns indicating that the action is directed towards or belongs to the subject of the sentence. In Panjabi the reflexive adjective **ਅਪਣਾ** means *one's own* and is defined by the noun or pronoun being affected by the reflexive nature of the sentence. Like other adjectives, it also changes according to the gender and number of the object that it is describing as well as in the oblique form.

ਉਹ ਅਪਣੇ ਘਰ ਵਿਚ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹੈ	<i>He lives in his own house.</i>
ਉਹ ਅਪਣੇ ਭਰਾ ਨਾਲ ਆਇਆ ਹੈ	<i>He has come with his (own) brother</i>
ਹਰ ਚੀਜ਼ ਅਪਣੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਤੇ ਹੋਣੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ	<i>Everything should be in its proper place.</i>
ਅਪਣੀਆਂ ਲੜਕੀਆਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ ?	<i>What do your (own) daughters do?</i>

Reflexive pronouns, unlike reflexive adjectives, do not rely upon another noun or adjective to be defined. If you recall from Unit 2, pronouns were introduced as naming words. The reflexive pronouns, in a similar way, are also naming words which are used to represent a person. The most common reflexive pronoun is **ਅਪ** which translates as *by oneself*. **ਖੁਦ** which is borrowed from Persian, can also be used to give the same sense. Note the following examples:

ਮੈਂ ਇਹ ਕੰਮ ਆਪ ਕਰਾਂ ਗਾ	<i>I will do this work myself.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਸਰਾ ਖਣਾ ਖੁਦ ਬਣਾਇਆ ਹੈ	<i>I have made all the food myself.</i>
ਉਹ ਨੇ ਆਪ ਜਾ ਕੇ ਡਲ ਖਰੀਦਿਆ	<i>She went and bought fruit herself.</i>

The reflexive adjective **ਆਪਣਾ** and the reflexive pronoun **ਆਪ** can be combined to give another meaning: *on one's own or without anyone's help* **ਆਪਣੇ ਆਪ**.

ਕਿਰਨ ਆਪਣੇ ਆਪ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਪੜ੍ਹਦੀ ਹੈ	<i>Kiran studies Panjabi on her own (without anyone else's help).</i>
ਸੰਜੀਵ ਆਪਣੇ ਆਪ ਨੂੰ ਬਹੁਤ ਸਮਝਦਾ ਹੈ	<i>Sanjeev thinks highly of himself.</i>

ਆਪਸ, meaning *fraternity*, is used to express situations of mutuality or reciprocity with the postposition **ਵਿਚ** to form *among or between*.

ਅਸੀਂ ਆਪਸ ਵਿਚ ਗੱਲ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਸੀ	<i>We were talking among ourselves.</i>
ਬੱਚੇ ਆਪਸ ਵਿਚ ਖੇਡ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ	<i>The children were playing among themselves.</i>

Finally, **ਆਪਣਾ** is used specifically with a group of people otherwise referred to as **ਆਸੀਂ us**. Therefore, the new meaning given by the reflexive pronoun is *let's* or *all of us*.

ਆਪਣਾ ਚਲੀਓ let's go

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

1. What's the date today?

When asking someone today's date in Panjabi, you would say **ਅੱਜ ਕੀ ਤਾਰੀਖ ਹੈ ?** This is different from asking someone the day or day of the week, as explained in Unit 7 with the words **ਦਿਨ day** and **ਵਾਰ day of the week**. **ਤਾਰੀਖ** literally means *date* and the reply to your question would be a numerical figure of the date accompanied by the month of the year: **ਅੱਜ ਅਠਾਰਾਂ ਚੁਨ ਹੈ**. *Today is the 18th of June.* It is also not uncommon to use ordinal numbers for the first three or four days of the month: **ਅੱਜ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਦੀ ਤੀਜੀ ਤਾਰੀਖ ਹੈ**. *It is the third day of the month.*

Months of the year

ਜਨਵਰੀ	janvaree	January
ਫਰਵਰੀ	farvaree	February
ਮਾਰਚ	maarch	March
ਅਪ੍ਰੈਲ	apral	April
ਮਈ	maee	May
ਯੂਨ	joon	June
ਜੁਲਾਈ	julaaee	July
ਅਗਸਤ	agast	August
ਸਤੰਬਰ	satan_bar	September
ਅਕਤੂਬਰ	aktoobar	October
ਨਵੰਬਰ	navan_bar	November
ਦਸੰਬਰ	dasanbar	December

The four seasons of the year in English are spring, autumn, winter and summer which describe the weather of the period. In Panjabi there are terms less influenced by English (as the months of the year) to denote the seasons which, in Pakistan and North India, are quite distinctive.

ਬਸੰਤ	basant	spring
ਗਰਮੀ	garmee	summer
ਬਰਸਤ	barsaat	rainy season
ਪੱਤੜੜ	pattjharh	autumn
ਸਰਦੀ	sardee	winter

2. Marriage customs

Punjabi weddings are lavish affairs with numbers of guests usually in the hundreds, sometimes in the thousands, and large amounts of food and decoration. Weddings are seen as social occasions and signify the coming together of two families rather than of two individuals, as is traditionally the case in western marriages. It is this aspect of Panjabi – and most other South Asian – weddings that leads to them often being labelled as 'arranged'. Usually the families arrange the weddings of their offspring, in that families are present at the meeting of the man and woman. There is a huge variety in the process of arranging marriages from one extreme where the man and woman do not meet until the wedding day (which is rare in the diaspora) to a situation where the man and woman see each other and make their own decision about whether they wish to marry or not. It is this latter version that is more usual in the diaspora.



When families are involved in the selection of the partner, they take into account a range of factors, such as those outlined in the advert at the beginning of this unit. Alongside education and other social aspects, the advert specifies a particular caste group, in this case **Khatri**. Caste is a form of social grouping and organisation which is based upon occupational traditions as well as kinship ties. Even in the diaspora, caste affiliations are still adhered to and most advertisements of this kind carry some sort of caste affiliation. Some common castes are **Jat**, **Ramgharia** and **Brahmin**.

The wedding ceremonies that we described in this unit are religion-neutral in the Panjabi context and most Sikh, Hindu and Muslim weddings share these customs. The actual wedding vows, however, are of a religious nature and for Sikhs this is called the **Anand Karaj**, for Hindus it is the **Vivaah** and for Muslims the **Nikah**. For all Panjabis, however, weddings are major social events and involve spectacles of emotion, family participation and financial expenditure.

A common Panjabi wedding will involve a **mehndi** ritual, where the bride is adorned on her hands and feet with exquisite patterns in dye. The groom arrives on horseback with his relatives at the bride's house and the wedding ceremony takes place here. The ceremony is followed by a feast. The saddest occasion is when the bride is seen off at the end of the ceremony. This is called the **doli** and often involves protracted crying and sadness. Each of the events of the Panjabi wedding is accompanied by music.



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiyas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Write a matrimonial advertisement

Prepare a matrimonial advertisement in Panjabi on behalf of the parents of a girl giving the following information:

- The parents are Sikhs living in London.
- The girl is beautiful, educated and working in a bank.
- The girl is 25 years of age and is 5' 3" tall.
- The boy should be from a respectable family, be a British citizen and professionally employed.

2. Complete the sentences

Use the appropriate forms of **ਆਪਣਾ** and **ਜਿਹਾ**.

- ਥੋੜਾ _____ ਹੋਰ ਵੱਧ ਦੇਵੋ। *Give me a little more milk.*
- ਮੈਂ _____ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਨਾਲ ਆਇਆ ਹਾਂ। *I have come with my father.*
- ਮੇਰੀਆਂ _____ ਭੈਟਾਂ ਵਿਆਹ ਤੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਗਈਆਂ। *My own sisters didn't go to the wedding.*
- ਉਹ ਕਿਹੋ _____ ਲੋਕ ਸਨ ? *What sort of people were they?*

3. Fill in the blanks

Use the appropriate participle expressions.

- a. _____ ਅੰਡੇ *boiled eggs*
- b. _____ ਮੁੰਡਾ *(scared boy)*
- c. _____ ਲੜਕਾ *(educated boy)*

4. Listening

The following passage has been recorded on the audio tape. Listen to it and then answer the questions in Panjabi.

ਡੇਬਰਾ ਨੂੰ ਜੀਤੀ ਦੇ ਵਿਆਹ ਦਾ ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ ਆਇਆ ਹੈ। ਵਿਆਹ 25 ਜਨਵਰੀ ਨੂੰ ਹੈ। ਡੇਬਰਾ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਕਦੇ ਕਿਸੇ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਵਿਆਹ ਤੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਗਈ। ਉਹ ਵਿਆਹ ਦੀਆਂ ਰਸਮਾਂ ਬਾਰੇ ਜਾਣਨ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੀ ਹੈ। ਇਸ ਲਈ ਉਹ ਆਪਣੀ ਸਹੇਲੀ ਦਰਸ਼ਨਾ ਕੋਲ ਗਈ ਹੈ।

- a. ਵਿਆਹ ਦਾ ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ ਕਿਸ ਨੂੰ ਆਇਆ ਹੈ ?
- b. ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਸ ਦਾ ਹੈ ?
- c. ਕੀ ਡੇਬਰਾ ਕਦੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਵਿਆਹ ਤੇ ਗਈ ਹੈ ?
- d. ਵਿਆਹ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਤਾਰੀਖ ਹੈ ?
- e. ਡੇਬਰਾ ਦਰਸ਼ਨਾ ਕੋਲ ਕਿਉਂ ਗਈ ਹੈ ?

14 | ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਮੇਰੇ ਬਾਰੇ ਕੀ ਕਿਹਾ ਸੀ ? **uhnaan ne mere baare kee kihaa see?**

What did they say about me?

In this unit you will learn:

- how to have a conversation about school
- how to speak with a police officer and a social worker
- how to use purpose clauses with *so that*

1 Did you meet my class teacher?

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 1 ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਮੇਰੇ ਸ਼੍ਰੋਣੀ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਨੂੰ ਮਿਲੇ ਸੀ ?

**gall baat 1 kee tuseen mere shrenhee
adhiaapak noon mile see?**

Mr Lall has just attended his son Ramesh's parents' evening at his school. Mr Lall has come home and is talking to Ramesh.

ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਪਾਪ ਜੀ ! ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਮੇਰੇ ਸ਼੍ਰੋਣੀ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਨੂੰ ਮਿਲੇ ਸੀ ?
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਲਲ ਹਾਂ, ਮੈਂ ਉਸ ਤੋਂ ਇਲਾਵਾ ਤੇਰੇ ਦੂਜੇ ਮਜ਼ਮੂਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਅਧਿਆਪਕਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਵੀ ਮਿਲਿਆ ਸੀ।

ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਮੇਰੇ ਬਾਰੇ ਕੀ ਕਿਹਾ ਸੀ ?

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਲਲ ਹਿਸਾਬ ਦੇ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਨੇ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਤੂੰ ਘਰ ਦਾ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਨ ਵਿਚ ਲਾ ਪਰਵਹ ਹੈਂ ਅਤੇ ਕਲਾਸ ਵਿਚ ਗਲੜੀ ਹੈਂ।

ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਉਹ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਪਸੰਦ ਨਹੀਂ ਕਰਦਾ। ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ੀ ਦੇ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਨੇ ਕੀ ਕਿਹਾ ?

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਲਲ ਉਸ ਨੇ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਵਿਚ ਲਿਆਕਤ ਹੈ ਪਰ ਉਹ ਵਰਤਦਾ ਨਹੀਂ।

ਰਮੇਸ਼ ਉਹ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਚੰਗੀ ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ ਪੜ੍ਹਦਾ ਨਹੀਂ।

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਲਲ ਪੈਰ ! ਤੈਨੂੰ ਪੜ੍ਹਾਈ ਵਿਚ ਮਿਹਨਤ ਕਰਨੀ ਚਾਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ ਤਾਂ ਕਿ ਤੂੰ ਚੰਗੇ ਗਰੇਡ ਲੈ ਕੇ ਡਕਟਰ ਬਣ ਸਕੋ।

Ramesh Dad! Did you meet my class teacher?

Mr Lall Yes and apart from him I also met your other subject teachers.

Ramesh
Mr Lall

What did they say about me?
The maths teacher said that you were careless in doing your homework and talkative in class.
He doesn't like me. What did the English teacher say?
He said that Ramesh has the ability but does not use it.
He does not teach us properly.
Anyway! You should study hard so that you get good grades and can become a doctor.

Ramesh
Mr Lall
Ramesh
Mr Lall

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਸ਼੍ਰੇਣੀ	shrenhee	class (f.)
ਅਧਿਆਪਕ	adhiapak	teacher (m./f.)
ਤੋਂ ਇਲਾਵਾ	ton ilaavaa	apart from, besides
ਦੂਜੇ	dooje	others
ਮਜ਼ਮੂਨਾਂ	mazmoonaan	subjects (m.)
ਹਿਸਾਬ	hisaab	maths (m.)
ਘਰ ਦਾ ਕੰਮ	ghar daa kaanm	homework (m.)
ਲਾ ਪਰਵਾਹ	laa parvaah	careless
ਗਲੜੀ	gaalrhee	talkative
ਲਿਆਕਤ	liaakat	ability (f.)
ਵਰਤਣਾ	vartnhaa	to use
ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ	tar-h-aan	way, style
ਪੜਾਉਣਾ	parhhaaunhaa	to teach
ਖੈਰ	khair	anyway
ਪੜਾਈ	parhhaaee	studies (f.)
ਤਾਂ ਕਿ	taan ki	so that
ਗਰੇਡ	gared	grade (m.)
ਬਣਨਾ	banhnaa	to become

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

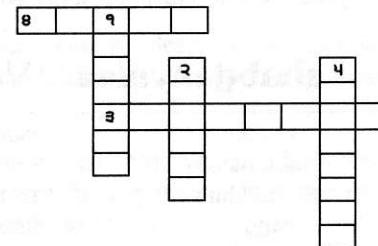
1. Insert the missing vowels

The vowel signs in the following sentences are missing. Rewrite them after inserting the vowels and joining the letters.

- ਪੜ ਜ ! ਕ /ਤ ਸਂ / ਮਰ / ਸ੍ਰੁਟ / ਅਧਿਆਪਕ / ਨੰ / ਮਲ / ਸ ?
- ਓਹ / ਸਨੌਰ / ਚੰਗ / ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ / ਪੜ੍ਹਦਾ / ਨਹਾਂ।
- ਤਨੌਰ / ਪੜ੍ਹਦ / ਵਰ / ਮਹਨਤ / ਕਰਨ / ਚਹਦ / ਹ।

2. Crossword

Complete the crossword in English using the clues given in Panjabi.



2 Yes, officer

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਹਾਂ ਜੀ ਅਫਸਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ

gall baat 2 haan jee, afsar saahib

Sheela has been stopped by a police officer for using her mobile phone while driving her car.

ਪੁਲਿਸ ਅਫਸਰ ਬੀਬੀ ਜੀ, ਕਾਰ ਇੱਕ ਪਸੇ ਖੜ੍ਹੀ ਕਰੋ ਅਤੇ ਮੋਬਾਇਲ ਫੋਨ ਬੰਦ ਕਰੋ ਤਾਂ ਕਿ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸੂਣ ਸਕੋ।

ਸ਼ੀਲਾ ਹਾਂ ਜੀ ਅਫਸਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਅਪਰਾਧ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ। ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਤੇ ਕਾਰ ਚਲਾਇਆਂ ਮੋਬਾਇਲ ਫੋਨ ਦੀ ਵਰਤੋਂ ਕਰਨ ਦਾ ਦੋਸ਼ ਲਗਾਇਆ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ।

ਸ਼ੀਲਾ ਮੈਂ ਕੇਵਲ ਇਕ ਮਿੰਟ ਲਈ ਫੋਨ ਵਰਤ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਾਰ ਤੋਂ ਬਾਹਰ ਆਓ ਅਤੇ ਆਪਣਾ ਲਾਈਸੈਂਸ ਦਿਖਾਓ।

ਸ਼ੀਲਾ ਅਫਸਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ, ਕਿਰਪਾ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਇਸ ਵਰਤੀ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਮਾਫ਼ ਕਰ ਦੇਵੋ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਾਨੂੰਨ ਦੀ ਉਲੰਘਣਾ ਕੀਤੀ ਹੈ। ਇਹ ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਟਿਕਟ ਹੈ। ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਅੰਦਰ ਆਪਣੇ ਕਾਰ ਦੇ ਕਾਗਜ਼ਾਤ ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰੋ।

Police officer Madam, please pull the car over to one side and stop using the telephone so that you can listen to me.

Sheela Yes, officer.

- Police officer** You are committing an offence. I am charging you [lit. you are charged] for using a mobile phone while driving.
- Sheela** I was only using the phone for one minute.
- Police officer** You've been talking for the last ten minutes. Please get out of the car and show me your licence.
- Sheela** Officer, please let me off this time.
- Police officer** You have broken the law. Here is your ticket. Please produce your car documents within one week.

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਬੀਬੀ	beebee	madame (f.)
ਇੱਕ ਪਾਸੇ	ikk paase	one side
ਖੜ੍ਹਨਾ	kharhnhhaa	to stand, to park
ਬੰਦ	band	closed, off
ਅਪਰਾਧ	apraadh	offence (m.)
ਦੋਸ਼	dosh	charge (m.)
ਗਲਾਂ	gallaan	speech, conversation (f.)
ਲਾਇਸੈਂਸ	laaisains	licence (m.)
ਇਸ ਵਾਰੀ	is vaaree	this time
ਮਾਫ	maaf	pardon, excuse
ਕਾਨੂੰਨ	kaanoon	law (m.)
ਉਲੰਘਣਾ	ulanghnhaa	to disobey, to break
ਕਾਗਜ਼ਾਤ	kaaghzaat	papers, documents (m.)
ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	pesh karna	to present, to produce

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Complete the table

ਕਾਨੂੰਨ		law
	beebee	
		documents
ਮਾਫ		
	ulanghnhaa	

2. Loan words

Make a list of five words borrowed from English used in Dialogue 2.

3 I am a social worker

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ ੩ ਮੈਂ ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ ਹਾਂ

gall baat 3 main samaaj sevak haan

A social worker, Mrs Kaur, visits Kuldeep's house. She is following a complaint that under-aged children have been left unattended for long periods in the house.

ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	ਹੇਲੋ। ਮੈਂ ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ ਹਾਂ ਅਤੇ ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਕੌਰ ਹੈ। ਇਹ ਮੇਰਾ ਸ਼ਨਾਖਤੀ ਕਾਰਡ ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਗੱਲ ਕਰਨ ਆਈ ਹਾਂ।
ਕੁਲਦੀਪ	ਅੰਦਰ ਆ ਜਾਓ। ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ ?
ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਖਿਲਾਫ਼ ਸਾਡੇ ਦਫ਼ਤਰ ਵਿਚ ਇੱਕ ਸ਼ਿਕਾਇਤ ਪਹੁੰਚੀ ਹੈ।
ਕੁਲਦੀਪ	ਕੀ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ ? ਕੀ ਮੈਂ ਕੋਈ ਗਲਤ ਕੰਮ ਕਰ ਵੈਣੀ ਹਾਂ।
ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	ਤੁਸੀਂ ਆਪਣੇ ਦੋਨਾਂ ਬੱਚਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਇੱਕਲੇ ਘਰ ਦੇ ਅੰਦਰ ਛੱਡ ਕੇ, ਕੰਮ ਤੇ ਚਲੇ ਜਾਂਦੇ ਹੋ। ਇਹ ਇੱਕ ਖਤਰਨਾਕ ਸਥਿਤੀ ਬਣ ਸਕਦੀ ਹੈ।
ਕੁਲਦੀਪ	ਮੈਂ ਪੱਧਰ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹਾਂ। ਮੇਰੇ ਪਤੀ ਜੇ ਵਜੇ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ। ਸਿਰਫ਼ ਉਨ੍ਹਾਂ ਦੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ।
ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	ਇਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਪੰਥਿਆਂ ਵਿਚ ਕੁਝ ਵੀ ਹੋ ਸਕਦਾ ਹੈ। ਕੰਮ ਦੇ ਪੰਥੇ ਬਦਲੋ ਜਾਂ ਕੋਈ ਹੋਰ ਇੰਡੀਸ਼ਾਮ ਕਰੋ।
ਕੁਲਦੀਪ	ਇਹ ਮੇਰੇ ਲਈ ਮੁਸ਼ਕਲ ਹੈ। ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਨਹੀਂ ਛੱਡ ਸਕਦੀ।
ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	ਕੋਈ ਬੇਬੀ ਸਿਟਰ ਲੱਭੋ।
ਕੁਲਦੀਪ	ਮੈਂ ਪੂਰੀ ਕੋਸ਼ਿਸ਼ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀ।

Social worker Hello, I am a social worker and my name is Mrs Kaur. Here is my identity card. I have come to talk to you. Please come in. What is the matter?

Kuldip We have received a complaint in our office against you. What has happened? Have I done anything wrong?

Social worker You leave both of your children alone in the house and go to work. This is a potentially dangerous situation.

Kuldip I leave at 5 o'clock. My husband comes home at 7 o'clock. It is only a matter of two hours.

Social worker Anything can happen in those two hours. Either change your hours of work or make alternative arrangements.

- Kuldip *This is difficult for me. I can't leave work.*
 Social worker *Find a baby sitter.*
 Kuldip *I will try my best.*

ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	samaaj sevak	<i>social worker (m./f.)</i>
ਸ਼ਨਾਖਤੀ ਕਾਰਡ	shanaakhtee kaard	<i>identity card (m.)</i>
ਖਿਲਾਫ	khilaaf	<i>against</i>
ਦਫਤਰ	daftaar	<i>office (m.)</i>
ਸ਼ਿਕਾਇਤ	shikaait	<i>complaint (f.)</i>
ਗਲਤ	ghalat	<i>wrong</i>
ਖਤਰਨਾਕ	khatarnaak	<i>dangerous</i>
ਸਥਿਤੀ	sathitee	<i>situation (f.)</i>
ਇੰਤਜ਼ਾਮ	intzaam	<i>arrangements (m.)</i>
ਬੇਬੀ ਸਿਟਰ	bebeesi sitar	<i>baby sitter (m./f.)</i>
ਲੱਭਣਾ	labhbhnhaa	<i>to find</i>

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Write or say in the correct word order

- a. ਹਾਂ ਸੇਵਕ ਸਮਾਜ ਮੈਂ b. ਹੈ ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ?
 c. ਜਾਓ ਆ ਅੰਦਰ d. ਹੈ ਲਈ ਮੇਰੇ ਇਹ ਮੁਸ਼ਕਲ

2. Complete the sentences

Choose the correct word from the bracket to complete the sentence according to the specifications of gender and number. Remember that the verb changes according to the subject.

- a. ਮੈਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਗੱਲ ਕਰਨ (ਅਣੀ / ਆਇਆ) ਹਾਂ। [masculine/singular]
I have come to talk to you.
- b. ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਨਹੀਂ ਛੱਡ (ਸਕਦੀ/ ਸਕਦਾ)। [feminine/singular]
I can't leave work.
- c. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੰਮ ਤੇ (ਚਲੋ ਜਾਂਦੇ / ਚਲੀ ਜਾਂਦੇ) ਹੋ। [formal/singular]
You go to work.
- d. ਮੈਂ ਪੂਰੀ ਕੋਸ਼ਿਸ਼ (ਕਰਾਂ ਗੇ / ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀ) ਕਰਾਂ। [feminine/singular]
I will try my best.

bolee baare bolee baare Language points

Purpose clauses

In Unit 7 infinitives in the oblique were shown to express purpose such as ਮੈਂ ਦੇਸਤ ਨੂੰ ਮਿਲਣ ਆਇਆ ਹਾਂ, *I have come to meet a friend.* Another way of expressing purpose is through the use of ਤਾਂ ਕਿ, *so that, in order to.* The verb in the purpose clause is normally in the subjunctive (since the action is often indefinite or uncertain).

ਸਿਮਰਨ ਨੇ ਦਰਵਾਜ਼ੀ ਲੈ ਲਈ ਤਾਂ ਕਿ Simran took medicine so that her fever would come down.

ਮੈਂ ਦਰਵਾਜ਼ਾ ਬੰਦ ਕੀਤਾ ਸੀ ਤਾਂ ਕਿ I closed the door so that the cat couldn't come inside.

ਇਮਰਨ ਉਰਦੂ ਪੜ੍ਹ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ ਤਾਂ ਕਿ Imran is studying Urdu so that he can speak with his relatives in Pakistan.

Compound postpositions

In Unit 4 simple postpositions such as ਵਿਚ *in*, ਤੋਂ *from* and ਨੂੰ *to* were introduced. Postpositions having more than one word are called compound postpositions, most commonly using the postposition ਦੇ *of*. Compound postpositions behave in the same way as simple postpositions by requiring the words preceding them to be in the oblique case. Here are some commonly used compound postpositions:

ਦੇ ਅੰਦਰ	<i>inside</i>	ਦੇ ਵਾਸਤੇ	<i>for</i>
ਦੇ ਉੱਪਰ	<i>above, upon</i>	ਦੇ ਲਈ	<i>for</i>
ਦੇ ਪਿੱਛੇ	<i>behind</i>	ਦੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ	<i>in place of</i>
ਦੇ ਚੱਲੇ	<i>below</i>	ਦੇ ਸਹਮਣੇ	<i>opposite, facing</i>
ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ	<i>before</i>	ਦੇ ਬਹਰ	<i>outside</i>
ਤੋਂ ਬਾਅਦ	<i>after</i>	ਤੋਂ ਇਲਾਵਾ	<i>apart from</i>
ਦੇ ਨੇੜੇ	<i>near</i>	ਤੋਂ ਚਿਨਾਂ/ ਬਾਹੋਂ	<i>without</i>
ਦੇ ਬਾਚੇ	<i>about, concerning</i>	ਦੇ ਬਾਵਜੂਦ	<i>in spite of</i>

Indirect speech

So far in this book we have focused on direct speech, when sentences and phrases have been directly spoken or reproduced. Indirect speech occurs when another action or speech is being reported or conveyed, such as in English: *She told me to call him, ਉਸ ਨੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਉਹ ਨੂੰ ਬੁਲਾਓ.* Indirect

speech in Panjabi is expressed with the particle ਕਿ *that* to denote what was actually said or done.

Indirect speech is used when the verb of thought or speech occurred before the thought or speech being conveyed.

ਮੈਂ ਆਪਣੇ ਆਪ ਵਿਚ ਸੋਚਿਆ ਕਿ ਮੈਂ	<i>I thought to myself that I would</i>
ਜ਼ਰੂਰ ਜਿੱਤਾਂ ਗੀ	<i>definitely win.</i>
ਜਗਜੀਤ ਨੇ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਇਹ ਕਿਤਾਬ	<i>Jagjit said that this book is worth</i>
ਪੜ੍ਹਣ ਵਾਲੀ ਹੈ	<i>reading.</i>
ਕਿਸੇ ਨੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਦੱਸਿਆ ਕਿ ਮਿਸ਼ਨ ਸ਼ਰਮਾ	<i>Someone told me that Mrs Sharma has</i>
ਭਾਰਤ ਚਲੀ ਗਈ ਹੈ	<i>gone to India.</i>

When the speech being conveyed is a command.

ਉਸ ਨੇ ਬੱਚਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਚੁੱਪ ਰਹੋ	<i>He told the children to be quiet.</i>
ਮੈਂ ਸਾਰਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਕਿਹਾ ਕਿ ਘਰ ਵਪਸ	<i>I told everyone to go back home.</i>

ਚਲੋ ਜਾਓ

ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate compound postpositions

- ਸਾਡਾ ਘਰ ਸਕੂਲ _____ ਹੈ। *Our house is near the school.*
- ਬਿਲੀ ਡੱਬੇ _____ ਹੈ। *The cat is inside the box.*
- ਉਹ ਰੋਟੀ ਖਣ _____ ਆਵੇ ਗਾ। *He will come after eating.*
- ਤਸਵੀਰ _____ ਕੁਝ ਹੋਰ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ। *There should be something else in place of the picture.*

2. Match the pairs

The following eight sentences need to be joined with ਤਾਂ *ਕਿ*. Match the correct pairs of sentences with one another.

a) ਮੈਂ ਦਰਵਾਜ਼ਾ ਬੰਦ ਕੀਤਾ	ਤਾਂ ਕਿ	i) ... ਸਵੇਰੇ ਜਲਦੀ ਉਠ ਸਕੇ
b) ਅਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਾਂ ਗੇ		ii) ... ਕੁੱਤਾ ਅੰਦਰ ਨਾ ਆ ਸਕੇ
c) ਤੈਂਨੂੰ ਜਲਦੀ ਆਉਣਾ ਚਾਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ		iii) ... ਸਰੇ ਸਮਝ ਜਾਣ
d) ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਲਦੀ ਸੌ ਜਾਓ		iv) ... ਅਸੀਂ ਬਸ ਫੜ ਸਕੀਏ

3. Listening

Sheela is telling her story to her friend Meena about how she was stopped by the police officer for using her mobile phone while driving. Listen to the tape and answer the following questions. You may answer the questions with short or full answers.

- ਸ਼ੀਲਾ ਆਪਣੀ ਕਾਰ ਵਿਚ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ ?
- ਉਹ ਕਿੰਨੀ ਦੇਰ ਤੋਂ ਮੋਬਾਈਲ ਤੇ ਗੱਲਾਂ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ ?
- ਕੀ ਸ਼ੀਲਾ ਨੇ ਅਫਸਰ ਅੱਗੇ ਸੱਚ ਬੋਲਿਆ ?
- ਦਿੱਕ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅੰਦਰ ਸ਼ੀਲ ਨੂੰ ਕੀ ਕਰਨਾ ਪੈਣਾ ਹੈ ?



4. Alphabetical order

Rearrange the following words into alphabetical order, considering only the first letter of each word.

ਪਪਾ	ਵਰਤਣਾ	ਡਾਕਟਰ	ਅਧਿਆਪਕ	ਬਾਚੇ
ਪੜ੍ਹਉਣਾ	ਮਜ਼ਮੂਨਾਂ	ਡੂਜੇ	ਹਿਸਥ	ਕਲਾਸ
ਲਿਆਕਤ	ਕੰਮ	ਮਿਹਨਤ	ਸ਼੍ਰੀ	ਇਲਾਵਾ

15 | ਵੈਸਾਖੀ

vaisakhee

Vaisakhi

In this unit you will:

- learn about the Vaisakhi festival
- be introduced to Panjabi poetry and music
- express to allow

The Vaisakhi fair

ਵੈਸਾਖੀ ਦਾ ਮੇਲਾ

vaisakhee daa melaa

The following extract is a news report from the BBC Asian Network reporting on the events of the Vaisakhi festival in Birmingham, UK.

ਨੀਲੂ ਮੈਂ ਨੀਲੂ ਹਾਂ ਤੇ ਮੈਂ ਬੀ. ਬੀ. ਸੀ. ਰੇਡੀਓ ਲਈ ਹੈਂਡਜ਼ਰਵ ਪਾਰਕ ਤੋਂ ਰਿਪੋਰਟ ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ। ਇਸ ਸਾਲ ਵੈਸਾਖੀ ਦਾ ਤਿਉਹਾਰ ਬੜੀ ਧੂਮ ਧਾਮ ਨਾਲ ਮਨਾਇਆ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ। ਅੱਜ ਲੱਗਦਾ ਹੈ ਜਿਵੇਂ ਸਾਰੇ ਸ਼ਹਿਰ ਦੇ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਲੋਕ ਪਹੁੰਚੇ ਹੋਏ ਹਨ। ਹੁਣੇ ਮੈਂ ਅੰਕਲ ਜੀ ਨੂੰ ਪੁੱਛਿਆ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਮੇਲਾ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਲੱਗ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ।

ਅੰਕਲ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਅਪਣਾ ਪੇਂਡੂ ਜੀਵਨ ਯਾਦ ਆ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ। ਸਭੇ ਲਈ ਇਹ ਫਸਲਾਂ ਕਟਣ ਦੀ ਖੁਸ਼ੀ ਦਾ ਤਿਉਹਾਰ ਹੈ।

ਨੀਲੂ ... ਨਲੇ ਵੈਸਾਖ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਸਾਲ ਦਾ ਪਹਿਲਾ ਮਹੀਨਾ ਵੀ ਹੈ। ਅੱਛਾ ਆਂਟੀ ਜੀ, ਤੁਸੀਂ ਇੱਥੋਂ ਅੱਜ ਕਿਉਂ ਆਏ ਹੋ ?

ਆਂਟੀ ਬੇਟੀ, ਵੈਸਾਖੀ ਸਿੱਖ ਕੌਮ ਦਾ ਜਨਮ ਦਿਨ ਹੈ। ਜਿੱਥੇ ਅਸੀਂ ਖਲੋਤੇ ਹਾਂ, ਉੱਥੇ ਨਗਰ ਕੀਰਤਨ ਆਉਣ ਵਾਲਾ ਹੈ। ਅੱਗੇ ਅੱਗੇ ਨੌਜ਼ਾਨ ਗਤਕਾ ਖੇਡ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ। ਪਿੱਛੇ ਗੁਰੂ ਗ੍ਰੰਥ ਸਾਹਿਬ ਦੀ ਸਵਾਰੀ ਹੈ।

ਨੀਲੂ ਮੈਂ ਹੁਣੇ ਲੰਗਰ ਹਾਲ ਵੱਲ ਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ। ਦੇਖੋ! ਜਲੇਬੀਆਂ, ਪਕੋੜੇ ਅਤੇ ਹੋਰ ਕਈ ਚੀਜ਼ਾਂ ਸੇਵਾਦਾਰ ਮੁਫਤ ਵਰਤਾ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ। ਬੱਚਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਲੰਗਰ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਲੈਣ ਦੇਵੇ।

ਕਾਬ' ਨੀਲੂ ਆਂਟੀ ! ਮੈਂ ਲੰਗਰ ਛਕਣ ਤੋਂ ਬਾਅਦ ਝੂਟੇ ਲਵਾਂ ਗਾ। ਬੱਚਿਆਂ ਦੇ ਮਨਪਰਚਾਰੇ ਲਈ ਬਹੁਤ ਕੁਝ ਹੈ।

ਨੀਲੂ ਅੱਛਾ ਬੇਟਾ। ਝੂਟਿਆਂ ਤੋਂ ਇਲਾਵਾ ਨਮਾਇਸ਼ ਵੀ ਲੱਗੀ ਹੋਈ ਹੈ। ਭੰਗੜਾ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੋਣ ਲੱਗ ਹੈ। ਹੁਣੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਇਜ਼ਜ਼ਤ ਦੇਵੇ। ਸਾਰਿਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਬੀ। ਬੀ। ਸੀ। ਵੱਲੋਂ ਵੈਸਾਖੀ ਦੀ ਵਧਦੀ !

Neelu I'm Neelu and I'm reporting for BBC Radio from Handsworth Park. The Vaisakhi festival this year is being celebrated with a 'bang'. It seems today that all the Panjabi people of the city have come here. I have just asked Uncle how he feels about the fair.

Uncle I am remembering my village life. For us this is a happy festival of harvest.

Neelu Vaisakhi is also the first month of the Panjabi calendar. Well, Auntie, why have you come here?

Auntie Vaisakhi is the birthday of the Sikh nation. The religious procession is due to arrive where we are standing. In front of the procession young people are playing gatka. It is followed by the installation of the Guru Granth Sahib.

Neelu I am going towards the langar hall. Look! Jalebeeaan, pakaurhe and many other things are being served by volunteers free of charge. Please allow the children to have langar first.

Young boy Auntie Neelu! I will go on the rides after I've had langar. There is a lot of entertainment for the children.

Neelu OK, son. Apart from the rides, there is also an exhibition. Bhangra is about to begin. Now, please excuse me. To everyone from BBC Radio, happy Vaisakhi!



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਪੇਸ਼	pesh	to present
ਵੈਸਾਖੀ	vaisakhee	Vaisakhi, one of the Sikh festivals (f.)
ਮੇਲਾ	melaa	fair (m.)
ਧੂਮ ਧਾਮ	dhoom dhaam	bang, pomp and show (f.)
ਮਨਾਉਣਾ	manaaunhaa	to celebrate
ਦਰਸ਼ਕ	darshak	participant, visitor (m./f.)
ਪੁੱਛਣਾ	puchchnhaa	to ask
ਪੇਂਡੂ	pendoo	of the village, village-like
ਜੀਵਨ	jeevan	life (m.)
ਫਸਲਾਂ	fasalaan	crops (f.)
ਕਟਣ	katanh	to cut

ਤਿਉਹਾਰ	tjuhaar	<i>celebration, festival (m.)</i>
ਵੈਸਾਖ	vaisaakh	<i>one of the Indian months (m.)</i>
ਕੌਮ	kaum	<i>nation, community (f.)</i>
ਜਨਮ ਦਿਨ	janam din	<i>birthday (m.)</i>
ਖਲੋਣਾ	khalonhaa	<i>to be stood, to stand</i>
ਨਗਰ ਕੀਰਤਨ	nagar keertan	<i>religious procession (m.)</i>
ਗਤਕਾ	gaṭkaa	<i>a Sikh martial art like fencing (m.)</i>
ਖੇਡਣਾ	khednhaa	<i>to play</i>
ਗੁਰੂ ਗਰਾਂਥ	guroo garanth	<i>Guru Granth; Holy book of the Sikhs (m.)</i>
ਸਵਾਰੀ	savaaree	<i>installation (f.)</i>
ਲੰਗਰ	langar	<i>community kitchen (m.)</i>
ਸੇਵਾਦਾਰ	sevaadaar	<i>volunteer (m./f.)</i>
ਮੁਫਤ	mufat	<i>free</i>
ਵਰਤਉਣਾ	varṭaaunhaa	<i>to serve</i>
ਛਕਣਾ	chaknhaa	<i>to take, to consume</i>
ਜੂਟੇ	jhoote	<i>rides (m.)</i>
ਮਨਪਰਚਾਵੇ	manparchaave	<i>entertainment, enjoyment (m.)</i>
ਨੁਮਾਇਸ਼	numaish	<i>exhibition (f.)</i>
ਵੱਲ	vallon	<i>on behalf of</i>
ਵਧਾਈ	vadhmaeetee	<i>congratulations (f.)</i>

ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Answer in Panjabi

Answer the questions in Panjabi in either full sentences or in short form answers. The answers to the questions can be found in the dialogue. The first one has been done for you.

- What is the name of the radio presenter?
ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰਤਾ ਦਾ ਨਾਮ ਨੀਲ੍ਹੁ ਹੈ। (full sentence) or ਨੀਲ੍ਹੁ (short answer)
- What is the report about?
- What are the main things associated with the Vaisakhi festival?
(name two)
- What is being served in the community kitchen?
- What is the name of the game being played in front of the procession?
- What are the main activities taken place at the Vaisakhi fair?
(name any two)

2. Identify the appropriate answers

The Vaisakhi festival is associated with:

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> village people | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> harvest season | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sikh religion |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> candles | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the new year | |

3. True or false?

Langar means community kitchen.

True / False

Guru Granth is the holy book of the Sikhs.

True / False

Gatka is a group dance.

True / False

Nagar Kirtan is singing.

True / False



■ Folk song: My spinning wheel is of many colours

ਲੋਕ ਗੀਤ: ਚਰਖਾ ਮੇਰਾ ਰੰਗਲਾ

lok geet: charkhaa meraa ranglaa

The following is a traditional Panjabi folk song. Listen to the song on the tape while reading the verses of the song.

ਚਰਖ ਮੇਰਾ ਰੰਗਲਾ ਵਿਚ ਸੋਨੇ ਦੀਆਂ ਮੇਖਾਂ
ਵੇ ਮੈਂ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਯਾਦ ਕਰਾਂ ਜਦ ਚਰਖੇ ਵੱਲ ਵੇਖਾਂ

ਚਰਖੇ ਦੇ ਸ਼ੀਸ਼ਿਆਂ 'ਚ ਦਿਸੇ ਤੇਰਾ ਮੁੱਖ ਵੇ
ਵੇਖ ਵੇਖ ਮਿਟ ਦੀ ਨਾ ਅੱਖੀਆਂ ਦੀ ਭੁੱਖ ਵੇ
ਸੀਨੇ ਵਿਚ ਨੇ ਰੜਕ ਦੀਆਂ ਇਹ ਚਰਖੇ ਦੀਆਂ ਮੇਖਾਂ

ਦਿਨ ਰਾਤ ਤੇਰੀਆਂ ਰਾਹਾਂ ਵੱਲ ਜਾਵਾਂ ਝਕੀ ਵੇ
ਤੇਰੇ ਬਿਨ ਅਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਮਨਉਣੀ ਏ ਵੈਸਖੀ ਵੇ
ਸੈਂ ਸੈਂ ਪੀਰ ਮਨਾਵਾਂ ਨਾਲੇ ਥਾਂ ਥਾਂ ਮੱਖੇ ਟੇਕਾਂ
ਵੇ ਮੈਂ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਯਾਦ ਕਰਾਂ ਜਦ ਚਰਖੇ ਵੱਲ ਵੇਖਾਂ



My spinning wheel is of many colours, studded with gold nails
Oh! I remember you, when I look at the spinning wheel

I see your face in the mirror work of the spinning wheel
Continuously looking does not satisfy my eyes' desire
The studded nails of this spinning wheel prick my heart

Day and night I keep watch on the road for your return
Without you, what kind of Vaisakhi am I to celebrate?
For your return I pray to a hundred holy men
and bow my head at many holy places
Oh! I remember you, when I look at the spinning wheel



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਚਰਖ	charkhaa	<i>spinning wheel (m.)</i>
ਰੰਗਲਾ	ranglaa	<i>colourful (v.)</i>
ਸੋਨਾ	sonaa	<i>gold (m.)</i>
ਮੇਖ	mekh	<i>nail (f.)</i>
ਵੇ	ve	<i>subjunctive particle</i>

ਵੱਲ	vall	<i>towards</i>
ਵੇਖਣਾ	vekhnhaa	<i>to see</i>
ਸ਼ੀਸ਼ਾ	sheeshaa	<i>mirror (m.)</i>
ਦਿਸਣਾ	disnhaa	<i>to be visible, to be seen</i>
ਮੁੱਖ	mukhkh	<i>face (m.)</i>
ਮਿਟਣਾ	mitnhaa	<i>to finish, to vanish</i>
ਭੁੱਖ	bhukhkh	<i>hunger (f.)</i>
ਸੀਨ	seenaa	<i>bosom, heart (m.)</i>
ਰੜਕਣਾ	rarhkanhaa	<i>to prick, to rub against</i>
ਰਾਹਾਂ	raahaan	<i>roads, routes (f.)</i>
ਝਾਕਣਾ	jhaaknhaa	<i>to stare, to look at</i>
ਪੀਰ	peer	<i>holy man (m.)</i>
ਮਨਉਣਾ	manaaunhaa	<i>to pray, to believe</i>
ਟੇਕਣਾ	teknhaa	<i>to bow down</i>



ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the folk song and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercise.

Answer the questions (yes or no)

My spinning wheel is many-coloured.

It is studded with nails of gold.

I remember you whenever I look at it.

These nails make me suffer in love.

ਮੇਰਾ ਚਰਖ ਕਟੀ ਰੰਗਾਂ ਵਲਾ ਹੈ।

ਇਸ ਵਿਚ ਸੋਨੇ ਦੀਆਂ ਮੇਖਾਂ ਲੱਗੀਆਂ ਹੋਈਆਂ ਹਨ।

ਜਦੋਂ ਮੈਂ ਇਸ ਵੱਲ ਵੇਖਦੀ ਹਾਂ, ਉਦੋਂ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਯਾਦ ਕਰਦੀ ਹਾਂ।

ਇਹ ਮੇਖਾਂ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਪਿਆਰ ਵਿਚ ਤੜਫ਼ਾਂਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ।

ਕੀ ਇਹ ਗੀਤ ਪਿਆਰ ਬਾਰੇ ਕੁਝ ਦੱਸ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ ?

ਕੀ ਚਰਖੇ ਵਿਚ ਲੋਹੇ (iron) ਦੀਆਂ ਮੇਖਾਂ ਹਨ ?

ਜਦੋਂ ਐਰਤ ਚਰਖੇ ਵੱਲ ਵੇਖਦੀ ਹੈ ਕੀ ਉਦੋਂ ਆਪਣੇ ਪਿਆਰ ਨੂੰ ਭੁਲ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ ?

ਕੀ ਚਰਖੇ ਦਾ ਸਿਰਫ ਟਿੱਕ ਰੰਗ ਹੈ ?

ਲੋਕ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare Language points

Relative-correlatives

You have already been introduced to the most common relative pronoun, ਜਿਹੜਾ which means *that* (see Unit 9 for a review of how sentences with relative pronouns are formed). Relative-correlatives are relative pronouns which are paired with their correlating counterparts. The correlating counterpart of the relative pronoun ਜਿਹੜਾ can be either ਦਿਹ or ਉਹ (*that ... which*). In English, the sentence *I will go when he comes* contains only one relative pronoun *when*. However, the same sentence would be expressed in Panjabi as *when he comes, then I will go* with the relative pronoun *when* and its correlative *then*. There are a number of such pairings, that can be used to indicate place, time, quantity and likeness. For example:

Relative		Correlative	
ਜਿਹੜਾ	<i>who, which</i>	ਊਹ	<i>he, she, it, that</i>
ਜਿਹੜਾ	<i>who, which</i>	ਦਿਹ	<i>he, she, it, this</i>
ਜਦੋਂ	<i>when</i>	ਊਦੋਂ	<i>then</i>
ਜੱਦ ਤਕ	<i>as long as</i>	ਤੱਦ ਤਕ	<i>until then</i>
ਜਿਵੇਂ	<i>in such a way</i>	ਊਵੇਂ	<i>in that way</i>
ਜਿੰਨਾਂ	<i>as many, however much</i>	ਓਨਾਂ	<i>that much, that many</i>
ਜਿੰਨਾਂ	<i>as many, however much</i>	ਦਿੰਨਾਂ	<i>this much, this many</i>
ਜਿੱਥੇ	<i>where</i>	ਊਥੇ	<i>there</i>

ਜਿੱਥੇ ਅਸੀਂ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਾਂ ਉਥੇ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲੀ Panjabi is spoken where we live.
ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ

(lit. *Where we live, Panjabi is spoken there.*)

ਜਿਵੇਂ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਚਾਹੁੰਦੇ ਹੋ ਉਵੇਂ ਅਸੀਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੇ We'll do as you like.
(lit. *As you like, that is the way we will do.*)

ਜਿਹੜਾ ਬੰਦਾ ਲਾਹੌਰ ਜਾ ਚੁਕਾ ਹੈ ਉਹ ਨੂੰ Ask directions from the man who has been to Lahore.
ਰਸਤਾ ਪ੍ਰਛੋ
(lit. *The man who has been to Lahore, ask the way from him.*)

ਜੱਦ ਤਕ ਤੂੰ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਨਹੀਂ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਤੱਦ ਤਕ You won't learn good Panjabi until
ਤੈਨੂੰ ਚੰਗੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਨਹੀਂ ਆਏ ਗੀ you go to Panjab.

(lit. *As long as you don't go to Panjab, until then you won't learn good Panjabi.*)

ਜਿੰਨਾਂ ਜਿਆਦਾ ਕੰਮ ਕਰੋ ਗੇ ਉਨ੍ਹੇ ਜਿਆਦਾ The more you work, the more money
ਪੈਸੇ ਕਮਾ ਸਕੋ ਗੇ you can earn.

(lit. *As much work as you will do, that much more money you will earn.*)

The subjunctive particle ਵੇ

You will recall from Unit 12 that the subjunctive mood is used to indicate uncertainty or indefiniteness. The particle ਵੇ is associated with the endings of the subjunctive mood. It is not, however, uncommon to see the particle ਵੇ on its own, particularly in poetic language and songs. It can appear as part of the verb in the subjunctive or on its own in the phrase or sentence. In the passage of the song ਚਰਖਾ ਮੇਰਾ ਚੰਗਲਾ the particle ਵੇ occurs at the beginning of the second line:

ਵੇ ਮੈਂ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਯਦ ਕਰਾਂ (Oh!) I remember you.

The vocative case, as you learned in Unit 8, is a projection of an address to someone similar to the English *oh!* or *hey!*. ਵੇ is a colloquial form of address in friendly and informal situations.

The verb ਲੱਗਣਾ

The verb ਲੱਗਣਾ has occurred a number of times throughout the units so far. In Unit 9 Simran asks Jaspreet about the cloth: ਤੈਨੂੰ ਕਿਹੜਾ ਵਧੇਰੇ ਚੰਗਾ ਲੱਗਣਾ ਹੈ?, *Which one do you like better?* In the second dialogue of Unit 9 Simran says to the doctor: ਮੈਨੂੰ ਠੰਡ ਲੱਗ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ, *I am feeling cold.* The basic definition of ਲੱਗਣਾ is *to be applied to*, however it can also carry slightly different meanings. In the first example it means *to seem* or *to appear* and in the second example it has the sense *to be struck*. In fact ਲੱਗਣਾ is used in a wide range of situations and it is therefore always necessary to take the context of the sentence into account. Here are some examples of these different, yet related, senses of the verb ਲੱਗਣਾ:

ਲੱਗਣਾ meaning to seem, to like, to be struck

ਨਿਆਣੇ ਨੂੰ ਠੰਡ ਲੱਗੇ ਗੀ

The child will feel cold.

ਅਮਰੀਕਾ ਰਹਿਣਾ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਅੱਛਾ ਲੱਗਦਾ ਹੈ

I like living in America. (lit. Living in America seems good to me.)

ਘਰ ਨੂੰ ਅੱਗ ਲੱਗੀ ਹੋਈ ਸੀ

The house was on (lit. struck by) fire.

ਲੱਗਣਾ to mean time taken or to cost

ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਪਹੁੰਚਣ ਨੂੰ ਕਿੰਨਾ ਚਿਰ ਲੱਗੇ ਗਾ ? How long will it take to get to Amritsar?

ਮੇਨੂੰ ਸਿਰਫ ਦਸ ਮਿੰਟ ਲੱਗੇ

It only took me ten minutes.

ਇੱਕ ਟਿਕਟ ਲਈ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਪੇਸੇ ਲੱਗਦੇ ਹਨ ?

How much money does one ticket cost? (lit. it take)

ਲੱਗਣਾ following an oblique infinitive

In this case, its meaning changes to give the sense to begin.

ਬਾਰਸ ਹੋਣ ਲੱਗੀ

It began to rain.

ਮੈਂ ਕੰਮ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਕਰਨ ਲੱਗ ਸੀ

I was about to begin work.

ਉਹ ਸੋਚਣ ਲੱਗ ਕਿ ਸਾਰੇ ਚਲੇ ਗਏ ਹਨ

He began to think that everyone had left.

Oblique infinitives with ਦੇਣਾ

The general use of ਦੇਣਾ in compound constructions was discussed in Unit 9. ਦੇਣਾ can also be used with oblique infinitives to give the meaning of to allow to or to permit. Similar to the way in which ਲੱਗਣਾ changes its meaning to to begin when following oblique infinitives, ਦੇਣਾ with the oblique infinitive also changes its meaning.

ਕੁੱਝ ਨੂੰ ਆਉਣ ਦੇ

Let the dog come inside.

ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਨੇ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਗੱਡੀ ਚਲਾਉਣ ਨਹੀਂ

Father did not allow me to drive the car.

ਉਹ ਆਪਣੇ ਬੱਚੇ ਨੂੰ ਬਾਹਰ ਖੇਡਣ ਦੇਂਦੇ ਹਨ

They allow their child to play outside.

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ

viaakhiaa

Commentary

1. Media

There are many opportunities, living in the West, to interact with Panjabi speakers and to hear the language being spoken. In particular there has

been a growth in media output. In most big towns and cities in England, and the major cities in North America, there are radio stations which either produce programming totally in Panjabi or have specific Panjabi language programmes. In Toronto, Canada, a mainstream cable television channel broadcasts six hours of Panjabi programming every day. Generally, most satellite and cable TV channels catering for a South Asian audience will have some Panjabi programmes in addition to Hindi/Urdu, Gujarati and Bengali programming.

Much of the programming on these TV channels is taken up with films. The Indian sub-continent produces more films every year than Hollywood. Bombay (Mumbai) is the centre of the Indian film industry and to mark this fact it is affectionately called 'Bollywood'. However, regional film makers are also very significant in the overall production and consumption of cinema in South Asia. In fact the Telegu film industry matches – in terms of number of films produced – that of Mumbai. Despite the presence of large numbers of Panjabi actors and directors – in fact the Kapoor family has dominated Indian films over the last forty years – the Panjabi language film industry is not well developed in East Panjab. The majority of Panjabi language films are produced in Lahore (also called 'Lollywood') and are high in action but low in quality, both cinematically and in terms of language use. However, there are a few films to be recommended which are useful to watch in order to pick up the language. These films are available in any South Asian area in England, Canada and beyond. Wherever a South Asian community is settled, there is always an outlet for videos and, more recently, cinema halls showing films from the sub-continent.

2. Poetry

Panjab is renowned for folk poetry, particularly for the tradition of Sufi-inspired poems. Poetry flourished in medieval times with poets such as Bulleh Shah and Warish Shah making indelible implants on the social consciousness of the Panjabi *literati*. In the modern period, Bhai Vir Singh and Amrita Pritam are two poets worthy of mention. Poetry is popular primarily because of its sung form. The folk song given earlier in this unit is a good example of a form of poetic verse. Much of this music has become professionalised and Panjab is the foremost producer of folk music in India and Pakistan.



abhiyaas Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Fill in the blanks

In this unit you have learned about relative-correlatives in the language points section. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate relative-correlative pairs.

- _____ ਦੋੜੇ ਗਾ, _____ ਇਨਾਮ ਜਿਤੇ ਗਾ
The person who runs will win the prize.
- _____ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਚਹੁੰਦੇ ਹੋ, _____ ਅਸੀਂ ਕਰਾਂ ਗੇ
We will do as you like.
- _____ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹੋ, _____ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲੀ ਜਾਂਦੀ ਹੈ
Punjabi is spoken where you live.
- _____ ਮੈਂ ਦਵਾਈ ਖਾਪੀ, _____ ਹੀ ਆਰਾਮ ਆ ਗਿਆ
When I took the medicine I felt relief immediately.

2. Complete the sentences

Complete the sentences in Panjabi with the appropriate expressions of *to allow to*. The first one has been done for you.

- ਉਸ ਨੂੰ ਅੰਦਰ (ਅਉਣ ਦੇ) *Let him come inside.*
- ਕੁੱਡੇ ਨੂੰ _____ *Let the dog go out.*
- ਮੈਨੂੰ ਜੁਸ _____ *Let me drink juice.*
- ਬੀਬੀ ਜੀ ਨੂੰ ਟੀ ਵੀ _____ *Allow the lady to watch TV.*

3. Write sentences using the verb ਲੱਗਣਾ

- It takes fifteen minutes to get to work.
- How much does one first-class ticket cost ?
- I am feeling hot.
- It started to rain.
- We were about to go out.

16 | ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦੇ ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ

panjaab de lok naach

Folk dances of Panjab

In this unit you will learn:

- about the folk dances of Panjab
- about experiences of the Panjabi diaspora
- phrases of choice

1 Folk dances of Panjab

gall baat 1 ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦੇ ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ

gall baat 1 panjaab de lok naach

It is the end of Mr Singh's Panjabi class. He has taken all the students to a cultural programme in the Southall Community Centre to see a range of folk dances. As they enter the hall they hear the sound of drums and see the dancers.

ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ	ਊਹ ਮੁੰਡੇ ਸਟੇਜ ਤੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ ਡੰਗੜਾ ਪਾ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ। ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਚਮਕੀਲੇ ਰੰਗਦਾਰ ਕਪੜੇ ਪਾਏ ਹੋਏ ਹਨ। ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਹੱਥਾਂ ਵਿਚ ਡਾਂਗਾਂ ਹਨ।
ਡੋਵਡ	ਟਿੱਕ ਥੰਦੇ ਨੇ ਚੌਲ ਚੁੱਕਿਆ ਹੋਇਆ ਹੈ।
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਜੇਨ	ਚੌਲ ਦੇ ਵੱਜਣ ਨਾਲ ਸਿਰਫ ਪੇਰ ਨਹੀਂ ਸਗੋਂ ਦਿਲ ਵੀ ਨੱਚਣ ਲੱਗ ਪੈਂਦਾ ਹੈ। ਡੰਗੜੇ ਵਾਲਿਆਂ ਦੀਆਂ ਬੋਲੀਆਂ ਪੁਰਲੀਆਂ ਹਨ। ਮੈਨੂੰ ਨਵੇਂ ਤੇ ਅਜੇਕੇ ਗੀਤ ਚੰਗੇ ਲੱਗਦੇ ਹਨ ਜਿਹੜੇ ਟਿੱਕੇ ਦੇ ਜੰਮਪਲ ਨੌਜ਼ਾਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਰਚੇ ਹਨ।
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਜੇਨ	ਮੈਨੋ ਜਾਂ ਨ ਮੈਨੋ, ਡੰਗੜਾ ਅੰਤਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ ਨਾਚ ਬਣ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ। ਡਾਂਵਿੰਦ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਜਾਂ ਬਹਾਰ ਹੋ, ਡੰਗੜਾ ਦੇਖੋ ਸਕਦੇ ਹੋ।
ਮਿਸਟਰ ਸਿੰਘ ਜੇਨ	ਕੀ ਸਿਰਫ ਮੁੰਡੇ ਡੰਗੜਾ ਪਾਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ ?
ਡੋਵਡ	ਪੁਰਲੇ ਜ਼ਮਾਨੇ ਵਿਚ ਡੰਗੜਾ ਮੁੰਡਿਆਂ ਲਈ ਸੀ ਤੇ ਕਿੱਧਾ ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਲਈ ਸੀ। ਹੁਣ ਸਭ ਕੁਝ ਰਲ ਮਿਲ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ। ਦੇਖੋ ! ਕਿੱਧਾ ਸ਼ੁਭੁ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ।
ਜੇਨ	ਊਹਨਾਂ ਵਿੱਚੋਂ ਟਿੱਕ ਕੁੜੀ ਚੌਲਕੀ ਵਜਾ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਦੂਜੀ ਚੌਲਕੀ ਤੇ ਚਮਚਾ ਮਾਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ।
	ਹਰ ਕੋਈ ਚੜ੍ਹਦੀ ਕਲਾ ਵਿਚ ਹੈ। ਆਓ, ਆਪਾਂ ਨੱਚੀਏ !



Mr Singh Those boys on the stage are performing **bhangra**, a folk dance of Panjab. They are wearing sparkling, colourful clothes. They are carrying long wooden poles in their hands. One man is carrying a big drum.

David

Mr Singh With the beat of the drum, it is not only the feet but also the heart that starts dancing.

Jane The verses of **bhangra** are old fashioned. I like the new, modern songs which are composed by young people born and raised here.

Mr Singh Believe it or not, **bhangra** has become an international dance. Whether you are in Panjab or abroad, you can always see **bhangra**.

Jane Do only boys perform **bhangra**?

Mr Singh In the old times, **bhangra** was for the boys and **gidha** was for the girls. Now everything is mixed up. Look! The **gidha** has started.

David One of the girls is playing a small drum and the other girl is tapping the small drum with a spoon.

Jane Everyone is in high spirits. Come on, let's dance!



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee Vocabulary

ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ	lok naach	folk dance (m.)
ਚਮਕੀਲਾ	chamkeelaa	glittering, shining, sparkling (v.)
ਰੰਗਦਾਰ	rangdaar	colourful
ਡਾਂਗ	daaang	long wooden pole (f.)
ਢੇਲ	dhol	big drum (m.)
ਵਜਨਾ	vajnhaa	to be played, to be beaten

ਪੈਰ	pair	feet (m.)
ਸਗੋਂ	sagon	but also
ਦਿਲ	dil	heart (m.)
ਨਾਚਣਾ	nachchnhaa	to dance
ਬੋਲੀਆਂ	boleeaan	folk verse couplets (f.)
ਅਜੋਕਾ	ajokaa	modern
ਜੀਮਪਲ	janmpal	raised, born and bred
ਨੌਜਾਨ	naujuaan	youth (m.)
ਰਚਨਾ	rachnaa	composition (f.)
ਮੰਨੋ ਜਾਂ ਨਾ ਮੰਨੋ	manno jaan naa manno	believe it or not
ਅੰਤਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ	antarr aashtaree	international
ਜ਼ਮਾਨਾ	zamaanaa	times (m.)
ਗਿੱਧਾ	gidhdhaa	women's folk dance (m.)
ਰਲ ਮਿਲਣਾ	ral milnhaa	to be mixed
ਵਿੱਚੋਂ	vichchon	from within
ਚੇਲਕੀ	dholkee	small drum (f.)
ਵਜਾਊਣਾ	vajaauhhaa	to play (music), to beat
ਚਮਚਾ	chamchaa	spoon (m.)
ਮਾਰਨਾ	maarnaa	to hit, to tap
ਚੜ੍ਹਦੀ ਕਲਾ	charhhdee kalaa	high spirits

ਅਭਿਆਸ

abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. True or false?

- a. ਪੁਰਾਣੇ ਜਮਾਨੇ ਵਿਚ ਡੰਗੜਾ ਸਿਰਫ ਮੁੰਡਿਆਂ ਲਈ ਸੀ
- b. ਜੇਨ ਨੂੰ ਉਹ ਗੀਤ ਚੰਗੇ ਲੱਗਦੇ ਹਨ ਜਿਹੜੇ ਪੁਰਾਣੇ ਤੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦੇ ਹਨ
- c. ਚੇਲਕੀ ਤੇ ਕੁੜੀਆਂ ਡਾਂਗਾਂ ਮਚਦੀਆਂ ਹਨ
- d. ਡੰਗੜਾ ਅੰਤਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ ਨਾਚ ਬਣ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ

True / False

True / False

True / False

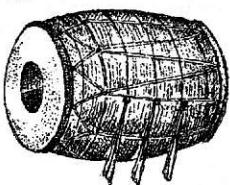
True / False

2. Write or say the sentences in Panjabi

- a. I like **bhangra**.
- b. I like **bhangra** more than **gidha**.
- c. Whether you're in Panjab or abroad, you can see **bhangra**.
- d. Come on, let's dance!

3. Try to identify the items from the descriptions given in the dialogue

a.



b.



c.



2 Avtar's life story

ਗੱਲ ਬਾਤ 2 ਅਵਤਾਰ ਦੀ ਜੀਵਨ ਕਹਾਣੀ

gall baat 2 avtaar dee jeevan kahaanhee

Two men, Avtar and Tarlok, are sitting on a park bench in Vancouver enjoying the sunny day. Avtar is reminiscing about his family's history and how he came to settle in Vancouver.

ਅਵਤਾਰ ਕੀ ਸਨ੍ਹੁ ਆਪਣੇ ਬਚਪਨ ਵਿਚ ਕਈ ਖਿਆਲ ਸੀ ਕਿ ਆਸੀਂ ਇਸ ਉਮਰ ਵਿਚ ਕੈਨੇਡਾ ਰਹਿ ਰਹੇ ਹੋਵਾਂ ਗੇ ? ਮੇਰਾ ਪੜਦਾਦਾ ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ਾਂ ਦੇ ਰਜ਼ ਵੇਲੇ ਫੌਜ ਵਿਚ ਭਰਤੀ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ ਤੇ ਉਸ ਨੂੰ ਮਲੋਸ਼ੀਆ ਭੇਜ ਦਿੱਤਾ ਗਿਆ। ਮੇਰੇ ਦਾਦੇ ਦਾ ਜਨਮ ਉੱਥੇ ਹੋਇਆ। ਜਦੋਂ ਉਹ ਵਪਸ ਪਰਿਤਿਆ ਤਾਂ ਅਜ਼ਾਦੀ ਲਈ ਜਦੋਂ ਜਾਹਿਰ ਸ਼ੁਰੂ ਹੋ ਗਈ ਸੀ। ਮੇਰਾ ਦਾਦਾ ਗੁਰਦਰ ਪਰਟੀ ਵਿਚ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੋ ਕੇ ਵੈਨਕੂਵਰ ਆ ਗਿਆ।

ਤਰਲੋਕ ਕੀ ਤੇਰਾ ਜਨਮ ਕੈਨੇਡਾ ਹੋਇਆ ਸੀ ?
ਅਵਤਾਰ ਕਹਾਣੀ ਲੰਬੀ ਹੈ। ਸਾਡੇ ਵੱਡਕਿਆਂ ਨੇ ਥਾਂ ਥਾਂ ਦਾ ਪਾਣੀ ਪੀਤਾ ਹੈ। ਸਮਾਂ ਪਾ ਕੇ ਮੇਰਾ ਦਾਦਾ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਮੁੜ ਗਿਆ। ਫਿਰ ੧੯੪੭ ਵਿਚ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਬਟਵਰਾ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ। ਉੱਦੋਂ ਮੇਰੇ ਪਿਤਾ ਜੀ ਲਾਈਲਪੁਰ ਸਨ ਤੇ ਸਾਰੇ ਪਰਵਰਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਜਾਣ ਪਿਆ। ਮੇਰਾ ਜਨਮ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਹੋਇਆ ਸੀ।

ਤਰਲੋਕ ਮੇਰੇ ਦਾਦਾ ਜੀ ਈਸਟ ਅਫਰੀਕਾ ਰੇਲਵੇ ਬਣਾਉਣ ਚਲੇ ਗਏ। ਮੇਰਾ ਜਨਮ ਅਸਥਾਨ ਯੂਨਿਡ ਹੈ। ੧੯੫੧ ਵਿਚ ਡੱਡ ਛਾਡਾ ਕੇ ਆਸੀਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਇੰਗਲੈਂਡ ਜਾਣ ਤੇ ਫਿਰ ਕੈਨੇਡਾ ਆ ਗਏ।

ਅਵਤਾਰ ਇਸ ਦਾ ਮਤਲਬ ਇਹ ਹੈ ਕਿ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ ਕਾਢੀ ਦੇਰ ਤੋਂ ਉਖੜੇ ਹੋਏ ਹੋ।
ਤਰਲੋਕ ਹਾਂ। ਪਰ ਹੁਣ ਮੇਰਾ ਦਿਲ ਲੱਗ ਗਿਆ ਹੈ, ਭਾਵੇਂ ਆਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਤੋਂ ਢੂਰ ਹਾਂ। ਇੱਥੇ ਆਪਣੀ ਅਥਾਦੀ ਕਾਢੀ ਹੈ। ਮਾਹੌਲ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਵਾਂਗੀ ਹੈ।

ਅਵਤਾਰ ਦੁਨੀਆਂ ਵਿਚ ਕਿਸੇ ਵੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਚਲੇ ਜਾਓ, ਭਾਵੇਂ ਕੈਨੇਡਾ ਭਾਵੇਂ ਇੰਗਲੈਂਡ ਜਾਂ ਅਮਰੀਕਾ, ਕੋਈ ਨ ਕੋਈ ਆਪਣਾ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੰਦਾ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਮਿਲ ਜਾਣ ਚਾਹੇ।

ਤਰਲੋਕ ਪਰ ਸਿਆਣੇ ਲੋਕ ਕਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ਕਿ ਧੋਬੀ ਦਾ ਕੁੱਤਾ ਨ ਘਰ ਦਾ ਨਾ ਘਾਟ ਦਾ !
ਅਵਤਾਰ ਇਹ ਅਖਣ ਪੁਰਣਾ ਹੈ। ਹੁਣ ਸਾਰੀ ਦੁਨੀਆਂ ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਹੈ। ਵਾਹਿਗੁਰੂ ਭਲੀ ਕਰੇ ਗਾ।

Avtar Did we ever dream in our childhood that at this age we would be living in Canada? My great grandfather joined the army during the time of British rule and he was sent to Malaysia. My grandfather was born there. When he returned home, the struggle for independence had started. My grandfather joined the *Gadar Party* and came to Vancouver.

Tarlok So, were you born in Canada?

Avtar It's a long story. Our forefathers have been to many places [lit. our forefathers drank water from many different places]. After a while, my grandfather returned to Panjab. Then in 1947 Panjab was partitioned. At that time my father was in Lyallpur and the whole family had to go to Jalandhar. I was born in Jalandhar.

Tarlok My grandfather went to East Africa to build the railways. My birthplace is Uganda. In 1971 we left everything and went first to England and then came to Canada.

Avtar This means that you have been uprooted from Panjab for a long time.

Tarlok Yes. But even though we are far away from Panjab, I am now happily settled [lit. my heart has been applied or fixed]. There are quite a lot of our own people here. The atmosphere is just like Panjab.

Avtar Go anywhere in the world, whether it's Canada, England or America, and you will meet a Panjabi person.

Tarlok But wise men say that immigrants belong to no one place. [Proverb: the dog of a washerman belongs neither at home nor at the washing place.]

Avtar This is an old proverb. Now the whole world belongs to you. God will watch over you.



ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ

shabdaavalee

Vocabulary

ਜੀਵਨ	jeevan	life (m.)
ਬਚਪਨ	bachpan	childhood (m.)
ਪੜਦਾਦਾ	parhdaadaa	great grandfather (m.)
ਰਜ਼	raaj	rulership, kingdom (m.)
ਵੇਲੇ	vele	period, time (m.)
ਫੌਜ	fauj	military (f.)
ਭਰਤੀ	bhartee	join
ਜਨਮ	janam	birth (m.)

ਪਰਤਣਾ	partnhaa	<i>to return</i>
ਆਜਾਦੀ	azaadee	<i>freedom, independence (f.)</i>
ਜਦੇ ਜਹਿਦ	jado jahid	<i>struggle (f.)</i>
ਆਜਾਦੀ ਲਈ ਜਦੇ	azaadee laee	<i>struggle for independence</i>
ਜਹਿਦ	jado jahid	
ਗਦਰ	ghadar	<i>mutiny (m.)</i>
ਗਦਰ ਪਾਰਟੀ	ghadar paartee	<i>Gadar Party (f.) (an anti-colonial political movement in Panjab in the early 20th century which had strong connections with Vancouver because of the large number of exiles from Panjab who went there)</i>
ਲੰਬਾ	lanbaa	<i>long, lengthy (v.)</i>
ਵਡੱਕਿਆਂ	vadkkiaan	<i>ancestors, forefathers (m.)</i>
ਥਾਂ ਥਾਂ	thaan thaan	<i>each and every place (m.)</i>
ਸਮਾਂ ਪਾ ਕੇ	samaan paa ke	<i>after a while, after some time</i>
ਮੁੜਨਾ	murhnaa	<i>to turn around, to return</i>
ਬਟਵਰਾ	batvaaraa	<i>division, partition (m.)</i>
ਈਸਟ ਅਫ੍ਰੀਕਾ	eest afreekaa	<i>East Africa (m.)</i>
ਯੁਗੰਡਾ	yoogandaa	<i>Uganda (m.)</i>
ਜਨਮ ਅਸਥਾਨ	janam asthaan	<i>birthplace (m.)</i>
ਉਖੜਨ	ukharhnaa	<i>to be displaced, to be uprooted</i>
ਦਿਲ ਲੱਗਣਾ	dil laggnhaa	<i>to feel at home, to be settled, to live happily</i>
ਕੋਈ ਨ ਕੋਈ	kooe na kooe	<i>some one or another</i>
ਸਿਆਇ	siaanhaa	<i>wise, mature (v.)</i>
ਧੋਬੀ	dhobee	<i>washerman (m.)</i>
ਕੁੱਝ	kuttaa	<i>dog (m.)</i>
ਘਾਟ	ghaat	<i>place where clothes are washed on the bank of the river or canal (m.)</i>
ਅਖਾਣ	akhaanh	<i>proverb, saying (m.)</i>
ਭਲੀ	bhalee	<i>look after, watch over</i>



ਅਭਿਆਸ abhiaas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Name four countries mentioned in the dialogue

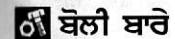
2. Answer the questions

Answer the following questions in Panjabi either in short form or in full sentences. You may lift the answers from the dialogue.

- ਜਿਹੜੇ ਏਨੋ ਏਸਤ ਆਪਸ ਵਿਚ ਗੱਲਾਂ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਹਨ, ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਨਾਮ ਕੀ ਹਨ ?
- ਅਵਤਰ ਦੇ ਦਾਦੇ ਦਾ ਜਨਮ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਹੋਇਆ ਸੀ ?
- ਜਦੋਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਬਟਵਰਾ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ, ਅਵਤਰ ਦਾ ਪਿਤਾ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ?
- ਤਰਲੋਕ ਦਾ ਜਨਮ ਅਸਥਾਨ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਹੈ ?
- ਸਿਆਣੇ ਬੰਦੇ ਕੀ ਕਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ?

3. Give the reasons why Avtar and Tarlok's families migrated to each place

- ਅਵਤਰ ਦੇ ਪੜਦਾਦ ਜੀ ਮਲੋਸ਼ੀਆ ਕਿਉਂ ਗਏ ਸੀ ?
- ਅਵਤਰ ਦੇ ਦਾਦਾ ਜੀ ਵੈਨਕੂਵਰ ਕਿਉਂ ਗਏ ਸੀ ?
- ੧੯੪੭ ਵਿਚ ਅਵਤਰ ਦੇ ਸਰੇ ਪਰਵਰ ਨੂੰ ਜਲੰਧਰ ਕਿਉਂ ਜਣ ਪਿਆ ?
- ਤਰਲੋਕ ਦੇ ਦਾਦਾ ਜੀ ਈਸਟ ਅਫ੍ਰੀਕਾ ਕਿਉਂ ਗਏ ਸੀ ?



ਬੋਲੀ ਬਾਰੇ bolee baare

Language points

Future continuous

The future continuous is used when an ongoing action in the future is being described, similar to the usage in the English sentence *I will be going*. This would be expressed in Panjabi as *ਮੈਂ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੋਵਾਂ ਜਾ*. The future continuous can also be used in situations when the on-going action in the future was not certain at the time of contemplation. For example, at the beginning of the second dialogue, when Avtar says to Tarlok ਕੀ ਸਨ੍ਹੂੰ ਕਦੀ ਖਿਆਲ ਸੀ ਕਿ ਅਸੀਂ ਕੈਨੋਡਾ ਰਹਿ ਰਹੇ ਹੋਵਾਂ ਗੇ ?, *Did we ever dream that we would be living in Canada?* In English the uncertainty of the sentence would be expressed through the use of *would* rather than *will*. In Panjabi the future continuous tense can be used for both types of situations.

In previous units you were introduced to both the present continuous tense and the future tense. The future continuous tense can be most simply understood as a combination of the present continuous and the future tenses. Notice in the following examples how the future continuous combines the two tenses:

Future tense	ਮੈਂ ਜਾਵਾਂ ਗਾ	<i>I will go</i>
Present continuous	ਮੈਂ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹਾਂ	<i>I am going</i>
Future continuous	ਮੈਂ ਜਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੋਵਾਂ ਗਾ	<i>I will/would be going</i>
Future tense	ਆਸੀਂ ਖਾਵਾਂ ਗੇ	<i>We will eat</i>
Present continuous	ਆਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੇ ਹਾਂ	<i>We are eating</i>
Future continuous	ਆਸੀਂ ਖਾ ਰਹੇ ਹੋਵਾਂ ਗੇ	<i>We will/would be eating</i>

The continuous action in the sentence takes the present continuous form such as in these examples with *going* represented through the stem ਜਾ and *eating* with the stem ਖਾ, and with the appropriate forms of ਰਿਹਾ. You should have noticed that the auxiliary verb that comes at the end of the present continuous tense does not appear in the future continuous. Instead, the verb ਹੋਵਾਂ is in the future form with the respective -ਗਾ endings.

Phrases of choice

In English, phrases of choice are expressed through such words as *either ... or*, *neither ... nor* and *not only ... but also*. In Panjabi there are similar types of constructions to express choice most commonly using the following:

ਭਾਵੇਂ ... ਭਾਵੇਂ	<i>either ... or, whether or not</i>
ਚਾਹੇ .. .ਚਾਹੇ	<i>either ... or, whether or not</i>
ਨ ... ਨ	<i>neither ... nor</i>
ਨ ਸਿਰਫ਼ ... ਸਗੋਂ	<i>not only ... but</i>
ਜਾਂ ... ਨਾ	<i>may or not</i>

Some examples of these words in use:

ਭਾਵੇਂ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਜਾਓ ਭਾਵੇਂ ਨਾ ਜਾਓ, ਮੈਂ ਇੱਥੇ ਰਹਾਂ ਗੀ	<i>Whether you go or not, I will stay here. (lit. Whether you go or whether you do not go, I will stay here.)</i>
ਚਾਹੇ ਸਾਡੇ ਨਾਲ ਆਓ ਚਾਹੇ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨਾਲ ਜਾਓ, ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਜਲਦੀ ਨਿਕਲਣਾ ਪੈਣਾ	<i>Whether you come with us or (whether you) go with them, you'll have to get out quickly.</i>
ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ ਹਨ ਨਾ ਕਾਗਜ਼ ਹੈ ਲੋਕ ਨਾ ਸਿਰਫ਼ ਭਾਰਤ ਤੋਂ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ ਸਗੋਂ ਸਾਰੀ ਦੁਨੀਆਂ ਤੋਂ ਆਉਂਦੇ ਹਨ ਮੰਨੋ ਜਾਂ ਨਾ ਮੰਨੋ ਇਹ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਸੁਹਣੀ ਹੈ	<i>We have neither books nor paper. People come not only from India, but from all over the world. You may or may not agree but this is the nicest place.</i>

ਹੈ ਗਾ and ਸੀ ਗਾ

In colloquial Panjabi, the verb ਹੋਵਾਂ is often expressed with the ending -ਗਾ when there is an added emphasis. The ending -ਗਾ merely indicates definiteness or confirmation, and must agree with the number and gender of the subject that it is referring to followed by the appropriate present form of ਹੋਵਾਂ. In Unit 3 Jane and Henry went to the sweets shop with Mr Singh. Jane asked the shopkeeper ਕੀ ਕੋਈ ਨਮਕੀਨ ਚੀਜ਼ ਹੈ ?, *Is there anything salty?* This question is general in nature. If Jane had wished to put further emphasis on the definite availability of something salty, she could have said: ਕੀ ਕੋਈ ਨਮਕੀਨ ਚੀਜ਼ ਹੈ ਗੀ ?, *Is there anything salty (available)?* The shopkeeper could have then replied ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਹੈ ਗੀ ਏ; *Yes, there (definitely) is.* Note that the feminine singular form is used (-ਗੀ) in agreement with ਚੀਜ਼, although in the shopkeeper's response the subject is omitted as it is simply understood. Since ਹੈ ਗਾ is only used in informal speech, the auxiliary verb ਹੋਵਾਂ also appears in its informal form, hence ਏ instead of ਹੈ.

When one wants to express the same type of definiteness in the past, then ਸੀ (was) is followed by the ending -ਗਾ. Again, the number and gender of the subject will determine the ending of -ਗਾ. Some examples are as follows:

ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ ਤੇ ਸਿਮਰਨ ਘਰ ਸੀ ਗੀਆਂ	<i>Jaspreet and Simran were (definitely) at home.</i>
ਤੁਸੀਂ ਚੁਪ ਚਾਪ ਸੀ ਗੇ	<i>You (certainly) were quiet.</i>
You will come across ਹੈ ਗਾ and ਸੀ ਗਾ frequently in spoken colloquial conversation, though rarely in the written form.	

ਵਿਆਖਿਆ viaakhiaa Commentary

Folk music

Folk music is an integral part of cultural expression not only in Panjab, but in the three Panjabs: East Panjab in India, West Panjab in Pakistan and the Panjabi diaspora all over the world. In fact, music is one of the main factors that links Panjabis across religious, national and caste divisions. **Bhangra** music, in particular, has come to prominence in the last twenty years in the west. The picture of the two boys on the cover of this book actually shows the traditional costume of **bhangra** dancers. This active and incessant dance music form is a vital part of a global expression of youth culture as well as a particular link between *des* (*home*) and *pardes* (*abroad*) for many Panjabis.

As we saw in the previous unit, there are many other musical forms from Panjab which focus on the relationship between music and poetry which are less related to the robust dance style of **bhangra** and more to the film music and **ghazal** (ballad) form. A wide range of Panjabi music from westernised dance music to slow ballads is widely available in the South Asian shopping centres of London, New York, Toronto and Melbourne.



abhiyas

Exercises

After reading the dialogue and/or listening to the audio tape, try to do the following exercises.

1. Complete the sentences

Complete the sentences (verbally or in written form) with the help of the vocabulary given. The first one has been done for you.

a. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ ਕਿਤਾਬਾਂ ਹਨ, ਨਾ ਕਾਸ਼ਤ ਹੈ।

We have neither books nor paper.

b. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ _____ ਹਨ, ਨਾ _____ ਹੈ।

c. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ _____ ਹਨ, ਨਾ _____ ਹੈ।

d. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ _____ ਹਨ, ਨਾ _____ ਹੈ।

ਪੈਸਲਾਂ pencils ਕਾਪੀ exercise book ਘੜੀਆਂ watches

ਰੇਡੀਓ radio ਬੇਤਲਾਂ bottles ਪਾਣੀ water

2. Say or write the sentences in Panjabi

- ਮੈਂਨੇ ਜਾਂ ਨਾ ਮੈਂਨੇ, ਇਹ ਜਗਾ ਸੋਹਣੀ ਹੈ।
Believe it or not, this place is beautiful.
- Not only is this book long, but it is also difficult.
- Not only do we like **bhangra**, but we also like **gidha**.
- Whether you live in Panjab or abroad, you can see **bhangra**.
- You may or may not agree, but Vancouver's atmosphere is just like Panjab.

3. Tick the boxes which correspond with Tarlok and Avtar's respective life histories

	ਇੰਗਲੈਂਡ	ਮਲੇਸੀਆ	ਕੈਨੇਡਾ	ਲਾਟਿਨਾਪੁਰ	ਚੁਗੀਂਡਾ	ਜਲੰਧਰ
ਤਰਲੋਕ						
ਅਵਤਰ						

APPENDIX 1

Consonants			Velar	Palatal	Retroflex	Dental	Labial	
Plosives	Voiceless	Unaspirated	ਕ	ਚ	ਟ	ਤ	ਪ	
		Aspirated	ਖ	ਛ	ਠ	ਥ	ਫ	
	Voiced	Unaspirated	ਗ	ਝ	ਡ	ਦ	ਬ	
		Aspirated	ਘ	ਝ	ਢ	ਧ	ਭ	
Nasals			ਙ	ਵ	ਣ	ਨ	ਮ	
Fricatives		Voiceless	ਖ	ਸ		ਸ	ਝ	
		Voiced	ਗ			ਜ		
Flapped and Tapped sounds					ੜ	ਰ		
Aspirate, semi-vowel and liquid			ਹ	ਯ		ਲ	ਵ	

APPENDIX 2

Comparison of tongue positions



- a. Pronunciation of t and d in English. Tongue against the teeth ridge.
- b. Pronunciation of ਤ t and ਦ d. Tongue against the base of upper incisors.
- c. Pronunciation of ਰ r and ਲ l. Tongue against the back hard palate.

KEY TO EXERCISES

Reading and writing

Lesson 4 Exercise 2 a. ਰਿੱਡ b. ਕਿੱਲ c. ਹਿਰਨ Lesson 5 Exercise 2 a. ਸੀਟੀ b. ਬਿੱਲੀ c. ਵਾਲੀ Lesson 6 Exercise 2 a. ਚੱਕਟ b. ਜ਼ਬਾਨ c. ਉੱਨ Lesson 7 Exercise 2 a. ਉੱਠ b. ਸੂਰ c. ਝਾਊ Lesson 8 Exercise 2 a. ਲੇਲੇ b. ਭੇਡ c. ਸੋਥ Lesson 9 Exercise 2 a. ਭੈਣ b. ਐਤਵਾਰ c. ਐਨਕ Lesson 10 Exercise 2 a. ਪੋਤਾ b. ਮੌਤਾ c. ਘੋੜਾ Lesson 11 Exercise 2 a. ਚੌਲ b. ਪਿੱਡੋਟੇ c. ਫੌਜੀ Lesson 12 Exercise 2 a. ਜੰਵ b. ਲੰਕਾ c. ਵਤਾਉ

Unit 1

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. True b. True c. False 2. a. ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਂ ਡੇਵਿਡ ਹੈ। meraa naan devid hai. b. ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa kee naam hai? c. ਤੇਰਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਂ ਏ ? teraa kee naam e?

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. ਅੱਸਲਾਮ ਅਲੈਕਮਾ asslaam alaikam. b. ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ ? tuhaadaa kee haal hai? c. ਕੀ ਪਰਵਰ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ ? kee parvaar theek hai? 2. a. 2 b. 3 c. 1

End exercises

1. 1st line, 2nd letter; 3rd line, 1st letter; 5th line, 4th letter 2. a. ਨਮਸਤੇ namaste b. ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ vaalaikam asslaam c. ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ sat sree akaal
3. a. ਤੁਹਾਡਾ tuhaadaa b. ਤੇਰਾ teraa c. ਤੇਰਾ teraa 4. You: ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ! ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ _____ ਹੈ। ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਨਾਮ ਹੈ ? sat sree akaal. meraa naam _____ hai. tuhaadaa kee naam hai? You: ਮੈਂ ਠੀਕ ਹਾਂ। ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕਿਵੇਂ ਹੋ ? main theek haan. tuseen kiven ho? You: ਰੱਬ ਰਖਾ! rabb raakhaa.

Unit 2

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. False b. False c. True 2. Jeevan – Panjabi John – English Ram – Gujarati

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. Ashok: **ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਮੈਂ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਹਾਂ। haan jee, main ashok haan.** Mrs Sharma: **ਮੇਰਾ ਹਾਲ ਠੀਕ ਹੈ। meraa haal theek hai.** Kiran: **ਨਹੀਂ, ਮੇਰੇ ਮਤਾ ਜੀ ਇੱਥੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਨ। naheen, mere maataa jee iththe naheen han.** 2. a. **ਮੈਂ ਕਿਰਨ ਹਾਂ। main kirun haan.** b. **ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਅਸ਼ੋਕ ਹੋ ? kee tuseen ashok ho?** c. **ਉਹ ਇੱਥੇ ਨਹੀਂ ਹਨ uh iih the naheen han.** 3. 1. Panjabi 2. English 3. Class 4. Mrs Sharma 5. Hindu

End exercises

1. are, hai, हे 2. a. **की तुसीं अशोक हो ? kee tuseen ashok ho?** b. **की तुम्हीं किरन हो ? kee tuseen kirun ho?** c. **मैं किरन हां। main kirun haan.** d. **उह असेक है uh ashok hai.** 3. a. **हैं। hain** b. **हां। haan** c. **हन। han** 4. 1st line 2nd letter 3rd line 1st letter 4th line 2nd letter

Unit 3

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. False b. False c. True d. False e. True 2. **ਕਰੇਲਾ karelaa ਸਲਗਮ shalgam** ਭਿੰਡੀ bhinddee ਗੋਡੀ gobhee ਟਮਾਟਰ tamaatar ਮਟਰ matar

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. miththaa, bitter, मुआद 2. a. **ਇਹ ਢੁਕਣ ਹੈ। ih dukaan hai.** b. **ਇਹ ਚੰਗੀ ਢੁਕਣ ਹੈ। ih changee dukaan hai.** c. **ਇਹ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਦੀ ਢੁਕਣ ਹੈ। ih mithiaaee dee dukaan hai.** d. **ਇਹ ਚੰਗੀ ਮਿਠਿਆਈ ਦੀ ਢੁਕਣ ਹੈ। ih changee mithiaaee dee dukaan hai.**

End exercises

1. a. **ਛੋਟਾ chotaa** b. **ਵੱਡਾ vaddaa** c. **ਛੋਟੀ chotee** d. **ਵੱਡੀ vaddee** e. **ਛੋਟਾ chotaa** f. **ਵੱਡਾ vaddaa** 2. Mr Singh: samosaa, pakaurhe, bhinddee Jane: samosaa, laddoo, pakaurhe Henry: rasmalaaee, bhinddee, gobhee 3. a. **ਗੁਲਾਬ ਜਾਮਨ gulaab jaamanh** b. **ਬਰਫੀ barfee** c. **ਸਮੋਸਾ samosaa** d. **ਪਕੋਡੇ pakaurhe** 4. a. **ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ uhnaan de** b. **ਮੇਰੇ mere** c. **ਸਾਡੀਆਂ saadeeaan** d. **ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ tuhaadeeaan**

Unit 4

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. b. **ਕੀ ਇਹ ਸੀਟ ਖਾਲੀ ਹੈ ? kee ih seat khaalee hai?** ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਖਾਲੀ ਹੈ। haan jee, khaalee hai. c. **ਮੈਂ ਅਧਿਆਪਕਾ ਹਾਂ। main adhiaapkaa haan.** d. **ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਦੇ ਹੋ ? tuseen kee karde ho?** 2. a. **ਮੈਂ ਵੀ ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ ਰਹਿੰਦਾ ਹਾਂ। main vee birmingham rahindaa haan.** b. **ਮੈਂ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਤੋਂ ਹਾਂ। main dillee ton haan.** c. **ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਕਰਦੇ ਹੋ ? tuseen kee karde ho?** 3. 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. e 5. d

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. True b. True c. False 2. a. **ਮੇਰਾ ਨਾਮ () ਹੈ। meraa naam () hai.** b. **ਮੈਂ () ਹਾਂ। main () haan.** c. **ਮੈਂ () ਤੋਂ ਹਾਂ। main () ton haan.** d. **ਮੈਂ () ਰਹਿੰਦਾ / ਰਹਿੰਦੀ ਹਾਂ। main () rahindaa/rahindee haan.**

End exercises

1. a. True b. False c. False d. False 2. a. Mrs Sharma b. Mrs Khan c. Dr Singh 3. a. direct b. oblique c. direct d. oblique e. oblique 4. b. **ਮੇਰੀਆਂ ਬੇਟੀਆਂ ਸਕੂਲ ਵਿਚ ਪੜ੍ਹੀਆਂ ਹਨ। mereeaan beteeaan sakool vich parhhdeeaan han.** My daughters study in school. c. **ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਲੜਕੇ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹਨ ? tuhaade larhke kiththe rahinde han?** Where do your sons live? d. **ਕੀ ਉਹ ਮੁੰਡੇ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਦੇ ਹਨ ? kee uh munde panjaabee bolde han?** Do those boys speak Panjabi ?

Unit 5

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. **ਨਮਸਤੇ, ਤੂੰ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੀ ਹੋ ? namaste, toon kee kar rahee hain?** b. **ਮੈਂ ਜੇਥਾਂ ਲਗ ਰਹੀ ਹਾਂ। main jebaan lagaa rahee haan.** c. **ਮੈਨੇਜਰ ਸਡੀ ਤਨਖਾਹ ਨਹੀਂ ਵਧ ਰਿਹਾ। mainejar saadee tankhaah naheen vadhaa rihaa.** 2. 1. machine 2. work 3. salary 4. pockets 5. time 6. needle

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. 1st line 2nd letter 2nd line 1st letter 3rd line 3rd letter 4th line 2nd letter 2. a. **ਸੁਮੀਤ ਫਿਲਮ ਦੇਖ ਰਹੀ ਸੀ। sumeet filam dekh rahee see.** b. **ਬੱਚੇ ਖੇਡ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ। bachche khed rahe san.** c. **ਸੁਮੀਤ ਦਾ ਪਤੀ ਕਰ ਯੇ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ। sumeet daa patee kaar dho riha see.**

End exercises

1. a. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸਮਾਂ ਜਾਇਆ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ। tuseen samaan_a zaiaa kar rahe ho. b. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੌਮ ਕਿਉਂ ਛੱਡ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ ? tuseen kaun_m kiun_s chadd rahe ho? c. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਠੀਕ ਕਹਿ ਰਹੇ ਹੋ। tuseen theek kahi rahe ho. 2. patee, house/home, ਕੱਲ੍ਹ 3. b. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਪੁੱਛ ਰਹੇ ਸੀ ? tuseen kee puchch_s rahe see? What were you asking ? c. ਉਹ ਕੀ ਕਰ ਰਹੇ ਸਨ ? uh kee kar rahe san? What were they doing ? d. ਉਹ ਕਾਰ ਚੋਣ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ। uh kaar dho rihaa see. He was washing the car. 4. a. ਗੀਤਾ ਟੈਨਿਸ ਬੇਡ ਰਹੀ ਹੈ। geetaa tainas khed rahee hai. Geeta is playing tennis. b. ਅਵਤਾਰ ਖਾਣਾ ਖਾ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ। avtaar khaanhaa khaa rihaa hai. Avtar is eating food. c. ਸੀਤਾ ਤੇ ਗੀਤਾ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲ ਰਹੀਆਂ ਹਨ। seetaa te geetaa panjaabee bol raheaaan han. Sita and Geeta are speaking Panjabi. d. ਮੁੰਡਾ ਕਿਤਾਬ ਪੜ੍ਹ ਰਿਹਾ ਹੈ। munda_a kitaab parhh rihaa hai. The boy is reading a book.

Unit 6

Dialogue 1 exercises

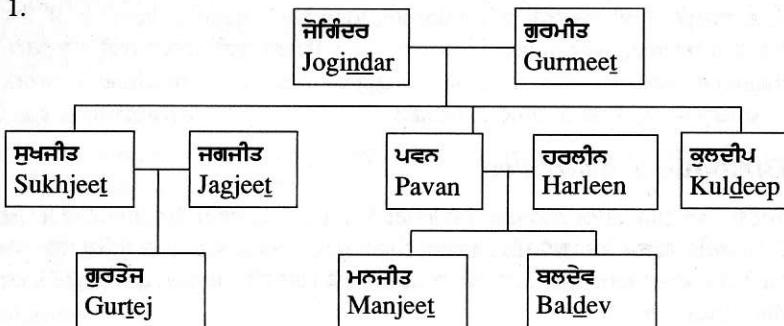
1. a. ਪਵਨ ਲੰਡਨ ਸੀ। pavan landan see. Pavan was in London. b. ਪਵਨ ਦੀ ਭਤੀਜੀ ਦਾ ਵਿਆਹ ਸੀ। pavan dee bhateejee daa viaah see. It was Pavan's niece's wedding. c. ਮਾਂਚੈਸਟਰ maanchaistar Manchester d. ਤਕਰੀਬਨ ੧੦੦ ਥੱਡੇ takreeban 100 bande about 100 people 2. a. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਐਤਵਰ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ? tuseen aitvaar kith_s the see? b. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ? tuseen kallh kith_s see? c. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਛਾਡੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਕਿੱਥੇ ਸੀ ? tuseen hafte de akheer kith_s see?

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. ਇਸਤਰੀ, woman ikathth, gathering ਪ੍ਰਾਹੁਣੇ, prahunhe ਕਾਲਜ, college ਭਾਬੀ, bhaabee 2. a. informal b. informal c. formal

End exercises

1.



KEY TO EXERCISES

259

2. a. 2 b. 3 c. 1 3. a. True b. False c. True 4. b. ਉਹ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਲੰਡਨ ਨਹੀਂ ਜਾਏ ਸਨ। uh hafte de akheer landan naheen gae san. ਕੀ ਉਹ ਹਫ਼ਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ ਜਾਏ ਸਨ ? kee uh hafte de akheer landan gae san? c. ਆਸੀਂ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਟੈਨਸ ਨਹੀਂ ਖੇਡੇ ਸੀ। aseen ikaththe tainas naheen khedde see. ਕੀ ਆਸੀਂ ਇਕੱਠੇ ਟੈਨਸ ਖੇਡੇ ਸੀ ? kee aseen ikaththe tainas khedde see? d. ਉਹ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਨਹੀਂ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ। uh panjaabee naheen boldee hundee see ਕੀ ਉਹ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲਦੀ ਹੁੰਦੀ ਸੀ ? kee uh panjaabee boldee hundee see?

Unit 7

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. ਜ਼ਰੂਰ zaroor b. ਕੱਲ੍ਹ kallh c. ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ kinne vaje 2. 4. 2. 3. 1.

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਕੀ ਪੀਓ ਗੇ ? tuseen kee peeo ge? b. ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਟੀ ਵੀ ਦੇਖੋ ਗੇ ? kee tuseen tee vee dekho ge? c. ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਰਸ ਲਵੇ ਗੇ ਜਾਂ ਰਾਹ ? kee tuseen ras lavo ge jaan chah? 2. 1st line 1st letter 3rd line 3rd letter 5th line 2nd letter

End exercises

1. a. ਤੂ ਸੁਣ toon sunh b. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣੋ tuseen sunho c. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਸੁਣੋ ਜੀ tuseen sunho jee d. ਜ਼ਰਾ ਸੁਣਨਾ ਜੀ zaraa sunhnaa jee 2. 1. ਰਸ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ das vaje han 2. ਰਾਈ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ dhaaee vaje han 3. ਪੈਣੇ ਛੇ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ paunhe che vaje han 4. ਸਵਾ ਅੱਠ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ savaa athth vaje han 5. ਬਚ੍ਚਾਂ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ baar-h-aan vaje han 6. ਸੱਤ ਵਜੇ ਹਨ satt vaje han 3. a. ਮੈਂ ਰਾਹ ਪੀਵਾਂ ਗਾ main chaah peeavaan gaa b. ਮੈਂ ਰਾਹ ਪੀਵਾਂ ਜੀ main chaah peeavaan gee c. ਆਸੀਂ ਰਾਹ ਪੀਵਾਂ ਗੇ aseen chaah peeavaan ge d. ਆਸੀਂ ਰਾਹ ਪੀਵਾਂ ਜੀਆਂ aseen chaah peeavaan gaeaan 4. a. ਹਾਂ ਜੀ, ਪੰਨਵਾਦ haan jee, dhanvaaad b. ਹਾਂ, ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਮੈਂ ਆਵਾਂ ਗਾ haan, kallh main aavaan gaa c. ਨਹੀਂ ਮੈਂ ਕਾਚਲ ਵਿਚ ਹਾਂ naheen main kaahal vich haan d. ਚੰਗਾ ਫਿਰ, ਮੈਂ ਉਡੀਕਾਂ ਗਾ changaa phir, main udeekaan gaa

Unit 8

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. 1. ਸਿਤਾਰ sitaar 2. ਡਾਲਰ daalar 3. ਖਰਚ kharchaa 4. ਫਿਰਨਾ phirnaa
2. a. 2 b. 3 c. 1

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. ਸਨ੍ਹੁ ਬੋੜੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਆਉਂਦੀ ਹੈ। saanoon thorhee bahutee panjaabee aaun dee hai. b. ਅਸੀਂ ਕਨਾਟ ਪਲੇਸ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਹੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ। aseen kanaat pales jaanhaa chaahundeeaan haan. c. ਜੀ ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਦੋ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਰਹਿਣ ਦੀ ਆਗਿਆ ਦੇਵੇ ਗੇ। jee kee tuseen do maheene rahinh dee aagiaa devo ge. 2. a. ਤੁਸੀਂ ਦੋ ਸਵਾਰੀਆਂ ਹੋ ਤੇ ਸਮਾਨ ਵੀ ਬਹੁਤ ਹੈ। tuseen do saveareaan ho te samaan vee bahu^t hai. b. ਸਤੇ ਕੋਲ ਕੇਵਲ ਇੱਕ ਮਹੀਨੇ ਦਾ ਵੀਜ਼ਾ ਹੈ। saade kol keval ikk maheene daa veezaa hai. c. ਅਨੰਦ ਮਾਣੋ! anand maanho!

End exercises

1. a. ਚਹੀਦੀ chaaheedee b. ਚਹੀਦਾ chaaheedaa c. ਵਜਾਉਣ vajaaunh 2. a. ਉਸ ਨੂੰ ਕੀ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ? us noon ke chaaheedaa hai? b. ਪੀਓ, ਤੁਹਾਨੂੰ ਕੀ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ? dheeoo, tuhaanoon ke chaaheedaa hai? c. ਤੂੰ ਕਿਹਨਾਂ ਨੂੰ ਦੱਸਿਆ ਸੀ? toon kihnaan noon dassiaa see? d. ਕੀ ਸਨ੍ਹੁ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ? kee saanoon jaanhaa chaaheedaa hai? 3. a. ਘਰ ਵਲਾ ghar vaalaa b. ਟੈਕਸੀ ਵਲਾ taiksee vaalaa c. ਸਬਜ਼ੀ ਵਲਾ sabzee vaalaa 4. four Ashoka Hotel Rs50 agreed 10 miles none yes

Unit 9

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. ਮੌਨ੍ਹੁ ਫਿੱਕੇ ਰੰਗ ਦਾ ਕਪੜਾ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ। mainoon phikke rang daa kaprhaa chaaheedaa hai. b. ਮੈਨੂੰ ਮੇਟਾ ਅਤੇ ਹੰਦਨਸਾਰ ਕਪੜਾ ਚਹੀਦਾ ਹੈ। mainoon motaa ate handhanhsaar kaprhaa chaaheedaa hai. c. ਅੱਜ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਦੇ ਰਵਾਜ਼ ਦੀ ਛਪਾਈ ਚਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। ajj kallh de ravaaj dee chapaaee chaaheedee hai. d. ਕੀਮਤ ਬਹੁਤ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਨਹੀਂ ਹੋਣੀ ਚਹੀਦੀ। keemat bahut ziaadaa naheen honhee chaaheedee. 2. vadheesaa, good ਵਧੇਰੇ, vadhere ਕੀਮਤ, price mukaablaa, comparison ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ, best

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. ਕੀ ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ ਹੈ? kee takleef hai? b. ਕੀ ਤੈਨੂੰ ਬੁਖਾਰ ਹੈ? kee tainoon bukhaar hai? c. ਹੁਣ ਮੈਂ ਸਮਝਿਆ। hunh main samajhiaa. 2. You: ਤਬੀਅਤ Doctor: ਤਕਲੀਫ਼ You: ਪੇਟ pet, ਦਰਦ dard, ਬੁਖਾਰ bukhaar Doctor: ਬੁਖਾਰ bukhaar, ਥੱਡ thand Doctor: ਦਵਾਈ davaaee, ਅਰਾਮ araam

End exercises

1. Horizontal: 1st line 1st letter 2nd line 2nd letter 3rd line 1st letter 4th line 3rd letter 5th line 2nd letter Vertical: 1st column 3rd letter 2nd column 2nd letter 3rd column 2nd letter 4th column 1st letter 5th column 1st letter 2. a. ਮੌਨ੍ਹੁ ਠੰਡ ਲੱਗਦੀ ਹੈ। mainoon thand laggdee hai. b. ਮੇਰਾ ਸਿਰ

KEY TO EXERCISES

ਡੁੱਖਦਾ ਹੈ। meraa sir dukhkhdaa hai. c. ਮੇਰੇ ਪੇਟ ਵਿਚ ਦਰਦ ਹੈ। mere pet vich dard hai. d. ਮੈਨੂੰ ਬੁਖਾਰ ਹੈ। mainoon bukhaar hai. 3. a. ਮੈਂ ਕੱਲ੍ਹ ਨਹੀਂ ਆ ਸਕਦਾ/ਸਕਦੀ। main kallh naheen aa sakdaa/sakdee. b. ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬੀ ਬੋਲ ਸਕਦੇ ਹੋ? kee tuseen panjaabee bol sakde ho? c. ਅਸੀਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਉੱਥੇ ਜਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹਾਂ। aseen pahile uththe jaa chuke haan. d. ਉਹ ਪਹਿਲੇ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੇ ਹਨ। uh pahile khaa chuke han. 4. a. ਜਿਹੜਾ jehrhaa b. ਜਿਸ jis c. ਜਿਹੜੇ jehrhe d. ਜੋ jo

Unit 10

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. True b. False c. False 2. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. a. ਨਾਨਾ ਜੀ ਤੇ ਨਾਨੀ ਜੀ ਕੋਲ naanaa jee te naanee jee kol b. ਗੁਰੂ gurh c. ਕਹਣਾਈਆਂ ਸਣੀਆਂ kahaanheeaan sunheeaan d. ਦੁੱਧ dudhdh 2. pind, village ਖੁਹ, water-well vihrhaa, court yard ਖੇਤ, khet ਗੰਨਾ, sugarcane

End exercises

1. a. ਖਣਾ ਖਾ ਕੇ ਆਸੀਂ ਮੈਂ ਜਾਣੋ! khaanhaa khaa ke aseen sau ge! b. ਢੁਕਨ ਤੇ ਜਾ ਕੇ ਦੁੱਧ ਲਿਆ! dukaan te jaa ke dudhdh liaa! c. ਕੰਮ ਖਤਮ ਕਰ ਕੇ ਤੂੰ ਘਰ ਨੂੰ ਚੱਲੋ ਜਾ। kanm khatam kar ke toon ghar noon chale jaa! d. ਜਲੰਧਰ ਹੋ ਕੇ ਅੰਮਰਿਤਸਰ ਜਾਓ। jalander ho ke anmritsar jaaao! 2. a. ਖਾਂਧੇ khaadhe b. ਰੋਟੀ roee c. ਸੁਣਦੀ sunhaaee d. ਕਟਿਆ katiaa 3. You: ਬਹੁਤ ਸਹੂਣੀ ਰਹੀ। ਮੈਂ ਟਾਰਾਫਲਗਰ ਸਭਾਰ (ਗਟੀ/ਗਿਆ) ਅਤੇ ਨੈਲਸਨ ਦਾ ਕਾਲਮ ਦੇਖਿਆ। ਮੈਂ ਬਕਿੰਘਮ ਪੇਲਸ ਵੀ (ਗਟੀ/ਗਿਆ)। bahut suhnhee rahee. main taraafalgar sakuar (gacee/giaa) ate nailsan daa kaalam dekhiaa. main bakingham pailas vee (gacee/giaa). You: ਮੈਂ ਐਕਸਫ਼ੋਰਡ ਸਰਬਸ (ਗਟੀ/ਗਿਆ) ਅਤੇ ਕੁਝ ਕਪੜੇ ਖਰੀਦੋ। main auksford sarkas (gacee/giaa) ate kujh kaprhe khareede. You: ਮੈਂ ਕੇਵਲ ਪੀਜ਼ ਖਾਧਾ। main keval peezaa khaadhaa. 4. 1. ਖੁਹ waterwell 2. ਮੱਝ majjh 3. ਗੰਨਾ ganna 4. ਘਰ ghar 5. ਖੇਤ khet

Unit 11

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੂ b. ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ c. ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੂ d. ਸਿਮਰਨ e. ਜਸਪ੍ਰੀਤ 2. a. ਅਸੀਂ ਅੱਜ ਜਾਣਾ ਚਹੀਦੀਆਂ ਹਾਂ। b. ਨਵੀਆਂ ਥਾਂਵਾਂ ਦੇਖਣਾ ਚੰਗੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ। c. ਇਹ ਹਨ ਤੁਹਾਡੀਆਂ ਦੇ ਟਿਕਟਾਂ।

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 2. 1. gold 2. dome 3. visitors 4. world 5. city
6. guru Mystery word: Amritsar

End exercises

1. a. ਸਾਨੇ ਪੰਜਾਬ b. ਸੈਲਾਨੀ, ਜਾਂਦੇ c. ਲਫ਼ਜ਼ੀ, ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤ ਦਾ ਸਰੋਵਰ d. ਹੋ-ਰਿਹਾ ਕੀਰਤਨ, ਸ਼ਾਂਡੀ, ਸਵਰਗ 2. a. ਗੁਰੂ ਰਾਮ ਦਾਸ b. ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤ ਦਾ ਸਰੋਵਰ c. ਗੁਬਦਾਂ ਤੇ ਸੌਨਾ ਲੱਗ ਹੋਇਆ ਹੈ 3. You: ਮੈਂ ਅੱਜ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਜਟਾ (ਚਹੁੰਦਾ) ਹਾਂ। ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਚੰਗੀ ਦਿੱਲੀ ਜਾਣ ਵਾਲੀ ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿਹੜੀ ਹੈ? You: ਕੀ ਮੈਨੂੰ ਸੈਕੰਡ ਕਲਾਸ ਵਿਚ ਸੀਟ ਮਿਲ ਜਾਏ ਗੀ। You: ਨਹੀਂ, ਮੈਨੂੰ ਵਖਪਸੀ ਟਿਕਟ ਚਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ ਤੋਂ ਗੱਡੀ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੋਂ ਚਲਦੀ ਹੈ? You: ਅੱਛਾ, ਮੈਨੂੰ ਇੱਕ ਸੈਕੰਡ ਕਲਾਸ ਦੀ ਟਿਕਟ ਦੇਵੇ।

Unit 12

Dialogue exercises

1. a. False b. True c. False d. True 2. a. ਜਰਮਨ, ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼ੀ, ਪੰਜਾਬੀ b. ਤਜ ਮੱਹਲ c. ਸਹਿਮਤ, ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ d. ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤਸਰ

Letter exercises

1. lagaataar, continuously ਪਿਆਰੇ, dear khush, happy ਗਰਮੀ, garmee ਵਾਰੀ, instance 2. a. ਉਹਨਾਂ ਨੇ ਉਹ ਮਕਾਨ ਦੇਖਿਆ ਜਿੱਥੇ ਉਹਨਾਂ ਦੇ ਮਾਤਾ ਪਿਤਾ ਰਹਿੰਦੇ ਹੋਏ ਸੀ b. ਬਾਜ਼ਾਰ c. ਅਥਾਦੀ ਤੇ ਟਰੈਫਿਕ ਬਹੁਤ ਹੈ d. ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਗਾਤਾਂ

End exercises

1. a. ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕਾ ਹਾਂ। b. ਮੈਂ ਖਾ ਚੁਕੀ ਹਾਂ। c. ਉਹ ਬੋਲ ਚੁਕੇ ਸਨ। d. ਉਹ ਦਸ ਮਿੰਟ ਤੋਂ ਬੋਲ ਰਿਹਾ ਸੀ। 2. ਯੂ. ਐਸ. ਡਾਲਰ ੮੦੦ ਡਾਲਰ ੩੫ ਰੁਪੇ ਵੱਧ ਅਮਰੀਕਨ 3. ਪਿਆਰੇ ਫੇਰੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ ਹਾਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਹਿਬ ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ ਸ਼ਬਦਾਵਲੀ ਹੁੰਦੇ ਤਾਂ ਆਉਂਦਾ

Unit 13

Exercises to matrimonial advertisement

1. a. Yes b. Yes c. No 2. Not a suitable match! 3. a. ਲੜਕੀ ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੋਕਰੀ ਤੇ ਲੱਗੀ ਹੋਣੀ ਚਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। b. ਤਲਕ ਸੁਦਾ ਲੜਕੀਆਂ ਨੂੰ ਲਿਖਣ ਦੀ ਲੋੜ ਨਹੀਂ। c. ਲੜਕੀ ਦੀ ਉਮਰ ੨੫ ਸਾਲ ਤੋਂ ਵੱਧ ਨ ਹੋਵੇ। d. ਲੜਕਾ ਸੱਚੀ ਮੁੱਢੀ ਸੁਹਣਾ ਹੈ।

Dialogue exercises

1. a. 2 b. 1 c. 4 d. 3 2. a. Edinburgh b. Ilford c. Manjit Singh d. Kanwaljit Kaur e. Gurbax Singh and Jasvir Kaur Kalsi f. North London g. May 23 h. 9:30 a.m. i. 10:00 a.m. j. 12:00 noon

End exercises

1. Matrimonial advertisement ਲੰਡਨ ਵਿਚ ਰਹਿ ਰਹੇ ਸਿੱਖ ਮਾਪਿਆਂ ਦੀ ਲੜਕੀ ਲਈ ਰਿਸ਼ਤੇ ਦੀ ਲੋੜ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕੀ ਦੀ ਉਮਰ ੨੫ ਸਾਲ ਦੀ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਕੱਦ ੫' ੩" ਹੈ। ਲੜਕੀ ਸੁਹਣੀ ਤੇ ਪੜ੍ਹੀ ਲਿਖੀ ਹੈ। ਬੈਕ ਵਿਚ ਕੰਮ ਕਰਦੀ ਹੈ। ਲੜਕਾ ਪਤਵੰਤੇ ਪਰਵਰ ਦਾ, ਬਿਊਟਿਸ਼ ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀਅਤ ਵਲਾ ਅਤੇ ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੋਕਰੀ ਤੇ ਲੱਗ ਹੋਵੇ। 2. a. ਜਿਹਾ b. ਆਪਣੇ c. ਆਪਣੀਆਂ d. ਜਿਹੇ 3. a. ਉਥਲੇ ਹੋਏ b. ਡਰਿਆ ਹੋਇਆ c. ਪੜ੍ਹੀਆਂ ਲਿਖਿਆ 4. a. ਡੇਬਰਾ b. ਜੀਤੀ ਦਾ c. ਨਹੀਂ d. ੨੮ ਜਨਵਰੀ e. ਉਹ ਵਿਆਹ ਦੀਆਂ ਰਸਮਾਂ ਬਾਰੇ ਜਾਣਨ ਚਹੁੰਦੀ ਹੈ

Unit 14

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. ਪਾਪਾ ਜੀ! ਕੀ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਮੇਰੇ ਸ਼੍ਰੇਣੀ ਅਧਿਆਪਕ ਨੂੰ ਮਿਲੇ ਸੀ? b. ਉਹ ਸਾਨੂੰ ਚੰਗੀ ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ ਪੜ੍ਹਦਾ ਨਹੀਂ। c. ਤੈਨੂੰ ਪੜ੍ਹਾਈ ਵਿਚ ਮਿਹਨਤ ਕਰਨੀ ਚਹੀਦੀ ਹੈ। 2. 1. teacher 2. Ramesh 3. homework 4. maths 5. careless

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. kaanoonn ਬੀਬੀ, madam ਕਾਗਜ਼ਾਤ, kaaghzaat maaf, pardon ਉਲੰਘਣਾ, to disobey 2. mobile phone officer licence minute car

Dialogue 3 exercises

1. a. ਮੈਂ ਸਮਝ ਸੇਵਕ ਹਾਂ। b. ਕੀ ਗੱਲ ਹੈ? c. ਅੰਦਰ ਆ ਜਾਓ। d. ਮੇਰੇ ਲਾਟੀ ਇਹ ਮੁਸ਼ਕਲ ਹੈ। 2. a. ਆਇਆ b. ਸਕਦੀ c. ਚਲੇ ਜਾਂਦੇ d. ਕਰਾਂ ਗੀ

End exercises

1. a. ਦੇ ਨੋੜੇ b. ਦੇ ਅੰਦਰ c. ਤੋਂ ਬਾਹਰ d. ਦੀ ਜਗ ਂ 2. a. 2 b. 3 c. 4 d. 1 3. a. ਢਾਫ਼ਰ b. ੧੦ ਮਿੰਟ c. ਨਹੀਂ d. ਕਾਗਜ਼ਾਤ ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰਨੇ ਹਨ 4. ਅਧਿਆਪਕ, ਇਲਾਵਾ, ਹਿਸਾਬ, ਕੰਮ, ਕਲਾਸ, ਡਾਕਟਰ, ਟੁਜੇ, ਪੜ੍ਹਾਉਣਾ, ਪਾਪਾ, ਬਾਰੇ, ਮਜ਼ਮੂਨਾਂ, ਮਿਹਨਤ, ਲਿਆਕਤ, ਵਰਤਣਾ, ਸ੍ਰੇਣੀ

Unit 15

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. b. ਵੈਸਥੀ ਮੇਲਾ c. 1. ਫ਼ਸਲਾਂ ਕਟਣਾ 2. ਸਿੱਖ ਕੌਮ ਦਾ ਜਨਮ ਦਿਨ d. ਜਲੇਬੀਆਂ ਅਤੇ ਪਕੋੜੇ
e. ਗਤਕਾ f. 1. ਨਮਾਇਸ਼ 2. ਭੰਗੜਾ 2. village people harvest season Sikh religion
the new year 3. True True False False

Folk song exercise

Yes No No No

End exercises

1. a. ਜਿਹੜਾ, ਉਵੇਂ b. ਜਿਵੇਂ, ਉਵੇਂ c. ਜਿੱਥੇ, ਉੱਥੇ d. ਜਦੋਂ, ਉਦੋਂ 2. b. ਬਾਹਰ ਜਾਣ ਦੇਵੇ c. ਪੀਣ
ਦੇ d. ਦੇਖਣ ਦੇਵੇ/ਚਿਉ 3. a. ਕੰਮ ਤੇ ਜਾਣ ਲਈ ੧੫ ਮਿੰਟ ਲੱਗਦੇ ਹਨ। b. ਇੱਕ ਫ਼ਰਸਟ ਕਲਾਸ
ਟਿਕਟ ਲਈ ਕਿੰਨੇ ਪੈਸੇ ਲੱਗਦੇ ਹਨ ? c. ਮੈਨੂੰ ਗਰਮੀ ਲੱਗਦੀ ਹੈ। d. ਬਾਰਸ਼ ਹੋਣ ਲੱਗੀ। e. ਅਸੀਂ
ਬਾਹਰ ਜਾਣ ਲੱਗੇ ਸਾਂ।

Unit 16

Dialogue 1 exercises

1. a. True b. False c. False d. True 2. a. ਮੈਨੂੰ ਭੰਗੜਾ ਪਸੰਦ ਹੈ। b. ਮੈਨੂੰ ਭੰਗੜਾ ਗਿੱਧੇ
ਨਾਲੋਂ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ ਪਸੰਦ ਹੈ। c. ਭਾਵੇਂ ਤੁਸੀਂ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਜਾ ਬਾਹਰ ਹੋ, ਭੰਗੜਾ ਦੇਖ ਸਕਦੇ ਹੋ। d. ਆਓ ਆਪਾਂ,
ਨੱਚੀਏ। 3. a. drum b. long wooden pole c. spoon

Dialogue 2 exercises

1. Canada Uganda Malaysia England 2. a. ਅਵਡਾਰ ਤੇ ਤਰਲੋਕ b. ਮਲੋਸੀਆ
c. ਲਾਈਲਪੁਰ d. ਯੂਰੀਡਾ e. ਧੋਬੀ ਦਾ ਕੁੱਤਾ ਨਾ ਘਰ ਦਾ ਨਾ ਘਾਟ ਦਾ 3. a. ਕਿਊਂ ਕਿ ਉਹ ਛੋਨ
ਵਿਚ ਭਰਤੀ ਹੋ ਗਏ ਸਨ। b. ਕਿਊਂ ਕਿ ਉਹ ਗਰਦ ਪਾਰਟੀ ਵਿਚ ਸ਼ਾਮਲ ਹੋ ਗਏ ਸਨ। c. ਕਿਊਂ ਕਿ
ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਬਟਵਰ ਹੋ ਗਿਆ ਸਾਂ। d. ਕਿਊਂ ਕਿ ਉਹ ਰੇਲਵੇ ਬਣਾਉਣ ਹਾਂ ਸਨ।

End exercises

1. b. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ ਪੈਸਲਾਂ ਹਨ, ਨਾ ਕਾਪੀ ਹੈ। c. ਸਾਡੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਾ ਘੜੀਆਂ ਹਨ, ਨਾ ਤੇਡੀਓਂ ਹੈ। d. ਸਾਡੇ
ਕੋਲ ਨਾ ਬੋਤਲਾਂ ਹਨ, ਨਾ ਪਣੀ ਹੈ। 2. b. ਨਾ ਸਿਰਫ ਇਹ ਕਿਤਾਬ ਲੰਬੀ ਹੈ, ਸਗੋਂ ਮਸ਼ਕਲ ਵੀ ਹੈ।
c. ਨਾ ਸਿਰਫ ਅਸੀਂ ਭੰਗੜਾ ਪਸੰਦ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਾਂ, ਸਗੋਂ ਗਿੱਧਾ ਵੀ ਪਸੰਦ ਕਰਦੇ ਹਾਂ। d. ਭਾਵੇਂ ਤੁਸੀਂ
ਪੰਜਾਬ ਵਿਚ ਹੋ ਭਾਵੇਂ ਬਾਹਰ, ਤੁਸੀਂ ਭੰਗੜਾ ਦੇਖ ਸਕਦੇ ਹੋ। e. ਮੈਨੋਂ ਜਾਂ ਨ ਮੈਨੋਂ, ਵੈਨਕੁਵਰ ਦਾ ਮਹੌਲ
ਪੰਜਾਬ ਵਾਂਗੂੰ ਹੈ। 3. ਤਰਲੋਕ: ਇੰਗਲੈਂਡ, ਕੈਨੇਡਾ, ਯੂਰੀਡਾ ਅਵਡਾਰ: ਮਲੋਸੀਆ, ਕੈਨੇਡਾ, ਲਾਈਲਪੁਰ,
ਜ਼ਲੰਧਰ

TOPIC VOCABULARY

English	Transliteration	Punjabi
Parts of the body	sareer de ang	ਸਰੀਰ ਦੇ ਅੰਗ
Arm	baan	ਬਾਂਚ
Back	pithth	ਪਿੱਠ
Beard	daarhhee	ਦਾੜੀ
Body	sareer/jisam	ਸਰੀਰ, ਜਿਸਮ
Chest	chaatee	ਛਤੀ
Ear	kann	ਕੰਨ
Eye	akhkh	ਅੱਖ
Face	moonh/chihraa	ਸੂਹ/ਚਿਹਰਾ
Finger	unglee	ਉੱਗਲੀ
Foot	pair	ਪੈਰ
Hair	vaal	ਵਾਲ
Hand	hathth	ਹੱਥ
Head	sir	ਸਿਰ
Knee	godaa	ਗੋਡਾ
Leg	latt	ਲੱਤ
Moustache	muchchaan	ਮੁੱਛਾਂ
Mouth	moonh	ਸੂਹ
Neck	gardan	ਗਰਦਨ
Nose	nakk	ਨੱਕ
Shoulder	modhaa	ਮੋਦਾ
Stomach	dhidd/pet	ਦਿੱਡ/ਪੇਟ
Throat	gal/galaa	ਗਲ/ਗਲਾ
Tongue	jeebh/zabaan	ਜੀਭ/ਜਬਾਨ
Tooth	dand	ਦੰਦ
Vegetables	sabzeeaan	ਸਬਜ਼ੀਆਂ
Bitter gourd	karelaa	ਕਰੋਲਾ
Brinjal/egg plant	vataaoon/bainganh	ਵਾਤਾਊਂ/ਬੈਂਗਨ
Cabbage	band gobhee	ਬੰਦ ਗੋਬੀ
Capsicum	shimlaa mirach	ਸਿਮਲਾ ਮਿਰਚ

Carrots	gaajar	ਗਾਜਰ
Cauliflower	gobhee	ਗੋਭੀ
Courgette	raam toree	ਰਾਮ ਡੋਰੀ
Mushrooms	khun _{baan}	ਖੰਬਾਂ
Mustard leaves	sar-h <u>on</u> de patte (saag)	ਸਰੋਂ ਦੇ ਪੱਤੇ (ਸਾਗ)
Okra	bhindee	ਭਿੰਡੀ
Peas	matar	ਮਟਰ
Potato	aaloo	ਆਲੂ
Spinach	paalak	ਪਾਲਕ
Tomatoes	tamaatar	ਟਮਾਟਰ
Turnip	shalgam/ gongloo	ਸ਼ਲਗਮ (ਗੋਂਗਲੂ)
<i>Fruit</i>	<i>phal</i>	ਫਲ
Apple	seb	ਸੇਬ
Apricot	khurmaanee	ਖੁਰਮਾਨੀ
Banana	kelaa	ਕੇਲਾ
Grapes	angoor	ਅੰਗੂੜ
Lemon	nin _{boo}	ਨਿੰਬੂ
Mango	anb	ਅੰਬ
Orange	santraa	ਸੰਤਰਾ
Peach	aarhoo	ਆਹੂ
Pear	naakh/naashpaatee	ਨਾਖ/ ਨਾਸ਼ਪਾਤੀ
Pineapple	anaanaas	ਅਨਾਨਾਸ
Plums	aloche/ aaloobukhaaraa	ਅਲੂਚੇ/ ਅਲੂਬੁਖਾਰਾ
Pomegranate	anaar	ਅਨਾਰ
<i>Places</i>	<i>thaanvaan</i>	ਥਾਨਵਾਂ
Church	girjaa	ਗਿਰਜਾ
College	mahaan <u> vidiaalaa</u>	ਮਹਾਂ ਵਿਦਿਆਲਾ
Community kitchen	langar	ਲੰਗਰ
Enquiry office	puchch gichch daa daftar	ਪੁੱਛ ਗਿੱਛ ਦਾ ਦਫ਼ਤਰ
Exhibition	numaaish, pardarshanee	ਨੁਮਾਇਸ਼, ਪਰਦਰਸ਼ਨੀ
Factory	kaarkhaanaa	ਕਾਰਕਾਨਾ
Fort	kilhaa	ਕਿਲ੍ਹਾ
Hindu place of worship (temple)	mandar	ਮੰਦਰ
Hospital	haspatal	ਹਸਪਤਾਲ

Library	pu _{st} akaalaa	ਪੁਸ਼ਟਕਾਲਾ
Market	man _{de} e	ਮੰਡੀ
Museum	ajaib ghar	ਅਜਾਇਬ ਘਰ
Muslim place of worship (mosque)	masjid	ਮਸਜਿਦ/ਮਸੀਤ
Office	daftar	ਦਫ਼ਤਰ
Palace	mahhal	ਮੱਹਲ
Park	baagh	ਬਾਗ
Police station	thaanhaa, pulas chaunkkee	ਥਾਣਾ, ਪੁਲਸ ਚੌਂਕੀ
Post office	daakkhaanaa	ਡਾਕਖਾਨਾ
Roadside restaurant	dhaabaa	ਦਾਬਾ
School	vidiaalaa, madrasaa	ਵਿਦਿਆਲਾ, ਮਦਰਸਾ
Shop	dukaan, hattee	ਦੁਕਾਨ, ਹੱਟੀ
Sikh place of worship	gurdavaaraa, gurduaaraa	ਗੁਰਦਵਾਰਾ, ਗੁਰਦੁਆਰਾ
Zoo	chirheeaagharr	ਚਿੜੀਆ ਘਰ
<i>Occupations</i>	<i>peshe</i>	ਪੇਸ਼ੇ
Carpenter	tarkhaanh	ਤਰਖਾਣ
Cook/chef	laangree	ਲਾਂਗਰੀ
Doctor	daaktar	ਡਾਕਟਰ
Farmer	kisaan	ਕਿਸਾਨ
Gardener	maalee	ਮਾਲੀ
Judge	jajj	ਜੱਜ
Lawyer	vakeel	ਵਕੀਲ
Mechanic	mistaree	ਮਿਸਤਰੀ
Milkman	du <u>dd</u> hdh vaalaa	ਡੁੱਧ ਵਾਲਾ
Policeman	pulas vaalaa	ਪੁਲਸ ਵਾਲਾ
Postman	daakeeaa	ਡਾਕੀਆ
Priest (Sikh)	garan _{thee}	ਗਰੰਥੀ
Singer	gaaik	ਗਾਇਕ
Teacher	adhiapak	ਅਧਿਆਪਕ
Writer	lekhak	ਲੇਖਕ
<i>Colours</i>	<i>rang</i>	ਰੰਗ
Black	kaalaa	ਕਾਲਾ

Blue	neelaa	ਨੀਲਾ
Brown	badaamee	ਬਦਾਮੀ
Gold/Golden	sunahiree	ਸੁਨਹਿਰੀ
Green	haraa/sabaz	ਹਰਾ/ਸਬਜ਼
Grey	saletee	ਸਲੇਟੀ
Khaki	khaakee	ਖਾਕੀ
Maroon	laakhaa	ਲਾਖਾ
Orange	santaree	ਸੰਤਰੀ
Pink	gulaabee	ਗੁਲਾਬੀ
Purple	jaamnee	ਜਾਮਨੀ
Red	laal	ਲਾਲ
Saffron	kesaree	ਕੇਸਰੀ
White	chittaa/safed	ਚਿੱਟਾ/ ਸਫੇਦ
Yellow	peelaa	ਪੀਲਾ
<i>Directions</i>	<i>dishaavaan</i>	ਦਿਸ਼ਾਵਾਨ
Behind	pichche	ਪਿੱਛੇ
Down	thalle	ਬੱਲੇ
East	poorab	ਪੂਰਬ
Far	door	ਦੂਰ
In front	agge	ਅੱਗੇ
Left side	khabbe	ਖੱਬੇ
Near	nerhe/nazdeek	ਨੇੜੇ/ਨਜ਼ਦੀਕ
North	uttar	ਉੱਤਰ
Right side	sajje	ਸੱਜੇ
South	dakhkhanh	ਦੱਖਣ
Straight	sidhdhaa, sidhdhe	ਸਿੱਧਾ/ ਸਿੱਧੇ
That side	us paase	ਉਸ ਪਾਸੇ
This side	is paase	ਇਸ ਪਾਸੇ
Up	uppar	ਉਪਰ
West	pachcham	ਪੱਥਮ
<i>Animals</i>	<i>jaanvar</i>	ਜਾਨਵਰ
Bear	richch	ਰਿੱਛ
Buffalo	majjh	ਮੱਛ
Camel	ooth	ਊਠ
Cat	billee	ਬਿੱਲੀ
Cow	gaan	ਗਾਂ

Deer	hiran	ਹਿਰਨ
Dog	kuttaa	ਕੁੱਤਾ
Elephant	haathee	ਹਾਥੀ
Fox	loonbarh	ਲੂੰਬੜ
Horse	ghorhaa	ਘੋੜਾ
Monkey	baandar	ਬਾਂਦਰ
Mouse	choohaa	ਚੂਹਾ
Pig	soor	ਸੂਰ
Sheep	bhed	ਭੇਡ
Tiger	sher	ਸ਼ੇਰ
<i>Moods</i>	<i>birteeaan</i>	ਬਿਰਤੀਆਂ
Angry	gussaa	ਗੁੱਸਾ
Anxious	pareshaan	ਪਰੇਸ਼ਾਨ
Contented	santushat	ਸੰਤੁਸ਼ਟ
Curious	utsuk	ਉਤਸੁਕ
Depressed	udaas	ਉਦਾਸ
Determined	nishchit	ਨਿਸ਼ਚਿਤ
Disgusted	upraam	ਉਪਰਾਮ
Frightened	dariaa hoiaa	ਡਰਿਆ ਹੋਇਆ
Happy	khush	ਖੁਸ਼
Irritated	khijhiaa hoiaa	ਖਿੜਿਆ ਹੋਇਆ
Lazy	susaq	ਸੁਸਤ
Loving	piaaraa	ਪਿਆਰਾ
Sad/unhappy	ghamgeen	ਗ੍ਰਾਮਗੀਨ
Surprised	hairaan janak	ਹੈਰਾਨ ਜਨਕ
Thoughtful	vichaarsheel	ਵਿਚਾਰਸ਼ੀਲ
<i>Travel and transport</i>	<i>safar te aavaajaaee</i>	ਸਫਰ ਤੇ ਆਵਾਜਾਈ
Aeroplane	havaaee jahaaz	ਹਵਾਈ ਜਹਾਜ਼
Airport	havaaee addaa	ਹਵਾਈ ਅੱਡਾ
Bicycle	saaikal	ਸਾਇਕਲ
Boat	berhee	ਬੇੜੀ
Booking clerk	tikat baaboo	ਟਿਕਟ ਬਾਬੂ
Bus	bas	ਬਸ
Bus station	basaan daa addaa	ਬਸਾਂ ਦਾ ਅੱਡਾ

Car	kaar/ gaddee	ਕਾਰ/ ਗੱਡੀ
Fare	kiraiaa	ਕਿਰਾਇਆ
Foot (on)	paidal	ਪੈਦਲ
Horse carriage	taangaa/ yakkaa	ਟਾਂਗਾ/ ਯੱਕਾ
Journey	yaatraa/ safar	ਯਾਤਰਾ/ ਸਫਰ
Passenger	savaaree	ਸਵਾਰੀ
Road	sarhak	ਸੜਕ
Rickshaw	rikshaa	ਰਿਕਸ਼ਾ
Ship	samundaree jahaaz	ਸਮੁੰਦਰੀ ਜਹਾਜ਼
Ticket	tikat	ਟਿਕਟ
Train	reL gaddee	ਰੇਲ ਗੱਡੀ
(To) travel	safar karna	ਸਫਰ ਕਰਨਾ
Traveller	yaatre	ਯਾਤਰੀ
Vehicle	vaahanh	ਵਾਹਨ
Waiting room	udeek ghar/ musaafar <u>khaanaa</u>	ਊਡੀਕ ਘਰ/ ਮੁਸਾਫਰ ਖਾਨਾ
Personal identification	nijee shanaakhat	ਨਿੱਜੀ ਸ਼ਨਾਕਤ
Age	umar	ਉਮਰ
Birthday	janam <u>din</u>	ਜਨਮ ਦਿਨ
(To be) born	janmnhaa	ਜੰਮਣਾ
Caste	zaat	ਜਾਤ
Family name	got	ਗੋਤ
Height	kadd	ਕੱਦ
Maiden name	pekaa naan	ਪੇਕਾ ਨਾਨ
Man	aadmee	ਆਦਮੀ
(To be) married	viaahiaa honhaa	ਵਿਆਹਿਆ ਹੋਣਾ
Name	naam/ naan	ਨਾਮ/ ਨਾਨ
Nation	kaum	ਕੌਮ
Nationality	kaumeeat	ਕੌਮੀਅਤ
Place of Birth	janam asthaan	ਜਨਮ ਅਸਥਾਨ
Religion	dharam, mazhab	ਧਰਮ, ਮਜ਼ਹਬ
(To be) unmarried	kanyaaraa honhaa	ਕੰਵਰਾ ਹੋਣਾ
Young	javaan	ਜਵਾਨ

House and home	makaan <u>te</u> ghar	ਮਕਾਨ ਤੇ ਘਰ
Bathroom	ghusal <u>khaanaa/ ishmaan</u> ghar	ਗੁਸਲ ਖਾਨਾ/ ਇਸ਼ਮਾਨ ਘਰ
Bed	manja, palangh	ਮੰਜਾ/ ਪਲੰਘ
Bedroom	saunh vaala kamraa	ਸੌਨ ਵਾਲਾ ਕਮਰਾ
Building	imaaraat	ਇਮਾਰਤ
Bungalow	banglaa	ਬੰਗਲਾ
Carpet	daree	ਦਰੀ
Ceiling	andarlee <u>chatt</u>	ਅੰਦਰਲੀ ਛੱਤ
Cooker	chullhaa	ਚੁੱਲ੍ਹਾ
Court yard	vihraa	ਵਿਹੜਾ
Dining room	khaanh vaala kamraa	ਖਾਨ ਵਾਲਾ ਕਮਰਾ
Door	darvaaza	ਦਰਵਾਜ਼ਾ
Floor	farash	ਫਰਸ਼
Garden	baaghieehaa	ਬਾਗੀਚਾ
Key	taalee, chaabee	ਤਾਲੀ, ਚਾਬੀ
Kitchen	rasoee	ਰਸੋਈ
Light	roshnee	ਰੋਸ਼ਨੀ
Lock	taala, jandraa	ਤਾਲਾ, ਜੰਦਰਾ
Roof	baaharlee <u>chatt</u>	ਬਾਹਰਲੀ ਛੱਤ
Room	kamraa	ਕਮਰਾ
Sink	chubachchaa	ਚੁਬੱਚਾ
Sitting Room	baithak	ਬੈਠਕ
Stairs	paurheeaan	ਪੌਰੀਆਂ
Storey	manzal	ਮੰਜ਼ਲ
Tap	nalkaa	ਨਲਕਾ
Utencils	barjan, bhaande	ਬਰਤਨ, ਭਾਂਡੇ
Wall	deevar/ kandh	ਦੀਵਾਰ/ ਕੰਧ
Window	baaree/ khirkhee	ਬਾਰੀ, ਖਿੜਕੀ
Nature	kudrat	ਕੁਦਰਤ
Climate	paunh paanhee	ਪੌਣ ਪਾਣੀ
Earth	dhartee	ਧਰਤੀ
Flowers	phull	ਫੁੱਲ
Forest	jangal	ਜੰਗਲ
Grass	ghaah	ਘਾਹ
Lake	jheel	ਜੜੀਲ

Land	<u>zameen</u>	ਜ਼ਮੀਨ
Lightning	bijlee <u>dee</u> chamak	ਬਿਜਲੀ ਦੀ ਚਮਕ
Moon	<u>chan</u> n	ਚੰਨ
Mountains	parbat/pahaarh	ਪਰਬਤ/ਪਹਾੜ
River	<u>dariaa</u>	ਦਰਿਆ
Sea	samundar	ਸਮੁੰਦਰ
Seasons	<u>ruttaan</u>	ਰੂੜਾਂ
Sky	asmaan	ਅਸਮਾਨ
Star	<u>taaraa</u>	ਤਾਰਾ
Sun	sooraj	ਸੂਰਜ
Tree	<u>darakhat</u>	ਦਰਖਤ
 <i>Weather</i>	 <i>mausam</i>	 ਮੌਸਮ
Breeze	havaa	ਹਵਾ
Cloud	<u>baddal</u>	ਬੱਦਲ
Cold	<u>thand</u>	ਠੰਡ
Drought	sokaa	ਸੋਕ
Drizzle	boondaa <u>baandee</u>	ਭੁੰਦਾ ਬਾਂਦੀ
Dry	<u>khushak</u>	ਖੁਸ਼ਕ
Flood	harhh	ਹੜ੍ਹ
Fog	<u>dhund</u>	ਧੁੰਦ
Frost	kora	ਕੋਰਾ
Hail stones	garhe	ਗੜੇ
Heat wave	loo	ਲੂ
Hot	garmee	ਗਰਮੀ
Rain	baarash, meen <u>h</u>	ਬਾਰਾਸ, ਮੰਚ
Shade	<u>chaan</u>	ਛਾਂ
Snow	baraf	ਬਰਫ
Sunshine	<u>dhupp</u>	ਪੁੱਪ
Thunder	garaj	ਗਰਜ
Wet	sillaa	ਸਿੱਲਾ
 <i>Numerals</i>	 <i>ginhtee</i>	 ਗਿਣਤੀ
0	sifar	ਸਿਫਰ
1	ikk	ਇੱਕ
2	<u>do</u>	ਦੋ
3	<u>tinn</u>	ਤਿੰਨ

4	chaar	ਚਾਰ	8
5	panj	ਪੰਜ	4
6	<u>che</u>	ਛੇ	6
7	<u>satt</u>	ਸੱਤ	9
8	athth	ਅੱਠ	10
9	naun	ਨੌਨ	6
10	<u>das</u>	ਦਸ	10
11	giaaraan	ਗਿਆਰਾਂ	11
12	baar-h-aan	ਬਾਰਾਂ	12
13	<u>ter-h-aan</u>	ਤੇਰਾਂ	13
14	chaud-h-aan	ਚੌਥਾਂ	18
15	pandraan	ਪੰਦਰਾਂ	14
16	solhaan	ਸੇਲਾਂ	16
17	sataar-h-aan	ਸਤਾਰਾਂ	19
18	athaar-h-aan	ਅਠਾਰਾਂ	18
19	unnee	ਊਨੀ	16
20	veeh	ਵੀਹ	20
21	ikkee	ਇੱਕੀ	21
22	baaee	ਬਾਈ	22
23	<u>te-ee</u>	ਤੇਈ	23
24	chauvee	ਚੌਵੀ	28
25	panjhee	ਪੰਜੀ	24
26	<u>chabbee</u>	ਛੱਬੀ	26
27	sataaee	ਸਤਾਈ	29
28	athaaee	ਅਠਾਈ	28
29	unattee	ਊਨਤੀ	26
30	<u>teeh</u>	ਤੀਹ	30
31	ikkatee	ਇੱਕਤੀ	31
32	battee	ਬੱਤੀ	32
33	<u>tejee</u>	ਤੇਤੀ	33
34	chauntee	ਚੌਤੀ	38
35	paintee	ਪੈਂਤੀ	34
36	<u>chattee</u>	ਛੱਤੀ	36
37	saintee	ਸੈਂਤੀ	39
38	athattee	ਅਠਤੀ	38
39	untaalee	ਊਨਤਾਲੀ	36
40	chaalee	ਚਾਲੀ	80
41	iktalaalee	ਇਕਤਾਲੀ	81

42	bataalee	ਬਤਾਲੀ	੪੨
43	tirtaalee	ਤਿਰਤਾਲੀ	੪੩
44	chutaalee	ਚੁਡਾਲੀ	੪੪
45	pantaalee	ਪੰਤਾਲੀ	੪੫
46	chitaalee	ਛਿਤਾਲੀ	੪੬
47	santaalee	ਸੰਤਾਲੀ	੪੭
48	athtaalee	ਅਠਾਲੀ	੪੮
49	unhnjaa	ਊਣੰਜਾ	੪੯
50	panjaah	ਪੰਜਾਹ	੫੦
51	ikvanjaa	ਇਕਵੰਜਾ	੫੧
52	bavanjaa	ਬਵੰਜਾ	੫੨
53	tarvanjaa	ਤਰਵੰਜਾ	੫੩
54	churanjaa	ਚੁਰੰਜਾ	੫੪
55	pachvanjaa	ਪਰਵੰਜਾ	੫੫
56	chivanjaa	ਛਿਵੰਜਾ	੫੬
57	sa _t vanjaa	ਸਤਵੰਜਾ	੫੭
58	athvanjaa	ਅਠਵੰਜਾ	੫੮
59	unhaath	ਊਣਾਹਥ	੫੯
60	sathth	ਸੱਠ	੬੦
61	ikaahth	ਇਕਾਹਠ	੬੧
62	baahth	ਬਾਹਠ	੬੨
63	trehth	ਤ੍ਰੇਹਠ	੬੩
64	chaunhth	ਚੌਹਠ	੬੪
65	painhth	ਪੈਂਹਠ	੬੫
66	chiaahth	ਛਿਆਹਠ	੬੬
67	sa _t aahth	ਸਤਾਹਠ	੬੭
68	athaahth	ਅਠਾਹਠ	੬੮
69	unhattar	ਊਨਹਤਰ	੬੯
70	sattar	ਸੱਤਰ	੭੦
71	ikhattar	ਇਕਹਤਰ	੭੧
72	bahattar	ਬਹੱਤਰ	੭੨
73	tihattar	ਤਿਹਾਤਰ	੭੩
74	chauhattar	ਚੌਹਾਤਰ	੭੪
75	pachattar	ਪਰਚਾਤਰ	੭੫
76	chihattar	ਛਿਹਾਤਰ	੭੬
77	satattar	ਸਤਾਤਰ	੭੭
78	athattar	ਅਠਾਤਰ	੭੮
79	unaasee	ਊਨਾਸੀ	੭੯

80	assee	ਅੱਸੀ	੮੦
81	ikaasee	ਇਕਾਸੀ	੮੧
82	biaasee	ਬਿਆਸੀ	੮੨
83	triaasee	ਤ੍ਰਿਆਸੀ	੮੩
84	churaasee	ਚੁਰਾਸੀ	੮੪
85	pachaasee	ਪਚਾਸੀ	੮੫
86	chiaasee	ਛਿਆਸੀ	੮੬
87	sataasee	ਸਤਾਸੀ	੮੭
88	athaasee	ਅਠਾਸੀ	੮੮
89	unhaanven	ਊਣਾਨਵੇਂ	੮੯
90	navve	ਨਾਵੇ	੯੦
91	ikaanven	ਇਕਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੧
92	baanven	ਬਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੨
93	triaanven	ਤ੍ਰਿਆਨਵੇਂ	੯੩
94	churaanven	ਚੁਰਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੪
95	pachaanven	ਪਚਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੫
96	chiaanven	ਛਿਆਨਵੇਂ	੯੬
97	sataanven	ਸਤਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੭
98	athaanven	ਅਠਾਨਵੇਂ	੯੮
99	narhinven	ਨਾਰਹਿਨਵੇਂ	੯੯
100	sau	ਸੌ	੧੦੦
1000	ikk hazaar	ਇੱਕ ਹਜ਼ਾਰ	੧੦੦੦
100 000	lakhkh	ਲੱਖ	੧੦੦ ੦੦੦
10 000 000	karorh	ਕਰੋੜ	੧੦ ੦੦੦ ੦੦੦

PANJABI-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ਉਸ	us	that
ਉਹ	uh	he, she, that, they
ਉਖੜਨਾ	ukharhnaa	to be displaced, to be uprooted
ਉਡੀਕਣਾ	udeeknhaa	to wait
ਉਤਸੁਕ	utsuk	anxious awaiting
ਉਥੋਂ	uththon	from there
ਉਮਰ	umar	age (f.)
ਉਮੀਦ	umeed	hope (f.)
ਉਰਦੂ	urdoor	Urdu (m./f.)
ਉਲੰਘਣਾ	ulanghnhaa	to disobey, to break
ਊਠ	ooth	male camel (m.)
ਅਸਲਾਮ ਅਲਾਇਕਮ	asslaam alaikam	Muslim greeting
ਅਸੀਂ	aseen	we
ਅਸੀਂ ਸਾਰੇ	aseen saare	all of us, we all
ਅਸੀਂ ਦੋਨੋਂ	aseen donon	both of us
ਅਖਾਣ	akhaanh	proverb, saying (m.)
ਅਖੀਰ	akheer	end
ਅਗਲਾ	aglaa	next (v.)
ਅੰਗਰੇਜ਼	angrez	English (m./f.)
ਅੱਛਾ	achchaa	OK, alright
ਅੱਜ	ajj	today
ਅੱਜ ਕੱਲ	ajj kallh	these days
ਅਜਾਦੀ	azaadee	freedom, independence (f.)
ਅੰਤਰ ਰਾਸ਼ਟਰੀ	antar raashtaree	international
ਅੰਦਰ	andar	inside
ਅੰਤੇ	ate	and
ਅਜਾਦੀ ਲਈ ਜਦੋ ਜਹਿਦ	azaadee laee jado jahid	struggle for independence (f.)
ਅਜ਼ਕਾ	ajokaa	modern
ਅਨੰਦ ਮਾਣੋ	anand maanho	enjoy yourself
ਅਨਾਰਕਲੀ	anaarkalee	name of classic Urdu film (f.)

ਅਪਰਾਧ	apraadh	offence (m.)
ਅਫਸਰ	afsar	officer (m./f.)
ਅਫਸੋਸ	afsoos	regret, sorry
ਅਬਾਦੀ	abaadee	population (f.)
ਅਮਰੀਕਾ	amreekaa	America (m.)
ਅੰਮ੍ਰਿਤ	anmrit	nectar, holy water (m.)
ਅਰਥ	arth	meaning (m.)
ਅਰਾਮ	araam	rest (m.)
ਆ ਜਾ	aajaa	come (informal request)
ਆਉਣਾ	aaunhaa	to come
ਆਓ	aao	come (formal)
ਆਸ ਪਾਸ	aas paas	around and about
ਆਗਿਆ	aagiaa	permission (f.)
ਆਪਣਾ	aapnhaa	one's own
ਆਲੂ	aaloo	potato/es (m.)
ਅਧਿਆਪਕ	adhiapak	teacher (m./f.)
ਅਧਿਆਪਕਾ	adhiapakaa	teacher (f.)
ਐਨੇ ਸਾਰੇ	aine saare	so much
ਐਤਵਾਰ	aitvaar	Sunday (m.)
ਇਸ	is	it, this
ਇਸ ਕਰ ਕੇ	is kar ke	that is why
ਇਸਤਰੀ	istaree	lady (f.)
ਇਸ ਵਰੀ	is vaaree	this time
ਇਹ	ih	he, she, it, this
ਇੱਕ	ikk	one, a
ਇੱਕ ਪਾਸੇ	ikk paase	one side
ਇੱਕ ਸੌ ਵੀਹ	ikk sau veeh	one hundred and twenty
ਇਕਥਨ	ikathth	gathering (m.)
ਇਕਥੇ	ikaththe	together
ਇੱਕੋ	ikko	same
ਇੰਤਜ਼ਾਮ	intzaam	arrangements (m.)
ਇੱਥੇ	iththe	here
ਇਨਸ਼ਾ ਅੱਲਾ	inshaa allaa	hopefully [lit: if God wishes]
ਈਸਟ ਅਫਰੀਕਾ	eest afreekaa	East Africa (m.)
ਏ	e	is (informal)
ਸਹਿਮਤ	sahimat	agree
ਸ਼ਹਿਰ	shahir	city (m.)
ਸ਼ਹਿਰੀਅਤ	shahireeat	citizen (f.)

ਸਹੁਰੇ	sahure	in-laws (m.)
ਸਹੋਲੀ	sahelee	friend (f.)
ਸਕਣਾ	saknhaa	can, to be able to
ਸਕੂਲ	sakool	school (m.)
ਸਗੋ	sagon	but also
ਸੱਚ	sachch	true, truth (v.)
ਸੱਚੀ ਮੁੱਚੀ	sachchee muchchee	genuinely
ਸਤਿ ਸ੍ਰੀ ਅਕਾਲ	sat sree akaal	Sikh greeting
ਸਥਿਤੀ	sathitee	situation (f.)
ਸੱਦਾ ਪੱਤਰ	saddaa pattar	invitation (m.)
ਸਨਿਚਰਵਾਰ	sanicharvaar	Saturday (m.)
ਸਨਾਖਤੀ ਕਾਰਡ	shanaakhtee kaard	identity card (m.)
ਸਪਤਾਹ	saptaah	week (m.)
ਸੰਪਰਕ	sanparak	contact (m.)
ਸਬਜ਼ੀ	sabzee	vegetable (f.)
ਸਫਰ ਕਰਨਾ	safar karna	to travel
ਸਭ	sabh	all, every
ਸਭ ਕੁਝ	sabh kujh	everything
ਸਭ ਪਾਸੇ	sabh paase	everywhere
ਸਭ ਤੋਂ ਵਧੀਆ	sabh ton vadheeaan	the best
ਸਮਝਣਾ	samjhnhaa	to understand/comprehend
ਸਮਾਂ	samaan	time (m.)
ਸਮਾਂ ਪਾ ਕੇ	samaan paa ke	after a while, after some time
ਸਮਾਜ ਸੇਵਕ	samaaj sevak	social worker (m./f.)
ਸਮਾਨ	samaan	luggage, things (m.)
ਸਮੁੰਦਰ	samundar	sea (m.)
ਸਮੁੰਦਰੀ ਡਾਕ	samundaree daak	sea mail (f.)
ਸਮੋਸਾ	samosaa	triangular stuffed pastry (m.)
ਸਰਦਾਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ	sardaar saahib	Mr (m.)
ਸਰਦੀ	sardee	winter (f.)
ਸ੍ਰੋਟੀ	shrenhee	class (f.)
ਸਰੋਵਰ	sarovar	pool (m.)
ਸਲਗਮ	shalgam	turnip (m.)
ਸਵਰਗ	savarag	heaven (m.)
ਸਵਾਰੀ	savaaree	installation (f.)
ਸਵਾਰੀਆਂ	savaareeaan	passengers, travellers (f.)
ਸਵੇਰੇ	savere	in the morning
ਸਾਹਿਬ	saahib	sir (m.)

ਸਾਡਾ	saadaa	our
ਸ਼ਾਂਤੀ	shaantee	peace (f.)
ਸਾਫ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	saaf karnaa	to clean
ਸ਼ਾਬਾਸ	shaabaash	well done
ਸ਼ਾਮਲ	shaamal	to be present, to join in, participate
ਸਾਲ	saal	year (m.)
ਸਾਰਾ ਮਾਹੌਲ	saaraa maahaul	whole atmosphere (m.)
ਸਾਰੇ	saare	everyone, all (v.)
ਸਾਰੀ ਵਾਲੀ	saarhhee vaalee	the one wearing the sari (f.)
ਸਿਆਣਾ	siaanhaa	wise, mature (v.)
ਸਿਹਤ	sihat	health (f.)
ਸਿਕਾਈਤ	shikaait	complaint (f.)
ਸਿੱਖਾਂ ਦੇ	sikhhaaan de	of the Sikhs
ਸਿਤਾਰ	sitaar	sitar (f.) (stringed classical musical instrument)
ਸੀਟ	seet	seat (f.)
ਸ਼ੀਸ਼ਾ	sheeshaa	mirror (m.)
ਸੀਨਾ	seenaa	bosom, heart (m.)
ਸੂਅਦ	suaad	taste (m.)
ਸੂਅਦੀ	suaadee	tasty
ਸੁਹਣਾ	suhnhaa	nice, pretty (v.)
ਸੁਕਰਵਾਰ	shukkarvaar	Friday (m.)
ਸੁਕ੍ਰੀਆ	shukreeaa	thank you (m.)
ਸੁਣਨਾ	sunhnnaa	to listen
ਸੁਨਹਿਰੀ	sunahiree	golden
ਸੁਭ ਇਛਾਵਾਂ	shubh ichaavaan	best wishes (f.)
ਸੁਰੱਖਿਅਤ ਸਫਰ	surakhhiat safar	safe journey
ਸੁਰੂ ਹੋਣਾ	shuroo honhhaa	to start, to begin
ਸੁਰੂ ਕਰਨਾ	shuroo karnaa	to begin, to commence
ਸੂਟੀ	sooee	needle (f.)
ਸੇਵਾਦਾਰ	sevaadaar	volunteer (m./f.)
ਸੈਲਾਨੀ	sailaanee	tourist (m./f.)
ਸੋਚਣਾ	sochnhaa	to think
ਸੌਨ	sonaa	gold (m.)
ਸੌਮਵਾਰ	somvaar	Monday (m.)
ਸੌ (੧੦੦)	sau	one hundred
ਸੌਕ	shauk	fondness, enjoyment, like (m.)

ਸੌਖ	saukhaa	easy, simple (v.)
ਹਜਮ	hazam	digest
ਹੰਦਣਸਾਰ	handhanhsaar	durable, hardwearing
ਹਫਤਾ	haftaa	week (m.)
ਹਫਤਾ	haftaa	Saturday (m.)
ਹਫਤੇ ਦੇ ਅਖੀਰ	hafte de akheer	weekend (m.)
ਹਰ ਪਾਸੇ	har paase	everywhere
ਹਰਿਮੰਦਰ ਸਾਹਿਬ	harmandar saahib	Golden Temple (m.)
ਹਵਾਈ	havaaee	by air
ਹਵਾਈ ਅੱਡਾ	havaaee addaa	airport (m.)
ਹਵਾਈ ਡਾਕ	havaaee daak	air mail (f.)
ਹਾਲ	haal	condition (m.)
ਹਾਂ ਜੀ	haan jee	yes (polite)
ਹਿਸਥ	hisaab	maths (m.)
ਹਿੰਦੂ	hindoo	Hindu (m./f.)
ਹੁਣ	hunh	now
ਹੋਸਟਲ	hostal	hostel (m.)
ਹੋਣ	honhaa	to be
ਹੈ	hai	is
ਕਈ	kaee	several
ਕਈ ਤਰ੍ਹਾਂ	kaee tar-h-aan	different types
ਕਹਿਣਾ	kahinhaa	to speak
ਕਟਣਾ	katnhaa	to cut
ਕੱਦ	kadd	height (m.)
ਕਦਰਾਂ	kadraan	values (f.)
ਕਦੀ	kadee	sometimes
ਕਦੋਂ	kadon	when
ਕਪੜਾ	kaprhaa	cloth (m.)
ਕਮਰਾ	kamraa	room (m.)
ਕਮਜ਼ੋਰੀ	kamzoree	weakness (f.)
ਕੰਮ	kanm	job, work task (m.)
ਕੰਮ ਕਰਨਾ	kanm karna	to work
ਕਰਨਾ	karna	to do
ਕਰਾਚਾ	karaaraa	spicy (v.)
ਕਰੋਲਾ	karelaa	bitter gourd (m.)
ਕੱਲ	kallh	yesterday/tomorrow
ਕਲਾਸ	kalaas	class (f.)
ਕਾਹਲਾ	kaahlaa	impatient, hasty (v.)

ਕਾਹਲ ਵਿਚ	kaahalvich	in a hurry
ਕਾਗਜ਼ਾਤ	kaaghzaat	papers, documents (m.)
ਕਾਫੀ ਕੁਝ	kaafee kujh	quite a lot, plenty
ਕਾਨੂੰਨ	kaanoon	law (m.)
ਕਾਰ	kaar	car (f.)
ਕਾਲਜ	kaalaj	college (m.)
ਕਿ	ki	that
ਕਿਉਂ	kiun	why
ਕਿਉਂ ਕਿ	kiun ki	because
ਕਿਹਾ ਜਾਂਦਾ ਹੈ	kihaa jaandaa hai	is said, is called
ਕਿਹੜਾ	kihrhaa	which
ਕਿੱਥੇ	kiththe	where
ਕਿੰਨਾ	kinnaa	how much
ਕਿੰਨੇ	kinne	how many
ਕਿੰਨਾ ਚਿਰ ਤੋਂ	kinnaa chir ton	since when, for how long
ਕਿੰਨੀ ਢੂਰ	kinnee door	how far
ਕਿੰਨੇ ਦਾ ਮੀਟਰ	kinne daa meetar	how much per metre
ਕਿੰਨੇ ਵਜੇ	kinne vaje	what time
ਕਿਰਪਾ	kirpaa	blessings (f.)
ਕਿਰਾਇਆ	kiraaiਆ	rate, fare, rent (m.)
ਕਿਵੇਂ	kiven	how
ਕਿਵੇਂ ਰਿਹਾ	kiven rihaa	how did it go?
ਕੀ	kee	what
ਕੀਮਤ	keemat	price (f.)
ਕੀਨੀਆ	keeneeaa	Kenya (m.)
ਕੀਰਤਨ	keertan	singing of hymns (m.)
ਕੁੱਤਾ	kuttaa	dog (m.)
ਕੋਈ	kooee	any
ਕੋਈ ਨ ਕੋਈ	kooee na kooee	some one or another
ਕੋਸ਼ਿਸ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	koshish karnaa	to try
ਕੋਲ	kol	with, next to, in possession of
ਕੋਣ	kaunh	who
ਕੌਮ	kaum	nation, community (f.)
ਕੋੜਾ/ਕਸੈਲਾ	kaurhaa/kasailaa	bitter (v.)
ਕੇਵਲ	keval	only
ਕੈਮਰਾ	kaimraa	camera (m.)
ਖਤਮ ਕਰਨਾ	khatam karnaa	to finish, to complete
ਖਤਰਨਾਕ	khatarnaak	dangerous

ਖਤਰੀ	khatree	Khatri (m./f.) (caste)
ਖਰਚਾ	kharchaa	expense, expenses (m.)
ਖਲੋਣਾ	khalonhaa	to be stood, to stand
ਖੜਨਾ	kharhnhaa	to stand, to park
ਖਾਸ	khaas	special
ਖਾਣਾ	khaanhaa	to eat
ਖਾਲੀ	khaalee	empty, vacant
ਖਿਲਾਫ	khilaaf	against
ਖੁਸ	khush	happy
ਖੁਸੀ	khushee	good (f.) (lit: happiness)
ਖੁਦਾ ਹਾਫਿਜ਼	khudaa haafiz	Muslim departing phrase
ਖੁੱਲ੍ਹਾ	khullhaa	open, plenty (v.)
ਖੇਡਣਾ	khednhaa	to play
ਖੈਰ	khair	anyway
ਗੱਡੀ	gaddee	car, vehicle (f.)
ਗੱਡੀ	gaddee	automobile, train (f.)
ਗੱਤਕਾ	gatkaa	a Sikh martial art, like fencing (m.)
ਗਦਰ	ghadar	mutiny (m.)
ਗਦਰ ਪਾਰਟੀ	ghadar paartee	Gadar Party (f.)
ਗਮੀ	ghamee	sadness (f.)
ਗਰਮੀ	garmee	summer, heat (f.)
ਗਰੇਡ	gared	grade (m.)
ਗੱਲ	gall	matter, news (f.) (lit: talk)
ਗਲਤ	ghalat	wrong
ਗੱਲਾਂ	gallaan	speech, conversation (f.)
ਗਾਜ਼ਰ	gaajar	carrots (f.)
ਗਾਣਾ	gaanhaa	to sing
ਗਾਲੜੀ	gaalrhee	talkative
ਗਿੱਧਾ	gidhdhaa	women's folk dance (m.)
ਗੀਤ	geet	song (m.)
ਗੁਸਲਖਾਨਾ	ghusal khaanaa	bathroom (m.)
ਗੁਜਰਾਤੀ	gujraatee	a person from Gujarat or of Gujarati origin (m./f.)
ਗੁਬਦ	gunbad	dome (m.)
ਗੋਡੀ	gobhee	cauliflower (f.)
ਗੋਰੀ	goree	fair, white (v.)
ਘਰ	ghar	house, home (m.)

ਘਰ ਦਾ ਕੰਮ	ghar <u>daa</u> <u>kanm</u>	homework (m.)
ਘਰਵਾਲਾ	gharvaala	husband (m.)
ਘੱਟ	ghatt	less, lower
ਘੱਟ ਕਰਨਾ	ghatt karna	to reduce, to lessen
ਘੱਟੋ ਘੱਟ	ghatto ghatt	at least
ਘਾਟ	ghaat	place where clothes are washed on the bay (m.)
ਘੁੰਮਣਾ	ghun <u>mnh</u> aa	to go around
ਘੁੰਮਣਾ ਫਿਰਨਾ	ghu <u>mnh</u> aa phirnaa	to travel around
ਘੜੀ	ghorhee	mare (f.)
ਚੰਗੀ	changee	good (v.)
ਚਮਕੀਲਾ	chamkeelaa	glittering, shining (v.)
ਚਮਚਾ	chamchaa	spoon (m.)
ਚਰਖਾ	charkhaa	spinning wheel (m.)
ਚਲਣਾ	chalnhaa	to go
ਚੜ੍ਹਦੀ ਕਲਾ	charhhdee kalaa	high spirits
ਚੜ੍ਹਨਾ	charhhnaa	to be upon, to ride
ਚਾਹੁਣ	chaahunhaa	to need, to want
ਚਾਚਾ ਜੀ	chaachaa jee	uncle (m.) (father's brother)
ਚਿੱਠੀ	chiththee	letter (f.)
ਚਿਰ	chir	length of time
ਚੀਜ਼	cheez	thing (f.)
ਚੁਕਣਾ	chuknhaa	to be settled, finished
ਚੁੱਕਣਾ	chukknhaa	to lift, to pick
ਚੌਣ	chonh	choice, selection (f.)
ਚੱਥੇ ਗੁਰੂ	chauth <u>e</u> guroo	fourth Guru (m.)
ਚੜ੍ਹਾ	chaurhaa	wide (v.)
ਛਕਣਾ	chaknhaa	to take, to consume
ਛੱਡਣਾ	chaddnhaa	to leave, to quit
ਛਪਾਈਵਾਲਾ	chapaaeevaalaa	the printed one (m.)
ਛੱਲੀ	challee	corn on the cob (f.)
ਛਾਪ	chaapaa	print (m.)
ਛੱਟੀਆਂ	chutteeaan	holidays (f.)
ਛੋਟਾ	chotaa	small (v.)
ਜਗਾ	jag-h-aa	place, location (f.)
ਜਦੇ ਜਹਿਦ	jado jahid	struggle (f.)
ਜਨਮ	janam	birth (m.)
ਜਨਮ ਅਸਥਾਨ	janam asthaan	birthplace (m.)

ਜਨਮ ਦਿਨ	janam <u>din</u>	birthday (m.)
ਜੰਮਪਲ	janmpal	raised, born and bred
ਜੰਮਣਾ	janmnhaa	to be born
ਜ਼ਮਾਨਾ	zamaanaa	times (m.)
ਜਰਮਨ	jarman	German (m./f.)
ਜ਼ਰੂਰ	zaroor	definitely
ਜ਼ਲੁਸ	jaloos	procession, parade (m.)
ਜਾਂ	jaan	or
ਜਾਇਆ ਕਰਨਾ	zaaiaa karnaa	to waste time
ਜਾਂ ਚੁਕਣਾ	jaa chuknhaa	have (already) been
ਜਾਂਵੀ	jaannjee	members of the groom's wedding party (m./f.)
ਜਾਣਨਾ	jaanhnaa	to know
ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ	ziaadaa	too much
ਜਿਸ	jis	which (oblique)
ਜਿਹਾ	jihaa	sort of, rather
ਜਿਹੜਾ	jihrhaa	that, which
ਜਿੱਥੇ	jiththe	where
ਜੀ	jee	honorific particle signifying respect
ਜੀ ਆਈਆਂ ਨੂੰ	jee aaiaan noon	welcome
ਜੀਵਨ	jeevan	life (m.)
ਜੁਮਾ	jumaa	Friday (m.)
ਜੁਮੇਰਾਤ	jumeraat	Thursday (f.)
ਜੇ	je	if
ਜੇਥੋਂ	jebaan	pockets (m./f.)
ਝਕਣਾ	jhaaknhaa	to stare, to look at
ਜੂਟੇ	jhoote	rides (m.)
ਟਮਾਟਰ	tamaatar	tomato/es (m.)
ਟਿਕਟ	tikat	stamp (f.)
ਟੀ. ਵੀ.	tee vee	TV (television) (m.)
ਟੇਕਣਾ	teknhaa	to bow down
ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ	taileefon	telephone (m.)
ਟੈਲੀਫ਼ਨ ਕਰਨਾ	taileefon karnaa	to call by telephone
ਠੰ�	thand	cold (f.)
ਠਹਿਰਨਾ	thahirnaa	to stay
ਠੀਕ	theek	fine/OK/alright/right
ਠੀਕ ਕਰਨਾ	theek karnaa	to fix, to correct

ਠੀਕ ਠਾਕ	theek thaak	OK, fine
ਡਾਕ	daak	mail, post (f.)
ਡਾਕਟਰ	daaktar	doctor (m./f.)
ਡਾਂਗ	daang	long wooden pole (f.)
ਡਾਲਰ	daalar	dollar (m.)
ਡੋਲੀ	dolee	ceremony bidding farewell to the bride (f.)
ਡੋਲ	dhol	big drum (m.)
ਡੋਲਕੀ	dholkee	small drum (f.)
ਤਾਸ਼ਰੀਫ਼ ਰੱਖੋ ਜੀ	tashreef rakhhko jee	please have a seat
ਤਕਰੀਬਨ	takreeban	about, approximately
ਤਕਲੀਫ਼	takleef	trouble, irritation, bother (f.)
ਤਨਖਾਹ	tankhaah	pay, salary (f.)
ਤਬੀਅਤ	tabbeeat	state of health, condition (f.)
ਤਰਾਂ	tar-h-aan	way, style
ਤਲਾਕ	talaak	divorce (m.)
ਤਾਂ	taan	then
ਤਾਂ ਕਿ	taan ki	so that
ਤਿਊਹਾਰ	tiuhaar	celebration, festival (m.)
ਤੁਸੀਂ	tuseen	you (formal)
ਤੁਹਾਡਾ	tuhaadaa	your (informal)
ਤੁਹਾਡਾ ਕੀ ਹਾਲ ਹੈ	tuhaadaa kee haal hai	How are you?
ਤੁਹਾਡੀ ਕਿਰਪਾ ਹੈ	tuhaadee kirpaa hai	by your blessings
ਤੁਹਾਡੇ ਬਾਰੇ	tuhaade baare	about you
ਤੁਰਨਾ	turnaa	to walk, to depart, to leave
ਤੌਂ	toon	you (informal)
ਤੇ	te	and, on
ਤੇਰਾ	teraa	your (informal)
ਤੋਂ	ton	from
ਤੋਂ ਇਲਾਵਾ	ton ilaavaa	apart from, besides
ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ	ton pahile	before
ਤੋਂ ਬਾਅਦ	ton baa-a-d	after
ਤੋਂ ਬਿਨਾਂ/ਬਗੈਰ	ton binaan/baghair	without
ਥਾਂ ਥਾਂ	thaan thaan	each and every place (m.)
ਥੋੜੀ ਬਹੁਤੀ	thorhee bahutee	more or less, to some extent

ਦਫਤਰ	<u>daftar</u>	office (m.)
ਦਰਸ਼ਕ	<u>darshak</u>	participant, visitor (m./f.)
ਦਰਦ	<u>dard</u>	pain, hurt (f.)
ਦਵਾਈ	<u>davaaee</u>	medicine (f.)
ਦਾ	<u>daa</u>	of
ਦਿਸਣਾ	<u>disnhaa</u>	to be visible, to be seen
ਦਿਖਾਉਣਾ	<u>dikhaaunhaa</u>	to show
ਦਿਨ	<u>din</u>	day (m.)
ਦਿਲ	<u>dil</u>	heart (m.)
ਦਿਲਚਸਪ	<u>dilchasp</u>	interesting
ਦਿਲ ਲੱਗਣਾ	<u>dil laggnhaa</u>	to feel at home, to be settled, to live happily
ਦਿੱਲੀ	<u>dillee</u>	Delhi (f.)
ਦੀ ਜਗ੍ਹਾ	<u>dee jag-h-aa</u>	in place of
ਦੁਕਾਨ	<u>dukaan</u>	shop (f.)
ਦੁਕਾਨਦਾਰ	<u>dukaandaar</u>	shopkeeper (m.)
ਦੁਨੀਆਂ	<u>duneeaan</u>	world (f.)
ਦੂਜਾ ਦਿਨ	<u>doojaa din</u>	second day
ਦੂਜੇ	<u>dooje</u>	others
ਦੂਰ	<u>door</u>	far, distant
ਦੂਰਤੋਂ	<u>door ton</u>	far from/away from
ਦੇ ਉਪਰ	<u>de uppar</u>	above, upon
ਦੇ ਅੰਦਰ	<u>de an dar</u>	inside
ਦੇਸ਼	<u>desh</u>	country (m.)
ਦੇਸੀ	<u>desi</u>	Indian, Panjabi, home
ਦੇ ਸਾਹਮਣੇ	<u>de saahmanhe</u>	opposite, facing
ਦੇਖਣਾ	<u>dekhnhaa</u>	to see, to watch
ਦੇਣਾ	<u>denhaa</u>	to give
ਦੇ ਥੱਲੇ	<u>de thalle</u>	below
ਦੇ ਨੇੜੇ	<u>de nerhe</u>	near
ਦੇ ਪਿਛੇ	<u>de picchhe</u>	behind
ਦੇ ਬਾਹਰ	<u>de baahar</u>	outside
ਦੇ ਬਾਵਜੂਦ	<u>de baavjood</u>	in spite of
ਦੇ ਬਾਰੇ	<u>de baare</u>	about, concerning
ਦੇ ਲਈ	<u>de laee</u>	for
ਦੇ ਵਸਤੇ	<u>de vaaste</u>	for
ਦੋਸ਼	<u>dosh</u>	charge (m.)
ਦੋਨੋਂ	<u>donon</u>	both

ਪੰਨਵਾਦ	<u>dhannvaad</u>	thanks (m.)
ਪੀਆਂ	<u>dheeaaan</u>	daughters (f.)
ਧੂਮ ਧਾਮ	<u>dhoom dhaam</u>	bang, pomp and show
ਧੋਣਾ	<u>dhonhaa</u>	to wash
ਧੋਬੀ	<u>dhobee</u>	washerman (m.)
ਨਹੀਂ	<u>naheen</u>	no
ਨਗਰ ਕੀਰਤਨ	<u>nagar keertan</u>	religious procession (m.)
ਨੱਚਣਾ	<u>nachchnhaa</u>	to dance
ਨਮਕੀਨ	<u>namkeen</u>	salty
ਨਮੂਨਾ	<u>namoonaa</u>	pattern, design (m.)
ਨਰਮ ਸੁਭਾ	<u>naram subhaa</u>	kind natured
ਨਾਂ	<u>naan</u>	name (m.) (informal)
ਨਾ ਕੇਵਲ	<u>naa keval</u>	not only
ਨਾਮ	<u>naam</u>	name (m.) (formal)
ਨੀਲਾ	<u>neelaa</u>	blue (v.)
ਨੁਮਾਇਸ਼	<u>numaaish</u>	exhibition (f.)
ਨੌਕਰ	<u>naukar</u>	male servant (m.)
ਨੌਕਰੀ	<u>naukaree</u>	job, employment (f.)
ਨੌਜ਼ਾਨ	<u>naujuaan</u>	youth (m.)
ਪਸੰਦ	<u>pasand</u>	like, pleasing
ਪਕੋੜਾ	<u>pakaurhaa</u>	a type of deep-fried pastry similar to fritters (m.)
ਪਹਿਲੀ ਵਾਰੀ	<u>pahilee vaaree</u>	first time
ਪਹਿਲੇ	<u>pahile</u>	before
ਪਰੁੰਚਾ ਦੇਣਾ	<u>pahuੰchaa denhaa</u>	to deliver, to cause to arrive
ਪੰਜਵਾਂ	<u>panjvaan</u>	fifth
ਪੱਛਮ	<u>pachham</u>	west (m.)
ਪੰਜ ਵਜੇ	<u>panj vaje</u>	five o'clock
ਪੰਜਾਬ	<u>panjaab</u>	Panjab (m.)
ਪੰਜਾਬੀ	<u>panjaabee</u>	a person from Panjab or of Panjabi origin (m./f.)
ਪੱਤਡੜ	<u>pattijharh</u>	autumn (f.)
ਪਤਨੀ	<u>patnee</u>	wife (f.)
ਪਤਲਾ	<u>patlaa</u>	thin, slim (v.)
ਪਤਵੰਤੇ	<u>patvante</u>	respectable (v.)
ਪਤਾ	<u>pataa</u>	to know
ਪਤੀ	<u>pathee</u>	husband (m.)
ਪਰ	<u>par</u>	but

ਪਰਸੋਂ	parson	day before yesterday/day after tomorrow
ਪਰਤਣਾ	partnhaa	to return
ਪਰਵਾਰ	parvaar	family (m.)
ਪਰਵਾਰਕ	parvaarak	family (relating to family)
ਪ੍ਰਾਹੁਣੇ	praahunhe	guests (m.)
ਪਲੇਟ	palet	plate (f.)
ਪਾਹਦਾਦਾ	parhdaadaa	great grandfather (m.)
ਪੜਨਾ	parhhnaa	to read, to study
ਪੜਾਉਣਾ	parhhaaunhaa	to teach
ਪੜਾਈ	parhhaaee	studies (f.)
ਪੜਿਆ ਲਿਖਿਆ	parhhiaa likhiaa	educated (v.)
ਪਾਸਪੋਰਟ	paasport	passport (m.)
ਪਾਸੇ	paase	direction, way
ਪਿਆਰ	piaar	love, affection (m.)
ਪਿਆਰ ਕਰਨਾ	piaar karna	to love
ਪਿਆਰੇ	piaare	dear, beloved (v.)
ਪਿੰਡਵਲਾ	pin <u>d</u> vaalaa	villager (m.)
ਪੀਣਾ	peenhaa	to drink
ਪੀਰ	peer	holy man (m.)
ਪੀਰ	peer	Monday (m.)
ਪੁੱਛਣਾ	puchchnhaa	to ask
ਪੁੱਤਰ	puttar	son (m.)
ਪੁਰਸ਼	purash	gentleman (m.)
ਪੁਰਬ	poorab	east (m.)
ਪੂਰੀਆਂ	pooreeaan	fulfilling
ਪੇਸ਼	pesh	to present
ਪੇਸ਼ ਕਰਨਾ	pesh karna	to present, to produce
ਪੇਸ਼ਾਵਰ	presaavar	professional (m./f.)
ਪੇਕੇ	peke	bride's family, bride's parents (m.)
ਪੇਟ	pet	stomach, belly (m.)
ਪੇਂਡੂ	pendoo	of the village, village-like (m./f.)
ਪੈਂਸਲ	painsal	pencil (f.)
ਪੈਸੇਵਾਲੇ	paisevaale	wealthy people (m.)
ਪੈਟਾ	painhaa	to act (to fall)
ਪੌਰੀਆਂ	paurheeaaan	stairs (f.)
ਫਸਲਾਂ	fasalaan	crops (f.)

ਫਿਕਰ	fikar	worry (m.)
ਫਿੱਕਾ	phikkaa	light, pale (v.)
ਫਿਰ	phir	again
ਫਿਰਨਾ	phirnaa	to travel
ਫਿਲਮ	filam	film (f.)
ਫੋਟੋ	foto	photograph (f.)
ਫੌਜ	fauj	military (f.)
ਬਸੰਤ	basant	spring (f.)
ਬਹੁਤ	baht	very
ਬਹੁਤ ਅੱਛਾ	bahut achchaa	very good (v.)
ਬਹੁਤ ਸਾਰੇ	bahut saare	a lot, many
ਬਹੁਤ ਸੁਹਣਾ	bahut suhnhaa	very nice, excellent (v.)
ਬਹੁਤ ਜ਼ਿਆਦਾ	bahut ziaadaa	far too much
ਬਗੀਚਾ	bagheechaa	garden (m.)
ਬਚਪਨ	bachpan	childhood (m.)
ਬੱਚੇ	bachche	children (m.)
ਬਟਵਰਾ	batvaaraa	division, partition (m.)
ਬਣਨ	banhnaa	to become
ਬਣਵਾਉਣਾ	banhvaauunhaa	to get built
ਬਦਲਣਾ	badalnhaa	to change, to exchange
ਬੰਦ	band	closed, off
ਬੰਦ ਕਰਨਾ	band karna	to close
ਬੰਦੇ	bande	people (m.)
ਬਰਸਤ	barsaat	rainy season (f.)
ਬਰਮਿੰਘਮ	barmingham	Birmingham (m.)
ਬਰਾਤ	baraat	procession of the groom's relatives and friends (f.)
ਬਲਕਿ	balki	but also
ਬੜੀ	barhee	very (v.)
ਬਾਅਦ ਦੁਪਹਿਰ	baa-a-d dupahir	afternoon
ਬਹਰੋਂ	baahron	from outside/from abroad
ਬਾਰਸ਼	baarash	rain (f.)
ਬਾਲ	baal	male child (m.)
ਬਿਮਾਰ	bimaar	ill, sick
ਬਿਮਾਰ ਹੋਣ ਤੋਂ ਪਹਿਲੇ	bimaar honh ton pahile	before falling ill
ਬਿਲਕੁਲ	bilkul	absolutely, perfectly
ਬੀਬੀ	beebee	madam (f.)

ਬੁਖਾਰ	bukhaar	fever/temperature (m.)
ਬੁੱਧਵਾਰ	budhdhyaar	Wednesday (m.)
ਬੇਟਾ	betaa	son (m.)
ਬੇਟੀ	beteet	daughter (f.)
ਬੇਨਤੀ	bentee	request (f.)
ਬੇਬੀ ਸਿਟਰ	bebbee sitar	baby sitter (m./f.)
ਬੈਥਕ	baithak	sitting room (f.)
ਬੈਠਣਾ	baithnhaa	to sit
ਬੈਠੋ ਜੀ	baitho jee	please sit down (formal)
ਬੋਰ ਹੋਣਾ	bor honhhaa	to be bored, to feel bored
ਬੋਲਣਾ	bolnhhaa	to speak
ਬੋਲੀ	bolee	language (f.)
ਬੋਲੀਆਂ	boleeaan	folk verse couplets (f.)
ਭੰਗੜਾ	bhangraa	bhangra (m.) (style of Panjabi dance)
ਭਤੀਜੀ	bhatteejee	niece (f.)
ਭਰਤੀ	bhartee	join
ਭਰਾ	bharaa	brother (m.)
ਭਲਕ/ਭਲਕੇ	bhalak/bhalke	tomorrow
ਭਲੀ	bhalee	look after, watch over
ਭਾਈ ਸਾਹਿਬ	bhaaee saahib	brother (m.)
ਭਾਬੀ	bhaabee	sister-in-law (f.) (brother's wife)
ਭਾਰਤ	bhaarat	India (m.)
ਭਾਰਤੀ	bhaartee	Indian (m./f.)
ਭਿੰਡੀ	bhindee	okra (type of vegetable) (f.)
ਭੁੱਖ	bhukhkh	hunger (f.)
ਭੇਜਣਾ	bhejnhaa	to send, to post
ਭੈਣ	bhainh	sister (f.)
ਮਹਿੰਗਾ	mahingaa	expensive, costly (v.)
ਮਸੀਨ	masheen	machine (f.)
ਮਹਿੰਦੀ	mahiindee	henna (f.)
ਮਹੀਨਾ	maheenaa	month (m.)
ਮਕਾਨ	makaan	house (m.)
ਮੰਗਣਾ	mangnhaa	to request, to ask, to charge
ਮੰਗਲਵਾਰ	mangalvaar	Tuesday (m.)
ਮੰਗਾਂ	mangaan	demands (f.)
ਮਜ਼ਮੂਨ	mazmoon	subject (m.)
ਮਟਰ	matar	peas (m.)

ਮਤਲਬ	matlab	meaning, definition (m.)
ਮੱਦਦ ਕਰਨਾ	maddad karna	to help
ਮਨ	man	mind (m.)
ਮਨਪਰਚਾਵੇ	manparchaave	entertainment, enjoyment (m.)
ਮਨਾਉਣਾ	manaaunhhaa	to pray, to believe, to celebrate
ਮੰਨੋ ਜਾਂ ਨਾ ਮੰਨੋ	manno jaan naa manno	believe it or not
ਮਾਤਾ ਜੀ	maataa jee	mother (f.)
ਮਾਫ	maaf	pardon, excuse
ਮਾਫ ਕਰਨਾ	maaf karna	sorry, to pardon
ਮਾਨਚੈਸਟਰ	maanchaistar	Manchester (m.)
ਮਾਪੇ	maape	parents (m.)
ਮਾਰਨਾ	maarnaa	to hit
ਮਿਹਰਬਾਨੀ	miharbaanee	thanks, please (f.)
ਮਿਟਣਾ	mitnhaa	to finish, to vanish
ਮਿੰਟ	mint	minute (m.)
ਮਿੱਠਾ	miththaa	sweet (v.)
ਮਿਠਿਆਈ	mithiaae	Punjabi sweet (f.)
ਮਿਲ ਜਾਣਾ	mil jaanhhaa	to get, to receive
ਮਿਲਣਾ	milnhaa	to meet
ਮੁੱਖ	mukhkh	face (m.)
ਮੁਕਾਬਲਾ	mukaablaa	comparison, competition (m.)
ਮੁਫਤ	mufat	free
ਮੁੜਨਾ	murhnaa	to turn around, to return
ਮੇਖ	mekh	nail (f.)
ਮੇਰਾ	meraa	my
ਮੇਰੇ ਕੋਲ ਨਹੀਂ	mere kol naheen	not with me, not in my possession
ਮੇਰੇ ਨਾਲ	mere naal	with me
ਮੇਲ	mel	meeting, combination (m.)
ਮੇਲਾ	melaa	fair (m.)
ਮੈਂ	main	I
ਮੈਨੇਜਰ	mainejar	manager (m./f.)
ਮੋਚੀ	mochee	cobbler (m.)
ਮੋਟਾ	motaa	fat, thick (v.)
ਮੋਕਾ	maukaa	opportunity, occasion (m.)
ਮੌਜਾਂ ਕਰਨਾ	maujaan karna	to enjoy
ਯਾਦ	yaad	memory, remembrance (f.)

ਯੁਵਕ	yuvak	youth (m.)
ਯੂਗਾਂਡਾ	yoogandaa	Uganda (m.)
ਯੋਗ	yog	suitable
ਰਸ	ras	(fruit) juice (m.)
ਰਸਮ	rasam	custom, ritual (f.)
ਰਸੋਈ	rasoee	kitchen (f.)
ਰਹਿਣਾ	rahinhaa	to stay, to live
ਰੱਖਣਾ	rakhkhnhaa	to put
ਰੰਗ	rang	colour (m.)
ਰੰਗਦਾਰ	rangdaar	colourful
ਰੰਗਲਾ	ranglaa	colourful (v.)
ਰਚਨਾ	rachnaa	composition (f.)
ਰਲ ਮਿਲਣਾ	ral milnhaa	to be mixed
ਰਵਾਜ	ravaaj	fashion (m.)
ਰੜਕਣਾ	rarhkanhaa	to prick, to rub against
ਰਾਹਾਂ	raahaan <u>g</u>	roads, routes (f.)
ਰਾਹੀਂ	raaheen <u>g</u>	via, by
ਰਜ	raaj	rulership, kingdom (m.)
ਰਾਜਾ	raaja	king (m.)
ਰਿਸ਼ਤਾ	rishtaa	(marriage) relation (m.)
ਰਿਸ਼ਤਦਾਰ	rishtedaar	relatives (m./f.)
ਰੁਪਟਿਆ	rupaiaa	rupee (m.)
ਲਈ	laee	for, in order to
ਲੱਗਣਾ	laggnhaa	to be covered, laden, to feel
ਲਗਵਾਉਣਾ	lagvaaunhaa	to get covered
ਲੰਗਰ	langar	community kitchen (m.)
ਲਗਾਉਣਾ	lagaaunhaa	to stitch, to apply, to put on
ਲਗਤਾਰ	lagaataar	continuously, on going
ਲੰਡਨ	landan	London (m.)
ਲੱਡੂ	laddoo	a type of Panjabi sweet (m.)
ਲਫਜੀ	lafzee	literal
ਲੰਬਾ	lan <u>b</u> aa	long, lengthy (v.)
ਲੱਭਣਾ	labhbhnhaa	to find
ਲਾ ਪਰਵਾਹ	laa parvaah	careless
ਲਾਇਸੈਂਸ	laaisains <u>g</u>	licence (m.)
ਲਾਹੌਰਵਾਲੀ ਔਰਤ	laahaurvaalee aurat	the woman from Lahore (f.)
ਲਾਲ	laal	red

ਲਾੜਾ	laarhaa	groom (m.)
ਲਿਖਣਾ	likhnhaa	to write
ਲਿਆਉਣਾ	liaaunhaa	to bring
ਲਿਆਕਤ	liaakat	ability (f.)
ਲੈਣਾ	lainhaa	to take, to have
ਲੋਕ	lok	people (m.)
ਲੋਕ ਨਾਚ	lok naach	folk dance (m.)
ਲੋੜ	lorh	require, necessity, want (f.)
ਵੱਸ	vass	authority, jurisdiction (m.)
ਵਸਾਉਣਾ	vasaaunhaa	to establish, to habilitate
ਵਕਤ	vakat	time (m.)
ਵੱਜਣਾ	vajjhnaa	to be played, to be beaten
ਵਜਾਊਣ ਦਾ ਸ਼ੋਕ	vajaaunh daa shauk	fond of playing, enjoy playing
ਵਜਾਊਣਾ	vajaaunhaa	to play (music), to beat
ਵਡੱਕਿਆਂ	vadkkiaan	ancestors, forefathers (m.)
ਵੱਡਾ	vaddaa	big, large (v.)
ਵੱਧ	vadhhdh	high, more
ਵਧਾਉਣਾ	vadhaaunhaa	to increase
ਵਧਾਈ	vadhaaee	congratulations (f.)
ਵਧੀਆ	vadheeaa	good quality
ਵਧੇਰੇ	vadhere	more
ਵਰਗ	vargaa	like (v.)
ਵਰਤਣਾ	varatnhaa	to use
ਵਰਤਾਊਣਾ	vartaaunhaa	to serve
ਵੱਲ	vall	towards
ਵੱਲੋ	vallon	on behalf of
ਵਜ਼ਬੀ	vaajbee	reasonable, fair, right
ਵਜੇ ਵਾਲੇ	vaaje vaale	band of musicians (m.)
ਵਾਲਾਕਮ ਅੱਸਲਾਮ	vaalaikam asslaam	Response to Muslim greeting
ਵਪਸ	vaapas	return, back
ਵਰੀ	vaaree	turn, instance (f.)
ਵਿਆਹ	viaah	wedding (m.)
ਵਿਹਾਰੀ ਨੌਕਰੀ	vihaaree naukeree	professionally employed (f.)
ਵਿਕਣ	viknhaa	to be sold
ਵਿਚ	vich	in
ਵਿੱਚੋਂ	vichchon	from within

ਵਿਦਿਆਰਥੀ	<u>vidiaarthee</u>	student (m./f.)
ਵੀ	vee	also
ਵੀਹ (੨੦)	veeh	twenty
ਵੀਜਾ	veezaa	visa (m.)
ਵੀਰਵਾਰ	veervaar	Thursday (m.)
ਵੇ	ve	subjunctive particle
ਵੇਖਣਾ	vekhnhaa	to see
ਵੇਲੇ	vele	period, time (m.)
ਵੈਸਾਖ	vaisaakh	one of the Indian months (m.)
ਵੈਸਾਖੀ	vaisaakhee	a Sikh festival (f.)

Grammar and Verb Index

Numbers refer to unit numbers

- Adjectives 3
- Adjectives in the oblique 4
- Comparison of adjectives 4
- Conditional sentences 12
- The ending *vaala* 8
- Formal and informal speech 1
- Indirect speech 14
- Interrogative sentences 5, 6
- Interrogative words 3
- Must, have to* 8
- Negative sentences 5, 6
- Nouns 3
- Nouns in the oblique 4
- Participal uses 13
- Particle *ke* 10
- Phrases of choice 16
- Possessive adjectives 1
- Formal uses of possessive adjectives 2
- Possessive adjectives with plural objects 3
- Possessive particle *daa* 3
- Agentive postposition *ne*
- Compound postpositions 14
- Simple postpositions 4
- Postposition *vargaa* – *like* 11
- Postposition *noon* – *to* 9
- Pronouns in the oblique 8
- Relative pronouns 9
- Purpose clauses 14
- Reflexive adjectives and pronouns 13
- Relative-correlatives 15
- Subject pronouns 2
- Subject–verb agreement 4
- Subjunctive particle *ve* 15
- Word order 2
- Causative verbs 11
- Chuknhaa** – *already completed* 9
- Compound verbs 10
- Conjunct verbs 11
- Future continuous tense 16
- Future tense 7
- Imperative 5, 7
- Infinitives in the oblique 8
- Infinitive as a verbal noun 11
- Infinitives in the oblique with *denhaa* 15
- Intransitive verbs 10
- Laggnhaa** – *to be applied to* 15
- Past perfect continuous tense 12
- Past perfect tense 12
- Passive voice 11
- Past continuous tense 15

Past tense (simple, remote and habitual) 6
Past tense of *to be* – *was* and *were* 5
Present continuous tense 5
Present perfect continuous tense 12
Present perfect tense 12

Present tense 4
Present tense *to be* – *is*, *am* and *are* 2
Saknhaa – *can* and *can't* 9
Simple verb 3
Subjunctive 12
Transitive verbs 10
Vocative case 8



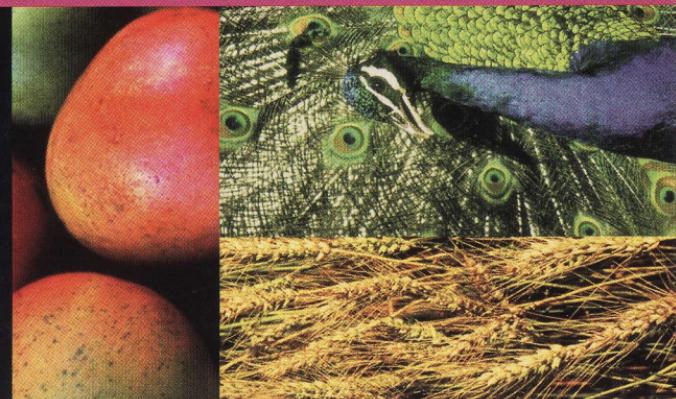
®
T E A C H Y O U R S E L F

panjabi

Surjit Singh Kalra

Navtej Kaur Purewal

with Sue Tyson-Ward



This is a complete course in spoken and written Panjabi. If you have never learned Panjabi before, or if your Panjabi needs brushing up, *Teach Yourself Panjabi* is for you.

Also available in a book/cassette pack

The authors have created a practical course that is both fun and easy to work through. They explain everything along the way and give you plenty of opportunities to practice what you have learned. The course structure means that you can work at your own pace, arranging your learning to suit your needs.

The course contains:

- A range of graded units of dialogues, culture notes, grammar and exercises
- A step-by-step guide to pronunciation
- A Panjabi-English vocabulary

By the end of the course you'll be able to cope with a whole range of situations and participate fully and confidently in all aspects of Panjabi life.

[Y] TEACH YOURSELF

Long-renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning—with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide—the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 200 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, sports, and other leisure activities

US \$20.95 / CAN \$29.95

ISBN 0-8442-0185-5



NTC Publishing Group 9780844201856